This is a reproduction of a library book that was digitized by Google as part of an ongoing effort to preserve the information in books and make it universally accessible.

Google books

https://books.google.com

NYPL RESEARCH LIBRARIES
3 3433 00686343 9

CHRONICLE.

1900.

Digitized by Google

cont.

Oxfordshire

Digitized by Google

YWZH

Digitized by Google

K
RY
AND
IONS
R L

Digitized by Google

[*Woodbury* ***Gravure.***

JOHN CLAVERING.

COLONEL OF THE 52ND REGIMENT,
1762–1778.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

THE OXFORDSHIRE LIGHT INFANTRY CHRONICLE, 1900.

AN ANNUAL RECORD OF THE FIRST AND SECOND BATTALIONS, FORMERLY THE 43RD AND 52ND LIGHT INFANTRY.

Compiled and Edited
BY
LIEUT.-COLONEL A. F. MOCKLER-FERRYMAN.

ON THE VELDT.

NEW YORK PUBLIC LIBRARY

VOLUME IX.

London:
EYRE AND SPOTTISWOODE,
Government and General Publishers,
EAST HARDING STREET, E.C.

Digitized by Google

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY
414142 A
ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS
R

Digitized by Google

THE OXFORDSHIRE LIGHT INFANTRY CHRONICLE.

COMMITTEE.

President :

Lieut.-General F. Green-Wilkinson,
Colonel of the Oxfordshire Light Infantry.

Members :

Colonel J. Colebrooke Carter, *late* 43rd Light Infantry.
Colonel Sir St. Vincent A. Hammick, Bart., *late* 43rd Light Infantry.
Major F. A. B. Talbot, *late* 43rd Light Infantry.
Colonel H. C. Adams, *late* 52nd Light Infantry.
Major J. A. Bayley, *late* 52nd Light Infantry.
Major C. J. Boyle, *late* 52nd Light Infantry.
The Officer Commanding, 1st Oxfordshire Light Infantry.
The Officer Commanding, 2nd Oxfordshire Light Infantry.
The Officer Commanding the Regimental District.
Major R. W. Porter.*
Major P. T. Clark.*
The Adjutant, 1st Battalion.*
The Adjutant, 2nd Battalion.*
The Adjutant of the Depôt.*

Hon. Sec. and Editor :

Lieut.-Colonel A. F. Mockler-Ferryman.

Bankers : Messrs. Cox & Co.

Members marked thus * form the *Working* Committee.

Digitized by Google

SUBSCRIBERS TO THE "CHRONICLE," 1900.

Major H. A. Adair.
Colonel H. C. Adams.
Major-General T. M. Bailie.
The late 2nd Lieut. V. A. Ball-Acton.
Lieut. J. A. Ballard.
Viscount Bangor.
Major D. J. Barton.
Lieut. A. G. Bayley.
Major J. A. Bayley.
C. Booth, Esq.
Captain E. T. C. Bower.
Major C. J. Boyle.
Major-General H. A. Brett.
The late Lieut. A. R. Bright.
Lieut. H. R. M. Brooke.
2nd Lieut. R. R. M. Brooke.
Captain W. McN. Cairns.
Lieut. C. A. Cardwell.
Colonel J. Colebrooke Carter.
Captain L. J. Carter.
C. Cator, Esq.
Lieut. C. O. Chichester.
Captain E. M. Childers.

Digitized by Google

Colonel W. Clark.
Major P. T. Clark.
Lieut. E. R. Clayton.
Captain C. H. Cobb.
Captain E. L. Somers-Cocks.
H. Collinssplatt, Esq.
Lieut.-General F. Colvile, C.B.
Captain G. N. Colvile.
Major W. Corbet-Winder.
Colonel S. Crozier.
Lieut.-Colonel C. K. Crosse.
Lieut.-Colonel W. H. Cunliffe.
Lieut.-Colonel J. G. C. Curtis.
Captain Sir Charles Cuyler, Bart.
Lieut.-Colonel Hon. A. E. Dalzell.
Captain H. F. Darell-Brown.
Captain H. R. Davies.
Captain J. D. W. Davy.
The late Major C. R. Day.
2nd Lieut. H. M. Dillon.
Lieut.-Colonel H. M. S. Douglas.
Major W. H. Drage.
Lieut.-Colonel R. Eccles.
Captain A. J. F. Eden.
Lieut.-Colonel F. J. Evelegh.
Major C. E. G. M. Fairtlough.
Captain H. G. Fane.
Major R. Fanshawe.
Captain R. M. Feilden.
Lieut. Hon. G. W. F. S. Foljambe.
Captain A. C. French.

Digitized by Google

Lieut. C. E. Forrest.
Lieut. C. H. Frith.
Lieut. J. F. C. Fuller.
Lieut.-Colonel J. B. Gaskell.
Major P. T. Godsal.
Surgeon-Major Gogarty.
Brigade-Surgeon R. A. P. Grant.
Lieut.-General F. Green-Wilkinson.
Captain K. R. Hamilton.
Colonel Sir St. V. A. Hammick, Bart.
Lieut. S. F. Hammick.
Lieut. O. R. L. Hampden.
Major J. Hanbury-Williams, C.M.G.
Captain A. Henley.
Lieut. C. F. Henley.
Captain F. J. Henley.
2nd Lieut. C. G. Higgins.
Lieut. H. N. Holden.
Major R. G. H. Hughes.
Captain W. C. Hunter.
Major C. M. Hutton.
Lieut.-Colonel J. Johnstone.
E. Stewart Ker, Esq.
Lieut. R. D. Keyworth.
Lieut. T. King.
Colonel Howard Kingscote.
2nd Lieut. E. H. Kirkpatrick.
Captain F. G. L. Lamotte.
A. R. M. Langhorne, Esq.
Captain E. A. E. Lethbridge.
Colonel W. Livesay.

Digitized by Google

2nd Lieut. R. M. Logan.
Lieut.-Colonel A. Longley.
Captain R. C. Luard.
Captain W. Marriott-Dodington.
Captain J. P. Meade.
2nd Lieut. C. J. Mitchell.
Major G. F. Mockler.
Lieut.-Colonel A. F. Mockler-Ferryman.
Lieut.-Colonel A. C. Money.
Captain G. S. F. Napier.
Mrs. Napier.
Captain F. J. Newton-King.
Lieut.-Colonel S. P. T. Nicholl.
Lieut. H. C. Nisbet.
2nd Lieut. A. C. Norman.
Mrs. Odell.
Captain P. B. Osborn, D.S.O.
2nd Lieut. R. L. Ovey.
Captain W. Owen.
Captain R. C. R. Owen.
Captain C. Parr.
Dr. A. A. Payne.
Captain T. H. Pearson.
Captain C. C. Pearson.
Lieut.-Colonel C. Lennox Peel.
Colonel F. H. Plowden.
Lieut. L. H. Pope-Hennessy.
Major R. W. Porter.
Colonel H. L. Powys.
Lieut.-Colonel Lord Charles R. Pratt.
G. H. Prichard, Esq.

Digitized by Google

Lieut. C. H. Richards.
Captain H. L. Ruck Keene.
Lieut. R. E. Salkeld.
Colonel H. A. Sanford.
F. W. M. D. Scott, Esq.
Captain L. F. Scott.
2nd Lieut. F. J. Scott-Murray.
2nd Lieut. B. H. Shaw.
2nd Lieut. R. V. Simpson.
General Sir E. Stanton, K.C.M.G., C.B.
Major E. Stanton.
Lieut. F. H. Stapleton.
Lieut. A. C. Stewart.
Captain W. J. Stopford, C.B.
Colonel J. A. Strachan.
2nd Lieut. G. A. Sullivan.
Major H. C. Talbot.
Major F. A. B. Talbot.
Major-General Astley Terry.
Major H. A. Terry.
Major S. John Tombs.
2nd Lieut. A. C. D. Thorne.
Mrs. Thruston.
2nd Lieut. L. Tunnard.
Mrs. G. F. Vesey.
Colonel E. Villiers.
2nd. Lieut. H. F. Ward.
Lieut. L. E. S. Ward.
Captain R. E. Watt.
2nd Lieut. J. T. Weatherby.
Captain E. D. White.

Digitized by Google

2nd Lieut. S. G. R. White.
Captain C. J. Wilkie.
Captain George Williams.
Lieut.-Colonel R. B. R. Williamson.
Colonel Sir Henry Wilmot, Bart., V.C., K.C.B.
Lieut.-Colonel Hon. G. H. Windsor-Clive.
2nd Lieut. M. ff. R. Wingfield.
2nd Lieut. H. L. Wood.
G. B. Young, Esq.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

CONTENTS.

	PAGE
Regimental Calendar for 1901	1
The Army List, January 1900	26
The Army List, December 1900	27
The 1st Battalion in 1900	28
The 1st Battalion and the War in South Africa, 1900	30
The Mounted Infantry Fight at Bothaville	96
The Mounted Infantry Company	102
A Prisoner of War	128
With Boer Prisoners to Ceylon	149
With a Mounted Infantry Battalion in South Africa	160
Marches of the 1st Battalion in South Africa	199
Officers who Served in South Africa	201
Statistics of the 1st Battalion	202
Casualties in South Africa	206
The 2nd Battalion in 1900	209
Record of the 2nd Battalion for 1900	212
Dalhousie Hill Manœuvres	219
The Depôt in 1900	222
Record of the Details, 1900	225
Extracts from the "London Gazette," 1900	229
Signalling, 1900	234
Musketry, 1900	235
Athletics, 1900	240
Football, 1900	245
Cricket, 1900	246
Regimental Polo Cup (2nd Battalion)	248
The New Dress Regulations	249

Digitized by Google

PAGE

The Regimental Dinners, 1900 - - - - - - 251

Occasional Notes - - - - - - - - 252

Miscellaneous:

Sir John Clavering, K.B. - - - - - - 257
Lieut.-General the Hon. Alexander Mackay - - - - 261
Members of the Davies Family - - - - - - 263
War Medals - - - - - - - - 270
Nigeria and Ashanti (Captain Eden's Experiences) - - - 271
Officers, 43rd Light Infantry, 1866 - - - - - 277
Officers, 52nd Light Infantry, 1872 - - - - - 278
Gun and Rifle, 2nd Battalion - - - - - - 279
An Old Shoulder-Belt Plate of the 43rd - - - - 280
Notes on Skirmishing - - - - - - - 281

Obituary:

Major C. R. Day - - - - - - - - 298
Lieut. A. R. Bright - - - - - - - 301
2nd Lieut. V. A. Ball-Acton - - - - - - 302
Major L. J. Howell - - - - - - - 303
Captain Lord Monson, C.V.O. - - - - - - 303
Lieut. F. E. Dowler - - - - - - - 304

Old Regimental Memorial - - - - - - - 305

Memorial to Major Thruston in Uganda - - - - - 306

The Tirah Memorial at Oxford - - - - - - 307

Notice to Correspondents - - - - - - - 316

Index - - - - - - - - - - 317

Illustrations:

John Clavering, Colonel of the 52nd Regiment - - - *Frontispiece*
On the Veldt (2nd Lieut. V. A. Ball-Acton) - - - *Title Page*
Commanding Officers, 1900 - - - - - - 1
Boardship Drill. Boardship Cricket - - - - - 30
Nearing Cape Town. Table Mountain - - - - - 32
Naauwpoort Station. At Thebus - - - - - - 34
Arrival in Camp. At Naauwpoort - - - - - 36
An Upset on Modder Pontoon Bridge. Crossing the Modder - - 40
Klip Drift, 1900 - - - - - - - - 42
A Boer Family. A Kaffir Kraal - - - - - 50
Sergeant E. Ludlow - - - - - - - 61
Empty. Arrival of Stores - - - - - - 72
The British Flag at Bloemfontein. Camp at Bloemfontein - - 78
The 1st Battalion after the Capture of Bloemfontein - - - 80

Digitized by Google

ILLUSTRATIONS—*cont.*

PAGE
After the Surrender. On Full Rations again - - - - 82
The Vaal near Venterskroon. Bridge over the Vaal River - - 84
Vilgebosch Drift. A Horse Down - - - - - 86
Major R. W. Porter. A Piquet at Dinner - - - - 88
The Adjutant and Officers' Chargers. Field Bakery - - - 92
The Station for Heilbron. Boer Surrendering to Major Porter - - 94
Funeral of a Horse. The M.I. Company Disembarking - - 102
2nd Lieut. Brooke and his Charger. In the Horse Lines - - 106
Camp at Norval's Pont. The Work of the Boers - - - 110
Riet River. Norval's Pont - - - - - - 112
Parliament House at Bloemfontein. Bloemfontein Railway Station - 114
Farm of ex-President Steyn's Brother. The Mess Cart - - - 118
Kroonstad. Kroonstad Bridge - - - - - - 120
Broken Bridge near Rhenoster. At Vereeniging, or Viljoen's Drift - 122
Captain G. N. Colvile. 2nd Lieut. R. R. M. Brooke - - - 124
The Vaal, Looking West. In Johannesburg - - - - 126
A Mounted Infantryman - - - - - - - 127
Lieut.-Colonel Evelegh - - - - - - - 148
Boer Shelter at Magersfontein - - - - - - 196
Condition of Horses. M.I. Officers' Mess at Bloemfontein - - 197
Rondebosch Hospital, near Cape Town - - - - - 198
Officers' Mess. Shelters - - - - - - - 200
For the Officers' Dinner. The Mess Waiter's Siesta - - - 202
The Volunteer Company - - - - - - - 204
Casualties in South Africa, 1900 - - - - - 206
Killed and Wounded in South Africa, 1900 - - - - 208
2nd Battalion on Parade at Ferozepore - - - - - 212
Staff and Sergeants, 2nd Battalion - - - - - 216
Lance-Corporals, 2nd Battalion - - - - - - 218
Officers, 1st Battalion, at Bloemfontein - - - - - 228
Hon. G. W. F. S. Foljambe. News from Home - - - - 234
Lance-Corporal Graham, Best Shot of the 2nd Battalion - - 236
Tug-of-War, 2nd Battalion - - - - - - 242
Winners of the Football Trophy, 2nd Battalion - - - - 245
Winners of the Cricket Shield, 2nd Battalion - - - - 247
Polo Team, 2nd Battalion - - - - - - - 248
Three Sergeants, 1st Battalion, Severely Wounded - - - 252
Regimental Christmas Card - - - - - - - 255
Lieut.-General Sir John Clavering, K.B. - - - - - 257
Alexander Mackay - - - - - - - - 261
Members of the Davies Family - - - - - - 263
W. Griffiths' Cross - - - - - - - - 268

Digitized by Google

ILLUSTRATIONS—*cont.*

PAGE

Regimental Medals - - - - - - - 270
Officers, 43rd Light Infantry, 1866 - - - - - 277
Officers, 52nd Light Infantry, 1872 - - - - - 278
Shoulder-Belt Plate, 1802 - - - - - - - 280
43rd Light Infantry, 1866 (Three Groups) - - - - 280
Major C. R. Day - - - - - - - 298
Lieut. A. R. Bright - - - - - - - 301
2nd Lieut. V. A. Ball-Acton - - - - - - 302
Major L. J. Howell - - - - - - - 303
Major Thruston's Uganda Memorial - - - - - 306
The North-West Frontier Memorial - - - - - 307

MAPS:

General Map of South Africa - - - - - - 29
Paardeberg - - - - - - - - 64
The March of the 6th Division to Bloemfontein - - - - 76
Marches of the 1st Battalion in August and September, 1900 - - 90

The photographs illustrating the War in South Africa were all taken by officers of the Regiment, and the portraits on pages 61, 206, 208, and 252 are by Sergeant Easden. To Lieut.-Colonel Gaskell we are indebted for the illustrations on pages 268 and 270; to S. Milne, Esq., for that on page 280; to Mr. Taunt (Oxford) for that on page 307; while Lieut.-Colonel S. T. Nicholl kindly placed at our disposal the series of groups facing pages 277, 278, and 280. We have acknowledged elsewhere the loan of sundry other subjects for illustrations.

Digitized by Google

ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS
R

Digitized by Google

LIEUT.-COLONEL HON. A. E. DALZELL.

(From a snap-shot at Paardeberg.)

LIEUT.-COLONEL R. ECCLES.

COMMANDING OFFICERS, 1900.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

THE OXFORDSHIRE LIGHT INFANTRY

CALENDAR for 1901.

Where no Regiment or Battalion is named the event recorded refers to both the 43rd and 52nd.

Digitized by Google

JANUARY.

1 Tu	1791, 52nd, in pursuit of Tippoo, reached Terrimungulum.
2 W	1831, 43rd arrived home from Gibraltar. 1859, Private H. Addison, 43rd, gained the **V.C.** in Punnah Jungle, Indian Mutiny.
3 Th	1809, at Calcabellos (Spain) during retreat on Corunna, rearguard had a smart skirmish. 1865, Colour-Sergeant Joseph Cooper promoted Quartermaster (43rd).
4 F	1815, 1*st Battalion* 52nd under orders for North America, afterwards changed to Belgium, embarked at Portsmouth. 1831, 52nd embarked at Bristol for Waterford (Ireland).
5 S	○ 0h. 14m. a.m. 1809, retreat on Corunna, throughout the day on the river Constantino, the rearguard engaged with pursuing French.
6 ☯	1827, new Colours presented to 43rd by Mrs. Haverfield at Gibraltar.
7 M	1756, 52nd raised as 54th Foot. 1815, 43rd landed at Cat Island, America.
8 Tu	1807, 1*st Battalion* 52nd on return from expedition to Sicily, landed in England and proceeded to Canterbury. 1815, Lieuts. Duncan Campbell, Meyricke and Wilkinson (43rd) *killed* at New Orleans (America).
9 W	1809, retreat on Corunna, rearguard action on river Ladro.
10 Th	1803, Horse Guards' authority issued for 1*st Battalion* 52nd being called "Light Infantry," the 2*nd Battalion* to be separated and to become 96th Regiment of Foot.
11 F	1809, retreat on Corunna, rearguard busily engaged.
12 S	☾ 8h. 38m. p.m. 1809, retreat on Corunna, rearguard actions close to Corunna.
13 ☯	1809, Sir John Moore's retreat on Corunna; 2*nd Battalion* 52nd embarked at Vigo for England. 1814, Merxem (Netherlands); 2*nd Battalion* 52nd engaged all day holding the village against the French. 1900, 1*st Battalion* arrived in South Africa.
14 M	1809, retreat on Corunna; Sir John Moore's Army in position at Monelos covering embarkation of sick and baggage.
15 Tu	1887, 43rd left Bombay for England after 14½ years' service in India. 1889, the sword worn by Sir John Moore at Corunna presented to the 43rd by General Lynedoch Gardiner, C.B.
16 W	1809, battle of **Corunna**; death of Sir John Moore.

Digitized by Google

JANUARY.

17 TH	1809, *2nd Battalion* 43rd embarked for England after Corunna. 1827, 43rd arrived in Portugal as part of the Army of Occupation.
18 F	1803, 52nd made *Light Infantry*.
19 S	1812, **Ciudad Rodrigo**; Major-General Craufurd, commanding the Light Division, mortally wounded.
20 ✠	● 2h. 36m. p.m. 1812, Light Division marched to El Boden after Ciudad Rodrigo.
21 M	1890, 43rd completed movement from Parkhurst (Isle of Wight) to Portsdown Hill Forts and Portsmouth.
22 TU	1863, 43rd arrived at Fort William, Calcutta, from Barrackpore.
23 W	1803, final separation at Chatham of the two Battalions 52nd.
24 TH	1889, 43rd reviewed by the Queen at Osborne.
25 F	1809, *1st Battalion* 52nd arrived at Portsmouth from Corunna. 1815, 52nd quartered at St. Germains, near Paris.
26 S	1801, 52nd landed at Ramsgate from Lisbon.
27 ✠	☽ 9h. 52m. a.m. 1809, *1st Battalion* 43rd disembarked in England, after the retreat on Corunna, having lost 1 Captain, 1 Sergeant, and 65 rank and file.
28 M	1817, *2nd Battalion* 43rd disbanded.
29 TU	1856, 52nd at Cawnpore (India) joined the Oudh Field Force under Brigadier-General Wheeler.
30 W	1854, 43rd arrived at Madras (India) from South Africa.
31 TH	1856, 52nd took part in the Occupation of Oudh.

Digitized by Google

FEBRUARY.

1 F	1833, 52nd relieved 43rd at Beggar's Bush Barracks, Dublin.
2 S	**Candlemas Day.** 1814, *2nd Battalion* 52nd engaged in attack on suburbs of Antwerp, which had been re-occupied by the French.
3 S	○ 3h. 30m. p.m. 1797, Sergeant-Major Robert Kipling, 43rd, promoted ensign.
4 M	1814, 52nd at siege of Antwerp (Belgium).
5 Tu	1762, 43rd at first capture of **Martinique.** 1792, 52nd encamped at French Rocks, before Seringapatam and Tippoo Sahib's army.
6 W	1792, 52nd engaged in night attack on **Seringapatam.** 1857, Sergeant-Major George Garland, 43rd, promoted ensign.
7 Th	1792, during the attack on Seringapatam on the night of the 6th and morning of the 7th, the 52nd lost 1 Officer, 1 Sergeant, and 9 rank and file *killed;* and 5 Officers, 2 Sergeants, and 23 rank and file *wounded,* and 9 men *missing.*
8 F	1814, 52nd engaged in the assault on **Bergen-op-Zoom** (Holland).
9 S	1792, 52nd took part in the siege of Seringapatam.
10 S	1887, 43rd arrived at Shorncliffe after 14½ years in India.
11 M	☾ 6h. 12m. p.m. 1791, 52nd reached Vellore (Southern India) in pursuit of Tippoo.
12 Tu	1860, Sir William Napier died. 1900, *1st Battalion* took part in the invasion of the Orange Free State.
13 W	1878, 52nd moved from Plymouth to Aldershot.
14 Th	**St. Valentine.** 1791, 52nd pursuing Tippoo arrived at Chittipet.
15 F	1900, *1st Battalion* engaged with the Boers at Klip Drift.
16 S	1827, occupation of Portugal, 43rd quartered at Leiria. 1900, *1st Battalion,* at **Klip Kraal,** South Africa, lost 9 men *killed,* and 1 officer and 49 men *wounded.*

Digitized by Google

FEBRUARY.

17 S	Commencement of the campaign of 1814. 1900, 1*st Battalion* in pursuit of Cronje.
18 M	1791, 52nd in pursuit of Tippoo ascended the Ghauts (Southern India). 1900, 1*st Battalion*, at the **Battle of Paardeberg,** lost Major Day (mortally wounded), Lieuts. Bright and Ball-Acton and 5 rank and file *killed*; 3 officers and 27 rank and file *wounded*.
19 Tu	**Shrove Tuesday.** ● 2h. 45m. a.m. 1798, 52nd embarked at Madras for England after 15 years in India. 1900, 1*st Battalion* engaged at Kitchener's Kop, 6 rank and file *wounded*.
20 W	**Ash Wednesday.** 1809, Captain Joseph Carruthers, 43rd, died from the effects of a fall from his horse during the Corunna retreat. 1900, 1*st Battalion* investing Cronje.
21 Th	1814, the Light Division marching from Sala towards Orthes. 1900, 1*st Battalion* engaged at Paardeberg.
22 F	1810, General Craufurd's Light Brigade converted into the Light Division.
23 S	1812, 2*nd Battalion* 52nd at Ciudad Rodrigo (under orders for England) transferred 490 men to the 1*st Battalion*.
24 S	1791, 52nd marched on Colar against Tippoo.
25 M	☽ 6h. 38m. p.m. 1814, 52nd disputing the passage of the **Gave du Pau** prior to the battle of **Orthes.**
26 Tu	1812, 1*st Battalion* 52nd from Ciudad Rodrigo marched on Badajoz. 1852, loss of the *Birkenhead*, off Danger Point, South Africa; the 43rd had a draft of 1 Officer, 1 Sergeant, and 40 rank and file on board, of whom only 1 Officer (Lieut. Girardot) and 14 rank and file were saved.
27 W	1814, battle of **Orthes.** 1900, 1*st Battalion* present at the **Surrender of Cronje** and 4,072 Boers at Paardeberg, after 9 days' investment.
28 Th	1814, the Light Division engaged in pursuit of the French after Orthes.

Digitized by Google

MARCH.

1 F	St. David's Day. 1814, on the road to Toulouse in pursuit of the French army, arrived at Mont de Marson.
2 S	1814, pursuing the French, near St. Maurice.
3 S	1791, 52nd engaged in pursuit of Tippoo's Army.
4 M	1791, 52nd came up with Tippoo's Army near Bangalore.
5 Tu	○ 8h. 4m. a.m. 1791, commencement of the siege of **Bangalore** (India), 52nd present.
6 W	1866, 52nd moved from Portsmouth to Aldershot.
7 Th	1870, Colour-Sergeant Denis Trehy and Private Charles Harman (43rd) awarded the Royal Humane Society's medal. 1900, 1*st Battalion* took part in the advance on Bloemfontein.
8 F	1814, 52nd in reserve at night attack on **Bergen-op-Zoom.**
9 S	1811, pursuit of Massena.
10 S	1879, 43rd left Madras for Rangoon, Burmah. 1886, 43rd left Quetta, Biluchistan, having lost 1 Officer and 92 rank and file in 10 months (from sickness).
11 M	1811, skirmish at Pombal (Peninsula). 1858, Capt. W. R. Moorsom, 52nd, killed at Lucknow.
12 Tu	1811, combat of **Redinha.**
13 W	☾ 1h. 6m. p.m. 1852, Lieut. *Hon.* H. Wrottesley, 43rd, *killed* in action at Fuller's Hoek, Kaffir war. 1870, the depôt 52nd attached to 43rd. 1900, 1*st Battalion* took part in the **Capture of Bloemfontein.**
14 Th	1811, combat of **Cazal Novo.** 1900, 1*st Battalion* marched into Bloemfontein.
15 F	1797, 43rd (1,000 strong), left Cowes for the West Indies. 1811, affair of **Foz d'Arronce.**
16 S	1794, 43rd at second capture of **Martinique.** 1852, 52nd moved from Limerick to Dublin. 1853, end of the Kaffir war. 1885, 52nd moved from Gibraltar to Egypt.

Digitized by Google

MARCH.

17 S	**St. Patrick's Day.** 1776, 52nd left Boston for Halifax (N.S.). 1811, Sergeant-Major Kent, 43rd, promoted Ensign 60th Foot for his Peninsular War services, and Sergeant-Major Mitchell, 52nd, promoted Ensign 88th Regiment.
18 M	1811, skirmish at Ponte de Marcella.
19 Tu	1812, commencement of second siege of **Badajoz.**
20 W	● 0h. 53m. p.m. 1814, engagement at Tarbes with the French.
21 Th	1791, 52nd engaged at the capture of Bangalore Fortress.
22 F	1842, 52nd left Barbadoes (West Indies) for Canada. 1847, new Colours presented to the 43rd by Lady Pakenham, at Southsea.
23 S	1886, 43rd arrived at Poona from Quetta.
24 S	1741, the 43rd raised and numbered 54th.
25 M	1812, siege of **Badajoz**; capture of the outwork of La Picurina.
26 Tu	1879, 43rd arrived at Thayetmyo (Burmah) from India.
27 W	☽ 4h. 39m. a.m. 1815, 1*st Battalion* 52nd left Plymouth for the Waterloo campaign.
28 Th	1886, 52nd left Egypt for India.
29 F	1790, 52nd reached Aulloor (Southern India.)
30 S	1885, 43rd left Bangalore (India) for Quetta (Biluchistan); strength 19 Officers, 794 rank and file.
31 S	**Palm Sunday.** 1864, 52nd arrived at Portsmouth from India.

Digitized by Google

APRIL.

1	M	1857, green goats-hair plumes ordered to be worn in head-dress of Officers of 43rd in lieu of the ball-tufts. 1862, the establishment of the 43rd increased by one trained Bandmaster.
2	Tu	1811, the Light Division encamped near Sabugal.
3	W	1811, combat of **Sabugal**; Lieuts. McDermid and Creighton, 43rd, *killed.*
4	Th	○ 1h. 20m. a.m. 1815, 1*st Battalion* 52nd halted in Brussels on the way to Grammont.
5	F	**Good Friday.** 1816, 43rd arrived home from Canada.
6	S	1812, storming of **Badajoz,** 43rd lost Colonel Macleod, Commanding, and Lieuts. Hodgson, Harvest, and Taggart.
7	✠	**Easter Sunday.** 1815, 1*st Battalion* 52nd reached Grammont (Belgium) and took over effectives of 2*nd Battalion*, which returned to England.
8	M	*Bank Holiday.* 1810, 2*nd Battalion* 52nd marched from Chatham to London to assist in quelling riots.
9	Tu	1885, 43rd left Kurrachee (Sind) by rail for Rindli, Bolan Pass.
10	W	1814, battle of **Toulouse.**
11	Th	1814, Treaty of Paris signed; Napoleon retired to Elba. 1886, 52nd arrived at Bombay from Egypt.
12	F	☾ 3h. 57m. a.m. 1817, 43rd moved from Bapaume to Valenciennes (France).
13	S	1814, 52nd piquets entered Toulouse. 1886, 43rd entertained 52nd passing through Poona.
14	✠	1815, 2*nd Battalion* 52nd embarked at Ostend for England.
15	M	1814, 43rd and 52nd quartered near Toulouse.
16	Tu	1797, 43rd arrived at Jamaica.

Digitized by Google

APRIL.

17 W	1863, Field-Marshal Lord Seaton died.
18 TH	● 9h. 37m. p.m. 1775, 52nd embarked at Boston for attack on Concord, North America. 1842, 52nd arrived in Canada. 1866, 43rd left Auckland, New Zealand, for home.
19 F	1775, combat of **Lexington,** America. 1886, 52nd arrived at Bangalore (India) from Egypt.
20 S	1815, *2nd Battalion* 52nd reached Canterbury on return from Belgium.
21 S	1794, 43rd at capture of **Guadaloupe.** 1864, 43rd engaged at **Maketu,** New Zealand.
22 M	1814, 52nd quartered in suburbs of Toulouse, on declaration of peace.
23 TU	1811, affair of outposts on the River Azava (Spain).
24 W	1811, second affair of outposts on the River Azava.
25 TH	☽ 4h. 15m. p.m. 1864, 43rd engaged with Maories (New Zealand).
26 F	1868, 43rd arrived at the Channel Islands from Aldershot.
27 S	1810, the Light Division marched to Almeida.
28 S	1759, battle of **Sillery,** America.
29 M	1810, the Light Division at Gallegos joined by Captain Ross' troop of R.H.A. 1864, 43rd present at the assault of the **Gate Pa,** New Zealand; 7 Officers *killed* and 2 *wounded.*
30 TU	1808, 52nd embarked for Sweden. 1888, 43rd moved from Shorncliffe to Parkhurst (Isle of Wight).

Digitized by Google

MAY.

1 W	1885, left wing 43rd reached Quetta (Biluchistan).
2 TH	1811, the Light Division fell back from Gallegos towards the plains of Fuentes d'Onor.
3 F	○ 6h. 19m. p.m. 1873, 52nd left Malta for Gibraltar in H.M.S. *Tamar*.
4 S	1811, the Light Division on the river dos Casos, near Fuentes d'Onor.
5 ✠	1811, battle of **Fuentes d'Onor.**
6 M	1841, death of Lt.-Colonel Henry Booth, commanding 43rd.
7 TU	1811, the Light Division in pursuit of the French after the battle of Fuentes d'Onor.
8 W	1757, 43rd left England for North America. 1801, Major-General John Moore appointed Colonel of the 52nd.
9 TH	1873, 52nd arrived at Gibraltar.
10 F	1811, the Light Division at Gallegos.
11 S	☾ 2h. 38m. p.m. 1809, detachments (2 companies) of 52nd served with Brigadier-General Stewart's Brigade in the attack on the heights of Grijou (Portugal).
12 ✠	1809, Passage of the **Douro.**
13 M	1841, percussion fire-locks issued to the 52nd in place of flint-locks. 1857, first news of Mutiny at Delhi reached the 52nd at Sealkote.
14 TU	1861, Indian Mutiny medals presented to 43rd at Madras.
15 W	1791, engagement at **Seringapatam,** 52nd present.
16 TH	**Ascension Day.** 1811, battle of **Albuera.** 1813, at Espeja (Spain) prior to opening of campaign, during which the French were driven finally out of Spain. The Light Division reviewed by Lord Wellington.

Digitized by Google

MAY.

17 F	1808, 52nd with army for protection of Sweden, reached the roadstead of Gothenburg from England.
18 S	● 5h. 38m. a.m. 1866, death of Sir John Maxwell Tylden, of Peninsular fame.
19 ✠	1874, 52nd embarked in H.M.S. *Tamar* at Gibraltar for England.
20 M	1837, Headquarters 52nd disembarked at Gibraltar; first visit to the place.
21 Tu	1813, the Light Division left winter quarters and marched into Spain.
22 W	1813, the Light Division moving towards Salamanca, and driving Joseph Buonaparte from Portugal to the Pyrenees.
23 Th	1870, New Zealand war medals presented to the 43rd. 1900, Sergeant F. Hudson, 1*st Battalion*, promoted 2nd Lieutneant *S. Lanc. Regt.*
24 F	*Queen's Birthday.* 1809, 43rd marched from Colchester to Harwich *en route* for Portugal.
25 S	☽ 5h. 40m. a.m. 1809, 43rd, 52nd, and 95th embarked for Portugal.
26 ✠	**Whit Sunday.** 1874, 52nd arrived at Portsmouth from Gibraltar and went into Cambridge Barracks after a tour of 6 years in the Mediterranean.
27 M	*Bank Holiday.* 1857, 52nd joined the Punjab Field Force under Brigadier-General Nicholson at Wuzeerabad, and by order of its Commanding Officer (Colonel Campbell) was dressed in *khaki;* the first Regiment so clothed.
28 Tu	1845, great fire at Quebec; 43rd gave valuable assistance in putting it out.
29 W	1848, 52nd employed in aid of the civil power at Bradford.
30 Th	1865, death of Sir J. Shaw Kennedy, K.C.B. (43rd).
31 F	1816, 2*nd Battalion* 52nd finally disbanded at Canterbury.

Digitized by Google

JUNE.

1 S	1813, the Light Division passed the Douro and encamped at Toro.
2 ✠	**Trinity Sunday.** ○ 9h. 53m. a.m. 1825, Lt.-Colonel James Fergusson appointed to the command of the 52nd, *vice* Sir J. Colborne promoted.
3 M	1814, 1*st Battalion* 52nd proceeded from Castel Sarrasin (France) to Bordeaux, whence, on the 17th, it embarked for England. 1859, burning of the *Eastern Monarch;* detachment of the 52nd on board.
4 Tu	1885, commencement of cholera epidemic in the 43rd at Quetta, which in a few months decimated the Regiment.
5 W	1835, 43rd left England for New Brunswick, North America.
6 Th	1765, 52nd embarked at Cork for North America.
7 F	1842, 52nd moved from St. John to Fredericton, New Brunswick.
8 S	1804, 52nd encamped at Shorncliffe.
9 ✠	☾ 10h. 0m. p.m. 1823, 52nd embarked at Cove for Halifax (N.S.).
10 M	1850, 52nd moved to Liverpool.
11 Tu	1762, capture of **Moro,** Havanna, 43rd present. 1812, the Light Division left El Boden (Spain) *en route* to Salamanca. 1885, Lieut. Spencer, 43rd, died of cholera at Quetta.
12 W	1776, 43rd and 52nd left Halifax, N.S., for Staten Island. 1813, at Horillas (Spain), the Light Division caught up the French rear-guard and was occupied all day.
13 Th	1811, the Light Division crossed the Tagus.
14 F	1815, 52nd marching through Belgium on Enghien, news of Napoleon's intended attack having arrived. 1856, 52nd attacked by cholera at Lucknow, and during the next 2 months lost 86 men.
15 S	1804, 43rd joined Sir John Moore's Brigade at Shorncliffe Camp. 1815, 52nd reached Enghien (Waterloo Campaign).
16 ✠	● 1h. 33m. p.m. 1815, 43rd left England to join Wellington's Army in Belgium. 1815, 52nd with Sir H. Clinton's Division marched on Soignies, halted for the night at Brain-le-Conte at midnight in torrents of rain.

Digitized by Google

JUNE.

17 M	1775, battle of **Bunker's Hill** (America). 1815, 52nd started at 2 a.m., reached Waterloo, and remained in bivouac in a ploughed field in heavy rain.
18 Tu	1815, battle of **Waterloo**; 52nd lost 1 Officer and 26 rank and file *killed*, and 8 Officers, 10 sergeants, and 150 rank and file *wounded*.
19 W	1775, affair of **Lexington** (America); Lieut. Hull, 43rd, *killed*. 1815, 52nd commenced march on Paris.
20 Th	**Accession Day.** 1815, 52nd, in pursuit of the French after Waterloo, reached Binck.
21 F	1813, battle of **Vittoria.** 1864, engagement of **Te Ranga** (43rd); Captain Smith, 43rd, gained the **V.C.**
22 S	1813, the Light Division in pursuit of the French after Vittoria.
23 ☉	☽ 8h. 59m. p.m. 1811, the Light Division reached Campo Mayor.
24 M	1813, pursuit of the French; Light Division close to Pamplona.
25 Tu	1800, 1*st Battalion* 52nd left Southampton to join expedition to Quiberon. 1844, Sergeant-Major Fuller, 52nd, promoted Ensign.
26 W	1813, the Light Division pursuing the French reached Olonez. 1889, Sergeant Thomas Diver, 43rd, promoted 2nd Lieutenant *Warwickshire Regt.*
27 Th	1813, the Light Division at Olité.
28 F	**Coronation Day.** 1778, 52nd engaged at Freehold, New Jersey. 1814, 1*st Battalion* 52nd arrived at Plymouth on termination of the Peninsular War.
29 S	1809, 52nd arrived off Lisbon and proceeded in boats up the Tagus to Vallada. 1900, 1*st Battalion* Mounted Infantry engaged at Elandsfontein, 1 officer and 3 rank and file *wounded*.
30 ☉	1853, Headquarters 52nd left Cork for India (2nd visit). 1866, 43rd reached England from New Zealand.

Digitized by Google

JULY.

1 M	○ 11h. 18m. p.m. 1815, 52nd halted within sight of Paris and had an affair of outposts with the French Army, which after Waterloo had retired on Paris. 1881, 43rd and 52nd formed into *The Oxfordshire Light Infantry*.
2 Tu	1815, 52nd in bivouac at Argenteuil on the Seine, on the outskirts of Paris.
3 W	1809, at Vallada, in the Tagus, 43rd, 52nd and 95th, formed into *The Light Brigade* under Major-General Craufurd.
4 Th	1815, camped in the Bois de Boulogne, Paris.
5 F	1815, capitulation of Paris.
6 S	1781, action at **James Town** (America). 1809, the Light Brigade commenced its march to join the army under Sir Arthur Wellesley, which was moving on Talavera.
7 ☯	1815, 52nd entered Paris with 71st and 95th—the only British troops who *entered* the city; camped in the Champs Elysées. 1858, 43rd completed a march of 1,300 miles through Central India, having lost 3 Officers and 61 men.
8 M	1810, 52nd at Val de la Mula, near the river Coa (Portugal).
9 Tu	☾ 3h. 20m. a.m. 1803, 52nd joined Sir John Moore's brigade at Shorncliffe Camp. 1857, mutiny of native troops at Sealkote; the 52nd had left the station on 20th May to join the Punjab Field Force, and all its property at Sealkote was now looted or destroyed.
10 W	1810, **Ciudad Rodrigo** capitulated.
11 Th	1857, 52nd marched 42 miles in 20 hours to intercept the Sealkote mutineers, weather very hot.
12 F	1857, 52nd engaged mutineers at Timmoo Ghaut.
13 S	1857, 52nd actively engaged with mutineers. 1900, Sergeant F. Colquhoun, 1*st Battalion*, promoted 2nd Lieut. *Leicestershire Regt*.
14 ☯	1857, 52nd took part in annihilation of Sealkote mutineers, losing during the 12th, 13th and 14th, 5 rank and file *killed*, and 2 Officers, 18 rank and file *wounded* (4 rank and file also died of apoplexy).
15 M	● 10h. 11m. p.m. 1813, engagement on the **Heights of Vera**; halted and took part with the troops in covering the blockade of Pamplona and the siege of St. Sebastian.
16 Tu	1857, 52nd engaged mutineers about the **Ravee River.**

Digitized by Google

JULY.

17 W	1803, 43rd made *Light Infantry*. 1857, 52nd marched to Goodasepoor *en route* to Delhi. 1894, Sergeant-Major B. Stannard, 52nd, promoted Quartermaster.
18 TH	1824, 52nd arrived in Canada on its first visit.
19 F	1812, with Wellington's Army manœuvring before Salamanca.
20 S	1812, Wellington's Army and that of Marmont marching parallel to each other and within musket-shot throughout the day, neither finding an opportunity to attack.
21 ☯	1812, the Light Division in bivouac at San Martin, near Salamanca. 1847, 52nd left Quebec for England.
22 M	1790, 52nd engaged at the capture of Coimbatore (Southern India). 1812, battle of **Salamanca** (Spain); Light Division in reserve.
23 TU	☽ 1h. 58m. p.m. 1812, Light Division in pursuit of the French about Huerta. 1818, new Colours presented to the 43rd at Valenciennes (France) by Lady Blakeney.
24 W	1807, 52nd embarked at Deal for service in Denmark. 1810, combat of the **Coa,** near Almeida; Colonel Hull, commanding, Captain Ewen Cameron and Lieut. Mason, 43rd, killed.
25 TH	1827, occupation of Portugal, 43rd quartered at Thomar.
26 F	1810, the Light Division fell back after Almeida to Freixedas, where it remained whilst the French besieged the fortress of Almeida.
27 S	1809, the Light Brigade, under Craufurd, reached Navalmoral, 50 miles from Talavera, at sunset.
28 ☯	1809, the Light Brigade started at dawn on the famous forced-march on Talavera (62 miles in 26 hours with only 17 stragglers); battle of **Talavera,** 1 company 43rd and 52nd engaged. 1865, Captain Close, 43rd, *killed* in action, New Zealand War.
29 M	1807. 43rd embarked for Copenhagen. 1896, Sergeant A. B. Molesworth promoted Quartermaster 1*st Battalion*.
30 TU	1809, the Light Brigade took over advanced-guard and outpost duties of the Army at Talavera. 1877, Martini-Henry rifles issued to 43rd at Bellary (India).
31 W	○ 10h. 34m. a.m. 1809, 2*nd Battalion* 43rd embarked as part of the expedition to Walcheren.

Digitized by Google

AUGUST.

1 TH	1807, *2nd Battalion* 52nd sailed from Deal for Denmark, having embarked the week previous. 1900, *1st Battalion* in pursuit of the Boer Commander, De Wet.
2 F	1830, the Gorget and Black Cockade abolished.
3 S	1809, the Army marched from Talavera to Oropeza; a trying march, owing to the heat and want of water.
4 ✠	1809, the Army *en route* from Talavera to Campo Mayor, suffered much from heat and want of provisions.
5 M	*Bank Holiday.* 1827, occupation of Portugal, 43rd halted at Barro.
6 TU	1812, after Salamanca the Light Division at the head of the Army marched on Madrid. 1880, 52nd moved from Aldershot to Chatham.
7 W	☾ 8h. 2m. a.m. 1798, 52nd, after 15 years in India, arrived at Chatham; strength, 18 Officers, 166 rank and file.
8 TH	1804, *2nd Battalion* 52nd formed at Newbury, Berks.
9 F	1817, 43rd (in Brigade with 7th and 23rd) reviewed by the Duke of Wellington at Valenciennes; strength, 785 of all ranks.
10 S	1804, *2nd Battalion* 43rd raised.
11 ✠	1804, William Napier joined the 43rd as Captain. 1812, the Light Division arrived at the Escurial, near Madrid, and halted in the Park.
12 M	1847, 52nd landed at Portsmouth after 11 years' foreign service.
13 TU	1762, 43rd at the capture of **Havanna**. 1858, 43rd engaged at Chitrakote (Indian Mutiny).
14 W	● 8h. 28m. a.m. 1857, 52nd took part in the siege of Delhi.
15 TH	1884, 52nd left Ireland for Gibraltar.
16 F	1807, *2nd Battalion* 52nd, with the troops under General Harry Burrard, landed about 8 miles from Copenhagen (Denmark).

Digitized by Google

AUGUST.

17 S	1790, 52nd took part in the siege of Dindigul (India).
18 S	1821, 43rd and 52nd reviewed by King George IV. in Dublin.
19 M	1808, 43rd and *2nd Battalion* 52nd landed in Portugal.
20 Tu	1884, 52nd arrived at Gibraltar on its 3rd visit.
21 W	1790, 52nd engaged in the assault on **Dindigul** (India). 1808, battle of **Vimiera.**
22 Th	☽ 7h. 52m. a.m. 1790, 52nd at assault on Paulighautcherry (India).
23 F	1793, 52nd present at the capture of **Pondicherry** (India).
24 S	1857, 52nd engaged at **Delhi.**
25 S	1800, both Battalions 52nd, which had left England about midsummer with a force on secret service under Sir J. Pulteney, landed in Spain. 1857, 52nd engaged all day before Delhi.
26 M	1800, both Battalions 52nd engaged the French at Ferrol. 1807, 43rd and 52nd engaged at Kioge, Denmark. 1808, *1st Battalion* 52nd landed in the Peninsula. 1891, General G. Whichcote, the last 52nd survivor of the Peninsular War and Waterloo, died, aged 97 years.
27 Tu	1776, engagement at **Brook Lyne,** Long Island (America).
28 W	1857, 52nd at Delhi. 1893, death of Gen. Hon. Sir A. A. Spencer, G.C.B., Colonel of the Regiment.
29 Th	○ 8h. 21m. p.m. 1808, 52nd on outpost work near Torres Vedras (Portugal). 1812, 52nd quartered at Getafe, near Madrid.
30 F	1812, the Light Division engaged at the passage of the Bidassoa.
31 S	1782, orders issued connecting the 52nd with the county of Oxfordshire, and the 43rd with Monmouthshire. 1813, storming of **San Sebastian;** Lieut. O'Connell, 43rd, and Lieut. Harvest, 52nd, *killed.*

Digitized by Google

SEPTEMBER.

1 ☯	1807, Danish Expedition, 2*nd Battalion* 52nd engaged in the siege of Copenhagen.
2 M	1857, 52nd engaged besieging Delhi; over 200 men in hospital.
3 Tu	1822, 43rd left Ireland for Gibraltar, where it arrived on the 19th.
4 W	1809, the Light Division, on the left bank of the Tagus, near Almarez, engaged with the French, and covered the march of the rest of the Army along the right bank.
5 Th	☾ 1h. 27m. p.m. 1807, siege of **Copenhagen.** 1858, 43rd engaged at Sahao (Indian Mutiny).
6 F	1857, 52nd before Delhi, 340 men of the regiment in hospital with fever. 1858, 43rd engaged at Punghattee Pass (Indian Mutiny).
7 S	1760, capitulation of **Montreal** (Canada) 43rd present. 1807, surrender of **Copenhagen.** 1841, Sergeant-Major Wasp, 43rd, promoted Ensign. 1857, siege of Delhi; 52nd at siege work during the night within 300 yards of the guns of the fortress.
8 ☯	1857, siege of Delhi continued, 52nd at Brind's Battery.
9 M	1821, Sergeant-Major Henry Sunderland, 52nd, promoted Ensign and Adjutant.
10 Tu	1790, 52nd present at the commencement of the siege of Paulighautcherry (India).
11 W	1777, 43rd and flank companies 52nd engaged at **Brandywine** (American War of Independence).
12 Th	● 9h. 19m. p.m. 1777, Battalion companies 52nd embarked to capture Newark (North America).
13 F	1759, 43rd took part in the Battle of **Quebec.**
14 S	1857, **Delhi,** 52nd present at the storming of the Cashmere Gate; *Victoria Crosses* won by Lance-Corporal Smith and Bugler Hawthorne. Sergeant-Major Streets for his conduct promoted to an Ensigncy in the 75th Regiment.
15 ☯	1857, 52nd took part in severe street fighting in Delhi.
16 M	1857, 52nd engaged in street fighting in Delhi.

Digitized by Google

SEPTEMBER.

17 Tu	1759, Quebec surrendered; 43rd formed part of the garrison of occupation. 1828, terrible epidemic broke out in 43rd at Gibraltar. 1857, 52nd at Delhi.
18 W	1857, 52nd still engaged in the streets of Delhi.
19 Th	1857, during the engagements with the mutineers from August 14th to September 20th, the 52nd lost:—*killed*, 1 Officer, 1 Sergeant, and 25 rank and file; *wounded*, 3 Officers, 82 rank and file; *died* of cholera and other diseases, 98 N.C.O's and men.
20 F	1777, American War of Independence. The Light Company 52nd, with a small force under Major-General Grey, at night surprised and defeated 1,500 Americans with 4 guns.
21 S	☽ 1h. 33m. a.m. 1790, conclusion of the siege of Paulighautcherry, 52nd present.
22 ☯	1790, 52nd formed part of the army which entered Paulighautcherry after 12 days' siege; *killed*, 1 Sergeant; *wounded*, 1 Officer, 3 rank and file.
23 M	1868, 52nd left Ireland for Malta.
24 Tu	1811, the Light Division at Horquerra on the River Vadillo (Spain).
25 W	1806, 1*st Battalion* 52nd left Plymouth for service in Sicily, where it remained until 1808.
26 Th	1810, skirmish near Martagao during the retreat towards Busaco.
27 F	1810, Battle of **Busaco.** Private James Hopkins, 52nd, in this action, took prisoner the French General Simon; for his gallantry he received a pension of £20 a year.
28 S	○ 5h. 36m. a.m. 1872, the 43rd embarked at Queenstown (Ireland) for India.
29 ☯	**Michaelmas Day.** 1790, 52nd marched from Coimbatore on Diraporam (India).
30 M	1810, commencement of retreat of Wellington's Army, after Busaco, on the lines of Torres Vedras, *viâ* Coimbra; the Light Division as rear-guard.

Digitized by Google

OCTOBER.

1 Tu	1853, Headquarters 52nd arrived at Calcutta on its 2nd visit to India.
2 W	1810, the Light Division retiring on Torres Vedras reached Pombal.
3 Th	1868, 52nd arrived at Malta, and after a week under canvas, marched to Fort Ricasoli.
4 F	☾ 8h. 52m. p.m. 1777, 43rd and 52nd engaged at German Town (America). 1831, 52nd left Canada for England.
5 S	1795, 52nd at the capture of Manaar (Ceylon) from the Dutch. 1857, 52nd left Delhi for the Punjab.
6 ☯	1777, 52nd at the capture of Forts Montgomery and Clinton (American War of Independence).
7 M	1748, numbered 43rd. 1777, 52nd at the capture of Fort Constitution (America). 1813, passage of the Bidassoa.
8 Tu	1830, Colour-Sergeant S. Rand 43rd promoted Quartermaster; he was one of the first Colour-Sergeants of the Regiment, made in 1813 for distinguished service. 1863, 43rd left Calcutta for New Zealand War.
9 W	1813, the Light Division engaged close to the Pass of Vera, some of the heights and redoubts being still in the occupation of the French Army. 1872, on H.M.S. *Jumna* arriving at Malta, special leave was granted to the Sergeants of the 43rd, by the Governor of the Island, to go on shore and mess with the Sergeants of the 52nd.
10 Th	1810, at Arriuda (Portugal), the Light Division on piquet work; this went on for 5 weeks, until eventually the French retired into winter quarters. 1874, Sergeant-Major Charles Costeloe, 43rd, promoted Quartermaster.
11 F	1838, 52nd embarked at Gibraltar for Barbadoes (West Indies) after a stay of 2 years. 1870, Captain Hatchell, 43rd, drowned in Queenstown Harbour (Ireland). 1887, new Colours presented to the 43rd by Lady Aberdare (daughter of Sir William Napier) at Shorncliffe.
12 S	● 1h. 11m. p.m. 1851, 43rd left England for the Kaffir War.
13 ☯	1811, 52nd marched from Casillas de Flores to Robledo.
14 M	1810, occupying a portion of the lines of Torres Vedras.
15 Tu	1807, 43rd left Copenhagen for England.
16 W	1859, 43rd with Nagode Force in pursuit of rebels (Central India).

Digitized by Google

OCTOBER.

17 TH	1811, 52nd marched from Robledo to Zamara preparatory to the siege of Ciudad Rodrigo.
18 F	1776, 52nd engaged at Pell's Point (America). 1791, 52nd took part in the storming of Nundydroog (India).
19 S	1881, 52nd moved from Chatham *viâ* Portsmouth to Ireland. 1887, the old Colours of the 43rd deposited in Monmouth Parish Church.
20 ☯	☽ 5h. 58m. p.m. 1817, 52nd as part of the Army of Occupation in France arrived at Thérouenne and went into cantonments.
21 M	1812, the Light Division made a movement to its left in consequence of the united forces of Soult and Joseph Buonaparte being in full march from Albacete upon Madrid.
22 TU	1812, the Light Division reached Vicalbaro.
23 W	1818, 43rd, 52nd and other Regiments of the Army of Occupation reviewed at Valenciennes by the Emperor of Russia and the King of Prussia.
24 TH	1842, 24 Sergeants' percussion fusils were received from England by the 52nd at Fredericton, New Brunswick.
25 F	1793, 43rd (1,100 strong) left England for West Indies.
26 S	1818, the Army of Occupation in France broke up.
27 ☯	○ 3h. 6m. p.m. 1779, 43rd joined Sir H. Clinton's Army at New York.
28 M	1776, 43rd and 52nd engaged at White Plains (America).
29 TU	1808, 1*st Battalion* 43rd landed at Corunna. 1858, Colour-Sergeant Arthur Williams promoted Quartermaster 43rd.
30 W	1812, the Light Division fell back on Madrid and the Retiro was blown up.
31 TH	1818, 43rd reached Calais *en route* to England.

Digitized by Google

NOVEMBER.

1 F	1808, Sir John Moore commenced his march from Spain into Portugal.
2 S	1815, 52nd, after a stay of two months, marched out of Paris and went into quarters at Versailles.
3 ☯	☾ 7h. 24m. a.m. 1831, 52nd marched from Southampton to Bristol to suppress the riots there.
4 M	1831, 52nd reached Bristol in aid of the Civil Power.
5 Tu	1863, 43rd *en route* from India to New Zealand, detained in quarantine at Mauritius. 1900, Mounted Infantry, *1st Battalion* engaged at **Bothaville,** 1 officer and rank and file *wounded.*
6 W	1838, 52nd disembarked at Barbadoes (West Indies).
7 Th	1812, 43rd joined Wellington's Army at Alva prior to the march on Salamanca.
8 F	1804, Sergeant-Major Joynt, 43rd, promoted Ensign.
9 S	1813, the Light Division engaged with the Army near the Pass of Vera forcing the mountainous frontier of Spain and France, moved out silently at night from its camp, and got into position within 300 yards of the French redoubt on the heights of La Petite Rhune, and surprised the enemy.
10 ☯	1813, battle of the **Nivelle,** Captain Capel, Colonel Lloyd, and Lieut. E. Freer, *killed,* and Captain Murchison (43rd) *mortally wounded.*
11 M	● 7h. 34m. a.m. 1876, 52nd left Portsmouth for Plymouth.
12 Tu	1813, the Light Division encamped near Arbonne after the battle of the Nivelle.
13 W	1876, 52nd went into garrison at Plymouth.
14 Th	1813, Lieut. Angrove, 43rd, died of wounds received at the Nivelle.
15 F	1812, the British Army, which had retired from Madrid to Salamanca, commenced its retirement on Portugal covered by the Light Division.
16 S	1776, 43rd and 52nd engaged at Fort Washington (America).

Digitized by Google

NOVEMBER.

17 S	1812, action on the Huebra.
18 M	1810, the Light Division at Valle (Spain) went into winter quarters opposite the French Army under Marshal Massena. 1812, retreat from Salamanca continued; after a night's bivouac in flooded land, continued the march knee-deep in water.
19 Tu	☽ 8h. 23m. a.m. 1812, arrived at and went into winter quarters at Ciudad Rodrigo. 1881, Colour-Sergeant George Williams promoted Quartermaster 43rd.
20 W	1776, 43rd engaged at New York Island (America). 1813, 52nd engaged at Arbonne.
21 Th	1853, 43rd marched from King William's Town to East London, South Africa, prior to embarkation for Madras.
22 F	1813, the Light Division slightly engaged near Bayonne.
23 S	1812, Lieut. Ridout, 43rd, died of wounds received at the action on the Huebra. 1813, Lieut. Baillie, 43rd, *killed* before Bayonne.
24 S	1808, Sergeant-Major John Winterbottom, 52nd, promoted Ensign and Adjutant. 1813, after the Nivelle, the Light Division went into position at Arcangues, forming part of a defensive line of posts on the frontier of France.
25 M	1800, 52nd landed at Lisbon.
26 Tu	○ 1h. 18m. a.m. 1875, 43rd moved from Cannanore (India) to Bellary.
27 W	1859, 43rd with Nagode Force in pursuit of rebels (India).
28 Th	1853, 43rd left South Africa for India. 1858, Lieut. Thomas R. Gibbons, 52nd, *killed* at Cawnpore.
29 F	1818, 1*st Battalion* 52nd landed at Ramsgate after 2 years' service in France. 1866, 52nd left Aldershot for Ireland.
30 S	**St. Andrew's Day.** 1843, a Regimental Savings Bank opened in the 52nd.

Digitized by Google

DECEMBER.

1 ☯	1776, 52nd left New York with Expedition to Rhode Island. 1852, 43rd camp in South Africa struck by lightning, 2 men *killed* and 19 *injured*. 1900, 1*st Battalion* detachment at Gottenburg; lost 1 man *killed* and 4 men *wounded*.
2 M	☾ 9h. 50m. p.m. 1858, 43rd engaged with rebels in **Central India.**
3 Tu	1799, War Office Authority to raise for the first time a 2*nd Battalion* for the 52nd.
4 W	1839, the 52nd at Barbadoes suffered much from an epidemic of yellow fever.
5 Th	1790, 52nd with British Force pursuing Tippoo marched on Trichinopoly (Southern India).
6 F	1837, consequent on the disturbed state of Canada, 43rd received orders to proceed by land from Fredericton to Quebec.
7 S	1875, 43rd furnished a Guard of Honour to H.R.H. the Prince of Wales during his tour in Southern India.
8 ☯	1806, 52nd landed in Sicily.
9 M	1813, 2*nd Battalion* 52nd embarked at Ramsgate to join Sir Thomas Graham's force in Holland. 1831, Sergeant-Major Priestley, 43rd, promoted Ensign.
10 Tu	1813, battle of the **Nive.**
11 W	● 2h. 53m. a.m. 1837, 43rd commenced the famous winter march from Fredericton, New Brunswick, to Quebec, proceeding in sleighs holding six to eight men. 1863, 43rd disembarked at Auckland, New Zealand.
12 Th	1837, 43rd reached Jones' Settlement in the march across the Portage of the Madawaska.
13 F	1837, 43rd reach Dedingee Settlement; thermometer below zero.
14 S	1783, 52nd took part in the storming of Cannanore. The "Forlorn Hope" consisted of 1 Officer, 1 Sergeant, and 31 rank and file of the Regiment, nearly all of whom were *killed* or *wounded*.
15 ☯	1837, 43rd reached the Grand Falls of the River St. John in their march across the Portage of the Madawaska.
16 M	1813, Sergeant-Major Harris, 43rd, promoted Ensign. 1826, 52nd received the "Light Infantry Musket," in Canada.

Digitized by Google

DECEMBER.

17 Tu	1851, 43rd landed in South Africa for the Kaffir War. 1864, 52nd sailed from India for England, after 12 years' foreign service.
18 W	☽ 8h. 35m. p.m. 1815, 52nd at St. Germains, near Paris.
19 Th	1768, by Royal Warrant issued this day, the facings of the 52nd were ordered to be buff, the red coats faced and lined with buff ornamented with white lace, red worm and one orange stripe, buff waistcoats and breeches, black gaiters.
20 F	1852, 43rd engaged at **Berea** (Kaffir War). 1854, Kaffir War medals presented to 43rd at Bangalore.
21 S	1791, 52nd took part in the storming of Savendroog (India). Whilst the Grenadier and Light Infantry Companies mounted the breach, the Band of the Regiment played "Britons, strike home."
22 ✠	1858, second engagement at **Kirwee** (India), 43rd present. 1899, 1*st Battalion* left England for South Africa.
23 M	1797, 43rd arrived at Martinique. 1828, end of the epidemic amongst 43rd at Gibraltar; 89 deaths in 3 months.
24 Tu	1761, 43rd landed at Barbadoes. 1791, 52nd took part in the capture of Ooreedroog (India). 1867, Banda and Kirwee prize-money distributed to the 43rd at Aldershot.
25 W	**Christmas Day.** ● 0h. 16m. p.m. 1808, both Battalions 52nd as part of Sir John Moore's rearguard from Sahagun (Portugal), started on the retreat to Corunna.
26 Th	*Bank Holiday.* 1815, occupation of Paris.
27 F	1884, detachments of 43rd engaged, for the second time, in the suppression of Moplah outbreak (Southern India).
28 S	1808, retreat on Corunna; rear-guard engaged at Benavente (Spain). 1837, first party of 43rd reached Quebec, having crossed the Portage of the Madawaska; 370 miles in 18 days, including 2 days' halt.
29 ✠	1808, retreat on Corunna; 1*st Battalion* 43rd and 2*nd Battalion* 52nd moved towards Vigo for embarkation. 1884, Private Barrett, 1*st Battalion*, gained the medal for distinguished conduct in the field against the Moplahs (Southern India).
30 M	1837, the second party of the 43rd reached Quebec from Fredericton. 1897, 2*nd Battalion* engaged with Afridis in the Khaibar Pass; 3 men *killed*, 3 officers and 11 men *wounded*.
31 Tu	1808, General Craufurd's Brigade, marching on Vigo, reached Camberos.

Digitized by Google

ARMY LIST.—1st JANUARY 1900.

THE OXFORDSHIRE LIGHT INFANTRY.

Regimental Dist. No. 43.....Oxford.

The United Red and White Rose.

"Quebec, 1759," "Mysore," "Hindoostan," "Vimiera," "Corunna," "Busaco," "Fuentes d'Onor," "Ciudad Rodrigo," "Badajoz," "Salamanca," "Vittoria," "Nivelle," "Nive," "Orthes," "Toulouse," "Peninsula," "Waterloo," "South Africa, 1851-2-3," "Delhi," "New Zealand."

Line and Militia Battalions.

1st Bn. (43rd Foot) .. *S. Africa*
2nd „ (52nd „) .. *Ferozepore, Punjab.*
3rd Bn. (R. Bucks Mil.) .. *High Wycombe.*
4th „ (Oxford Mil.) .. *Oxford.*
Depôt .. .. *Oxford.*

Uniform.—Scarlet. *Facings.*—White. *Agents.*—Messrs. Cox & Co.

Volunteer Battalions.

1. 1st .. .. *Oxford.*
2. 2nd .. .. *Oxford.*
3. 1st Bucks .. *Gt. Marlow.*
4. 4th .. .. *Eton.*

Colonel .. .. .. Wilkinson, Maj. Gen. (*Hon. Lt. Gen.*) F.G. 29Aug.93 15Oct.91

Officer Commanding Regtl. Dist. .. Strachan, Col. J. A. 23Oct.99

1st and 2nd Battalions.

Lt.-Colonels. (2)
2Plowden, F.H. 17June96
bt.-col. 20May98
1Dalzell, *Hon.* A. E. 23Oct.99

Majors. (2)
(*2nd in Command.*)
2Eccles, R. 26June96 27Sept.93
1Evelegh, F. J. 23Oct.99 13Dec.93

Majors. (6)
1Porter, R. W. 9Nov.94
m.c. Mockler-Ferryman, A. F. 27July95
2Clark, P. T. 16Mar.96
s. Hanbury-Williams, J. *C.M.G.* 17June96
1Mockler, G. F. 2Feb.98
1Day, C. R. 23Oct.99

Captains. (12)
Barton, D. J. 23Jan.92
m. *Hughes, R. G. H.* 27Feb.92
m. *Fairtlough, C. E. G. M.* 16Mar.92
Fanshawe, R. (*spec. ser. S. Africa*) 15Apr.92
1Lamotte, F.G.L. 2May92
Davies, H. R. 2May92
2White, E. D. 27July92
Luard, R. C. 17Dec.92
2Davy, J. D. W. 2Jan.93
d. 2Parr, C. 22Mar.93
1Lethbridge, E. A. E. 27Sept.93
r. *Owen, W.* 27Sept.93
2Childers, E. M. 16Oct.93
e.a. *Stanton, E. A.* 17Mar.94
bt. maj. 16Nov.98
s. *Napier, G. S. F., p.s.c.* 30May94
1Colvile, G. N. 9Nov.94
m.c. *Cuyler, Sir C., Bt* 8Jan.97
2Pearson, C. C 5June97
Owen, R. C. R. 10Feb.98
Ruck Keene, H. L. 28Oct.98
2Darell-Brown, H. F. 3Nov.98
1*Cobb, C. H., adjt.* 3Nov.98
1Watt, R. E. 8Mar.99
1Henley, F. J. 21Sept.99
2Hunter, W. C. 9Oct.99
1Wilkie, C. J. 23Oct.99
2Hamilton, K.R. 4Nov.99

Lieutenants. (19)
Eden, A. J. F. 17Mar.94
2*Feilden, R. M., adjt.* 18Aug.94
Osborn, P. B., D.S.O. 9Nov.94
2Marriott-Dodington, W. 16Jan.95
2Carter, L. J. 1Mar.96
Scott, L. F. (*spec. serv. S. Africa*) 8Jan.97
1Hammick, S. F. 5June97
1Bright, A. R. 17Nov.97
2Salkeld, R. E. 12Dec.97
2Chichester, C. O. 30Jan.98
Pope-Hennessy, L.H.R. 5Feb.98
1Stapleton, F.H. 5Mar.98
2Clayton, E. R. 5Mar.98
2Cardwell, C. A. 5Mar.98
2Frith, C. H. 18Sept.98
1Forrest, C. E. 25Oct.98
2Ward, L. E. S. 30Oct.98
1Ballard, J. A. 4Jan.99
2Hampden, O. R. L. 8Mar.99
1Foljambe, *Hon.* G. W. F. S. 21Sept.99
2Nisbet, H. C. 9Oct.99
1Henley, C. F. 23Oct.99
1Bayley, A. G. 4Nov.99
2Brooke, H. R. M. 24Nov.99

2nd Lieutenants. (12)
1Wood, H. L. 3Aug.98
1Fuller, J. F. C. 3Aug.98
2Keyworth, R. D. 4Jan.99
2Weatherby, J. T. 8Feb.99
2Mitchell, C. J. 11Feb.99
1Ball-Acton, V. A. 11Feb.99
e.a. *Nicklin, A.* 26Apr.99
2Ovey, R. L. 16Aug.99
1Sullivan, G. A. 6Dec.99
1Brooke, R. R. M. 9Dec.29

Adj. 2Feilden, R. M., *lt.* 1Mar.96
1Cobb, C. H., *capt.* 25Aug.97

Q.M. Williams, G. 19Nov.81
hon. capt. 19Nov.91
Hirst, G. A. 27June83
hon. capt. 27June93
2King, T., *hon. lt.* 24Nov.97
1Ross, W., *hon. lt.* 2Feb.98

3rd Battalion.

Hon. Colonel.
Pratt, W. C. 8Dec.80

Lt.-Colonel.
Orkney, E. W., *Earl of* 2Mar.98

Majors.
Terry, W. 24Apr.97
Good, A. W. H. (*H.*) 2Apr.98

Captains. (8)
p.s. Paske, G.F. (*H.*), *I. of M.* 22Mar.90
Hall, C. S. 8Mar.93
Thoroton, F. G. D. (*H.*) 7May94
Mainwaring, C. F. K. 31Oct.94
Rose, P. V. 6Feb.95
p.s. Dashwood, *Sir* R. J., *Bt.* (*H.*) 26Feb.96
Walsh, B. J. M. 27July98
Chinnery, E. H. 4Mar.99

Lieuts. and 2nd Lieuts. (12)

Lieutenants.
Wallington, E. W. 4July85
p.s. Christie-Miller, S. R. 27July98
Logan, R. M. 23Aug.99
p.s. de La Pasture, C. E. 23Aug.99
Rose, I. S. C. 23Aug.99

2nd Lieutenants.
Verney, R. 1July98
Gilliland, E. G. 31July98
Bartlett, C. F. N. 22Mar.99

I. of M. Paske, G. F., *capt.*

Adj. Fairtlough, C. E. G. M., Capt. Oxf. L. I. 27Feb.97
(*Capt. in the Army* 16Mar.92)

Q.M. Williams, G., *hon capt.*

4th Battalion.

"Mediterranean."

Hon. Colonel.
p.s. Annesley, Hon. *A. S. A. hon. c.* 12Dec.91

Lt.-Colonel.
Bulkeley, C. R., *hon. c.* (*H.*) 28Nov.91

Majors.
Willan, F. *hon. l.c.* (T) 19Dec.91
Fortescue, H. C. *hon. l.c.* (*H.*) 16Dec.96

Captains. (6)
Warner, T. C. T., *hon. m.* 19Dec.91
Blyth, J. (*H.*) 17Apr.95
Pulteney, R. P. 1May95
Milton, W. C. De M. *Viset.* 11Apr.96
p.s. Barrington, W. R. S. (*H.*) 6Jan.97
Aberdour, S. C. W. *Lord*, (*H.*), *I. of M.* 18Jan.99

Lieuts. and 2nd Lieuts. (9)

Lieutenants.
North, A. K. 25Jan.99
Annesley, *Hon.* A. 6Dec.99
White, S. G. R. 6Dec.99

2nd Lieutenant.
Douglas, *Hon.* C. W. S. 7Dec.98
Willan, R. H. 20Dec.99
Jackson, H. N. 20Dec.99

I. of M. Aberdour, S. C. W. *Lord, capt.* 28Dec.98

Adj. Hughes, R. G. H., Capt. Oxf. L.I. 1Dec.96
(*Capt. in the Army* 27Feb.92)

Q.M. Hirst, G. A., *hon capt.*

Digitized by Google

ARMY LIST.—31st DECEMBER 1900.

THE OXFORDSHIRE LIGHT INFANTRY.

Regimental Dist. No. 43.....Oxford.

The United Red and White Rose.

"Quebec, 1759," "Mysore," "Hindoostan," "Vimiera," "Corunna," "Busaco," "Fuentes d'Onor," "Ciuda Rodrigo," "Badajoz," "Salamanca," "Vittoria," "Nivelle," "Nive," "Orthes," "Toulouse," "Peninsula," "Waterloo," "South Africa, 1851-2-3," "Delhi," "New Zealand."

Line and Militia Battalions.

1st Bn. (43rd Foot) .. *S. Africa.*
2nd „ (52nd „) .. *Ferozepore, Punjab.*
Details .. .. .. *Buttevant.*
3rd Bn. (R. Bucks Mil.) .. *High Wycombe.*
4th „ (Oxford Mil.) .. *Oxford* (Embodied *Gosport*).

Depôt .. .. *Oxford.*

Uniform.—Scarlet. *Facings.*—White. *Agents.*—Messrs. Cox & Co.

Volunteer Battalions.

1. 1st .. .. *Oxford.*
2. 2nd .. .. *Oxford.*
3. 1st Bucks .. *Gt. Marlow.*
4. 4th .. .. *Eton.*

Colonel .. .. .. Wilkinson, Maj. Gen. (*Hon. Lt. Gen.*) F. G. 29Aug.93
15Oct.91

Officer Commanding Regtl. Dist. .. Strachan, Col. J. A. 20Oct.99.

1st and 2nd Battalions.

Lt.-Colonels. (2)
1Dalzell, *Hon.* A. E. 23Oct.99
2Eccles, R. 2Sept.00

Majors. (2)
(*2nd in Command.*)
1Porter, R. W. 2Sept 00
9Nov.94
2Clark, P. T. 27Sept.00
16Mar.96

Majors. (6)
Hanbury-Williams, J. *C.M.G.* 17June96
1Mockler, G. F. 2Feb.98
v. Barton, D. J. 27Feb.00
m. Hughes, R. G. H. 7July00
Fanshawe, R. 2Sept.00
m. Fairtlough, C. F. G. M. 27Sept.00

Captains. (12)
1Lamotte, F. G. L. 2May92
Davies, H. R. 2May92
2White, E. D. 27July92
v. Luard, R. C. 17Dec.92
2Davy, J. D. W. 2Jan.93
d. 2Parr, C. 22Mar.93
1Lethbridge, E. A. E. 27Sept.93
v. Owen, W. 27Sept.93
2Childers, E. M. 16Oct.93
e.a. Stanton, E. A. 17Mar.94
bt. maj. 16Nov.98
Napier, G. S. F., p.s.c. (*spec. serv. China.*) 30May94
1Colvile, G. N. 9Nov.94
m.c. Cuyler, Sir*C., Bt* 8Jan.97
2Pearson, C. C 5June97
Owen, R. C. R. 10Feb.98
Ruck Keene, H. L. 28Oct.98
2Darell-Brown, H. F. 3Nov.98
1*Cobb, C. H., adjt.* 3Nov.98
1Watt, R. E. 8Mar.99
1Henley, F. J. 21Sept.99
2Hunter, W. C. 9Oct.99
d. 1Wilkie, C. J. 23Oct.99
2Hamilton, K. R. 4Nov.99
Eden, A. J. F. 24Feb.00
1Feilden, R. M. 24Feb.00
Osborn, P. B., D.S.O. 27Feb.00
2*Marriott-Dodington, W., adj.* 27Feb.00
1Carter, L. J. 27Feb.00
d. Cotton, H. R. S., *Res. of Off.* 28May00
2Scott, L. F. 27Sept.00

Lieutenants. (19)
1Hammick, S. F. 5June97
2Salkeld, R. E. 12Dec.97
2Chichester, C. O. 30Jan.98
Pope-Hennessy, L. H. R. 5Feb.98
1Stapleton, F. H. 5Mar.98
2Clayton, E. R. 5Mar.98
2Cardwell, C. A. 5Mar.98
2Frith, C. H. 18Sept.98
1Forrest, C. E. 25Oct.98
2Ward, L. E. S. 28Oct.98
1Ballard, J. A. 4Jan.99
2Hampden, O. R. L. 8Mar.99
1Foljambe, *Hon.* G. W. F. S. 21Sept.99
2Nisbet, H. C. 9Oct.99
1Henley, C. F. 23Oct.99
p.d. Richards, C. H. 7Apr.00
18June97
1Bayley, A. G. 4Nov.99
2Brooke, H. R. M. 24Nov.99
1Wood, H. L. 19Feb.00
1Fuller, J. F. C. 24Feb.00
2Keyworth, R. D. 30July00

2nd Lieutenants. (12)
2Weatherby, J. T. 8Feb.99
2Mitchell, C. J. 11Feb.99
e.a. *Nicklin, A.* 26Apr.99
2Ovey, R. L. 16Aug.99
1Sullivan, G. A. 6Dec.99
1Brooke, R. R. M. 9Dec.99
1Ward, H. F. 20Jan.00
1Simpson, R. V. 20Jan.00
1Kirkpatrick, E. H. 24Jan.00
1Logan, R. M. 14Feb.00
1White, S. G. R. 14Feb.00
2Norman, A. C. 17Feb.00
2Thorne, A. C. D. 21Feb.00
2Shaw, B. H. 21Feb.00
1Scott-Murray, F. J 4Apr.00
2Dillon, H. M. 18Apr.00
1Higgins, C. G. 21Apr.00
Wingfield, M. ff. R. 21Apr.00
d. Knox, H. V., *Res. of Off.* 18May00
Tunnard, L. 11Aug.00

Adjutants.
1Cobb, C. H., *capt.* 25Aug.97
2Marriott-Dodington, W., *capt.* 1Mar.00

Quarter-Masters.
Williams, G. 19Nov.81
hon. capt. 19Nov.91
Hirst, G. A., 27June83
hon. capt. 27June93
2King, T., *hon. lt.* 24Nov.97
1Ross, W., *hon. lt.* 2Feb.98

3rd Battalion.

(Embodied, 17 Jan. 00 to 1 Nov. 00.)

Hon. Colonel.
Lee, E. D. *hon. c.* 4Aug.00

Lt.-Colonel.
Orkney, E. W., *Earl of* 2Mar.98

Majors.
Terry, W. 24Apr.97
Good, A. W. H. (*H.*) 2Apr.98

Captains. (8)
p.s. Faske, G.F., (*H.*) 22Mar.90
Hall, C. S. 8Mar.93
Thoroton, F. G. D. (*H.*) 7May94
Mainwaring, C. F. K. 31Oct.94
Rose, P. V. 6Feb.95
p.s. Dashwood, *Sir* R. J., *Bt.* (*H.*) 26Feb.96
Walsh, B. J. M. 27July98
Chinnery, E. H. 4Mar.99

Lieuts. and 2nd Lieuts. (12)

Lieutenants.
Wallington, E. W. 4July85
p.s. Christie-Miller, S. R. 27July98
Higgins, R. S. G. 4Aug.00
Brakspear, R. W. (*H.*) 4Aug.00
Harcourt, G. E. (*H.*) 4Aug.00
Boyle, F. J. 4Aug.00
Doran, J. C. M. 4Aug.00
Tarver, F. F. 4Aug.00

2nd Lieutenants.
Young, R. H. 2Nov.00
Tylden, G. 2Nov.00

Inst. of Musk.

Adjutant.
Fairtlough, C. E. G. M. Maj. Oxf. L. I. 27Feb.97

Quarter-Master.
Williams, G., *hon. capt.*

4th Battalion.

"Mediterranean."

(Embodied, 1 May 00)

Hon. Colonel.
p.s. Aynesley, Hon. *A. S. A., hon. c.* 12Dec.91

Lt.-Colonel.
Bulkeley, C. R., *hon. c.* (*H.*) 28Nov.91

Majors.
Willan, F. *hon. l.c.* T. (*H.*) 19Dec.91
Fortescue, H. C. *hon. l.c.* (*H.*) 16Dec.96

Captains. (6)
Warner, T. C. T., *hon. m.* 19Dec.91
Blyth, J. (*H.*) 17Apr.95
Pulteney, R. P. 1May95
Milton, W. C. De M., Visct. 11Apr.96
p.s. Barrington, W. R. S. (H.) 6Jan.97
Aberdour, S. C. W., *Lord* (*H.*), *I. of M.* 18Jan.99

Lieuts. and 2nd Lieuts. (9)

Lieutenants.
Willan, R. H. 13June00
Jackson, H. N. 13June00
Croft, B. T. H. 13June00
Godsal, P. 13June00
Brooke, T. R. 29Aug.00
Bulkeley, F. R. 12Dec.00

2nd Lieutenants.
Wingfield, *Hon.* M. R. 15May00
Strachey, E., jun. 26Aug.00
Worthington, H. 12Dec.00

Inst. of Musk.
Aberdour, S. C. W., *Lord, capt.* 28Dec.98

Adjutant.
Hughes, R. G. H., Maj. Oxf. L.I. 11Dec.96

Quarter-Master.
Hirst, G. A., *hon. capt.*

Digitized by Google

1st BATTALION, 1st JANUARY 1900.

Roll of Officers.

Lieut.-Colonel.

Hon. A. E. Dalzell.

Majors.

F. J. Evelegh.[1]
G. F. Mockler.
R. W. Porter.
C. R. Day.

Captains.

F. G. L. Lamotte.
G. N. Colvile.[1]
F. J. Henley.
E. A. E. Lethbridge.
R. E. Watt.
C. J. Wilkie.[2]
K. R. Hamilton.[3]

Lieutenants.

S. F. Hammick.
C. E. Forrest.[1]
Hon. G. W. F. S. Foljambe.
F. H. Stapleton.
J. A. Ballard.
C. F. Henley.
A. G. Bayley.

2nd Lieutenants.

H. L. Wood.
J. F. C. Fuller.
V. A. Ball-Acton.
G. A. Sullivan.
R. R. M. Brooke.[1]

Adjutant.

Captain C. H. Cobb.

Quartermaster.

Lieut. William Ross.

---

[1] With Mounted Infantry, awaiting embarkation.
[2] In charge of Details in England.
[3] Attached from *2nd Battalion.*

Digitized by Google

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS
R L

Digitized by Google

G. Philip & Son. London & Liverpool

Digitized by Google

Officers extra-regimentally employed.

Major A. F. Mockler-Ferryman, Instructor (Acting Professor), Military Topography, Royal Military College, Sandhurst.

Major J. Hanbury-Williams, C.M.G., Military Secretary to the Governor, South Africa.

Captain R. G. H. Hughes, Adjutant, 4th Oxfordshire Light Infantry.

Captain C. E. G. M. Fairtlough, Adjutant, 3rd Oxfordshire Light Infantry.

Captain R. C. Luard, Adjutant, 4th Volunteer Battalion, East Surrey Regiment.

Captain W. Owen, Adjutant, 1st Bucks Volunteers.

Captain *Sir* Charles Cuyler, *Bart.*, Instructor, Military Engineering, Royal Military College, Sandhurst.

Captain R. C. R. Owen, Uganda Rifles.

Captain H. L. Ruck Keene, Adjutant, Mounted Infantry, South African Field Force.

Lieut. A. J. F. Eden, West African Frontier Force.

Lieut. L. F. Scott, Special Service, South Africa.

Lieut. A. R. Bright, Attached Durham Light Infantry, South African Field Force.

Lieut. L. H. R. Pope-Hennessy, East African Rifles.

Warrant-Officers and Staff-Sergeants.

Sergeant-Major Thomas Pears.

Bandmaster Albert Lamb.

Quartermaster-Sergeant Thomas Ivey.

Sergeant-Bugler Albert Hughes.

Sergeant-Instructor of Musketry, Charles Hyde.

Armourer-Sergeant Thomas Frederick Lewis.

Digitized by Google

THE 1st BATTALION AND THE WAR IN SOUTH AFRICA, 1900.

OWING to the fact that the 1st Battalion has, throughout the year, been almost continuously on the march and actively engaged in South Africa, it has been impossible to obtain from any one officer serving with the Battalion a detailed account of its movements. All, therefore, that we can offer to readers of the CHRONICLE this year is a compilation from the various private journals and letters of officers that we have had the opportunity of reading, supplemented with sufficient information from newspapers and other sources[1] to make clear the general sequence of events.

Diary :—

January 1st, 1900, S.S. GAIKA, on voyage to South Africa.—Weather fine but very hot; troops went into khaki clothing. An outbreak of influenza on board, 30 men of the Regiment and 50 of the Buffs in hospital. Position at noon, lat. 93° 2′ N.; long. 17° 1′ W. Run 305 miles.

January 2nd.—Influenza increasing. Very hot day; rain in afternoon. Position at noon, lat. 4° 37′ N.; long. 15° 4′ W. Run, 317 miles.

January 3rd.—Revolver match, Officers Oxfordshire Light Infantry *v.* Officers of the Buffs. Target: bottles hung at the end of a pole over the ship's side; firing point, the gangway; range, about 60 feet; conditions, six a-side, six shots each. The result was a tie, each side securing six hits. The tie was then shot off, and resulted in a win for the Oxfordshire Light Infantry by one hit. Crossed the line about 2 p.m.—the furthest south that the Battalion has been since its return from New Zealand in 1866. Position at noon, lat. 0° 27′ N., long. 12° 59′ W. Run, 280 miles.

---

[1] Our thanks are especially due to Major J. E. Caunter, D.A.A.G., 6th Division, who published an article entitled "From Enslin to Bloemfontein with the 6th Division" in the *Journal of the Royal United Service Institution*, October, 1900.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

January 4th.—S.E. trade winds encountered; much cooler. Influenza increasing, two serious cases. Position at noon, lat. 3° 46′ S., long. 11° 18′ W. Run, 272 miles.

January 5th.—Corporal Baxter dangerously ill with influenza. Position at noon, lat. 8° 10′ S.; long. 9° 23′ W. Run, 288 miles.

January 6th.—Quoit handicap; Musketry practice by Reserve men continued. Much cooler; in serge clothing again.

January 7th.—Reached St. Helena at 9 a.m. Many of the officers went on shore, and visited the various points of interest connected with Napoleon's exile. Left the same evening.

January 8th.—Major Pike's charger died.

January 9th.—General Knox's charger died.

January 13th.—The *Gaika* arrived at Table Bay at midnight, the voyage from St. Helena having been without incident.

The following is a summary of the military situation in South Africa on the arrival at Capetown of the Battalion:—

In Natal, Ladysmith was still besieged; General Buller's relief force, having met with a reverse at Colenso, had crossed the Tugela higher up at Potgieter's Drift, and was attempting to relieve Ladysmith from that direction. In Cape Colony, south of the Orange River, the British troops were on the defensive; the Boers, holding the river crossings, had invaded the Colony in considerable numbers, and had gained some minor successes. Kimberley was invested by the Boers, and Lord Methuen's force was held in check by the enemy in position about Magersfontein. Mafeking was still holding out, but with little prospect of being relieved; while a small force under Colonel Plumer was operating in Northern Rhodesia. The new plan of campaign had, however, been already worked out by Lord Roberts, who had arrived in South Africa a few days before the Battalion. Up to this, practically no head had been made against the Boers in any part of South Africa; they had invaded British territory on all sides, and so far we had been powerless to eject them. It was a great

Digitized by Google

stroke of luck for the Battalion that it arrived at Cape Town in the nick of time, and was enabled to take part in Lord Roberts' first successes—the most decisive operations of the whole campaign.

Diary continued :—

January 14th.—The *Gaika* entered the harbour at 9 a.m., and the troops disembarked at once, with orders to entrain for Naauwpoort forthwith. Several hours were spent on the quay sorting the baggage, which had been hopelessly mixed up by the ship's people, and eventually the troops had to go on without their baggage, which followed by a later train. The headquarters of the Brigade and the headquarters of the Buffs left Cape Town at 4 p.m., headquarters Oxfordshire Light Infantry at 5 p.m., and the remainder at 10 p.m.

January 16th.—By 2.30 p.m. the whole of the Battalion had reached Naauwpoort.[1]

Extract from letter, dated January 17th, Naauwpoort :—

On arrival here we were told that General French (with his Cavalry Brigade and two Batteries R.H.A.) was out near Colesberg, and that General Clements (with three Battalions of his Infantry Brigade) had gone out to join him. Constant fighting on a small scale is going on, but it is too far away for us to see or hear anything of it. The country round this place is a stony desert, with rugged hills (kopjes) rising out of it—much more open than that to the south, through which we have passed. From what we can gather, the idea is that two Divisions will concentrate here, and an advance made *viâ* Norval's Pont, into the Free State. But one cannot say what will happen, as we get much less news here than you do in England. Anyhow I fancy, however things go, our Division will be well in it. We are likely to remain here a day or two, as we have not yet got our transport ; but, as soon as that arrives, we may be off any day, the first object of the concentration here being to drive the Boers out of our territory and over the Orange River. Then we shall have to get across, which I fancy will be a stiff job, as the river is rising daily, and is already quite unfordable. Our swords have been exchanged for carbines, and we are being equipped with buff belts, so that we may resemble the men as much as possible. Ruck Keene is at Colesberg, his Mounted

[1] *Vide* General Map, page 29.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY
ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS
R L

Digitized by Google

Infantry Battalion being attached to French's force. Fanshawe is also here in charge of a section of the railway line, and is constantly up and down seeing that the Volunteers guarding the various bridges and stations are at their posts and on the alert. It is very hot here, but of course nothing like the Punjab in the hot weather. Officers' kits have been cut down to 35 lbs., including bedding.

Extract from letter, dated Thebus, 26th January :—

We left Naauwpoort on the 24th January, and railed, *viâ* Rosmead Junction, to this place, the object of the movement being to repair the line from Rosmead to Steynsberg, and eventually (when Gatacre has it) to Stormberg. Another reason for our visit to this part of the country is, that it is a hotbed of disloyalty (especially the Dutch farmers), and our Intelligence people are busy finding out who are absent from their farms, with a view to settling up with them later on. Our force here consists of ourselves, the Buffs, two field guns, and a Railway Company, R.E., the latter strengthened by a good many refugee railway men from the Free State and the Transvaal. We also have 150 of the 1st City (Cape Town) Mounted Infantry—a very fine lot. The journey from Naauwpoort to Rosmead was an ordinary one; but soon after leaving the latter place, we picked up the Mounted Infantry, who scouted on ahead of the train, while our Engineer Officers examined the bridges and culverts before we crossed. On arriving at this place, it was found that an iron girder bridge (span about 100 feet) was a good deal damaged; so we halted and pitched camp, and the Engineers are now repairing it. The work will take two or three days, as the occasional heavy rains bring down flushes from the hills, and the *donga* becomes a torrent, thus delaying the work. I believe that the gentleman who did the damage is known, as the head ganger, who was forced to bore the holes in the piers for the explosive, has split on him. He is a local farmer, and he and his family are away from home at present.

We saw a most revolting sight at one of the farms here yesterday—a deaf and dumb idiot chained up to a post in front of the house. The poor creature was filthily dirty, and apparently treated like a dog. From all accounts idiots are very numerous in the country, and they are always treated in this way; they are supposed to be the result of the in-breeding among the Dutch farmers.

We officers have discarded Sam Brown belts, and badges of all sorts, and we now parade in exactly the same kit as the men, except that we carry a carbine instead of a rifle. The men still get excellent food,

Digitized by Google

fresh provisions most days, including bread. Water is rather scarce, so there is not much washing done.

Our next move will be about eight miles further on, to a spot where another bridge has been destroyed; there we have a hope that we may meet our first Boers, as it is more than probable that they will push forward a force from Stormberg to check our advance.

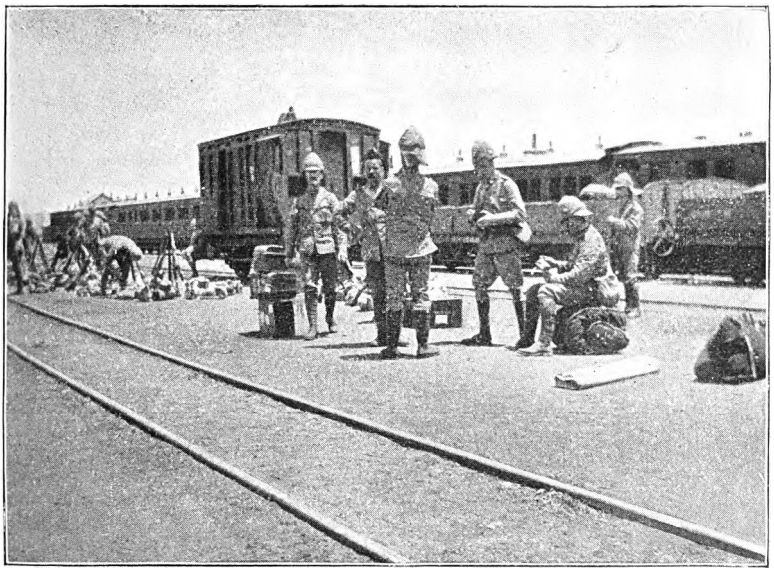
On the 30th January, while the Regiment was still at Thebus, sudden orders were received to strike camp and entrain. No destination was mentioned, but the trains conveyed the Regiment and the rest of General Knox's Brigade to Naauwpoort, De Aar, and eventually to Modder River. Each time the train stopped everyone imagined that the journey was at an end, but as it turned out, the troops did not leave the train for a day and a half. The following is extracted from an officer's letter:—

We had a jolly journey, as you may imagine. No carriages were available, so we went in the ordinary open trucks, and ours (to make matters more pleasant) had carried coal on its last trip. What with the heat, the dust from the permanent way, and the coal dust, we were a nice-looking lot at the end of our thirty-two hours' journey; anyhow it brought matters to a crisis, and I *had* to have a tub yesterday—the first for twelve days. (*N.B.* Water was a bit scarce at Thebus.) We are encamped here (Modder River) on the ground over which the Guards advanced during the fight. No wonder they lost heavily, for the country is perfectly flat and absolutely destitute of cover of any kind. The river flows about 800 yards to our north, and both banks still show traces of the Boer trenches, though most of them have been filled in, and the ground levelled for camping on. Across the river to the north is our artillery position, and shells are fired into the Magersfontein position at frequent intervals, but the Boers do not reply now. At the present moment the balloon is up, and giving information as to aiming to our gunners. Our camp, being on the extreme south, is well out of the range of the Boer guns. Our Brigade should be complete this evening, when the West Riding Regiment comes in, and General Kelly-Kenny arrives to-morrow. Report also says that Lord Roberts is to be here very shortly; if so, it looks like an advance into the Free State at once. The Kimberley searchlight was hard at work signalling all last night, but as everything was in cypher, of course we could read nothing.

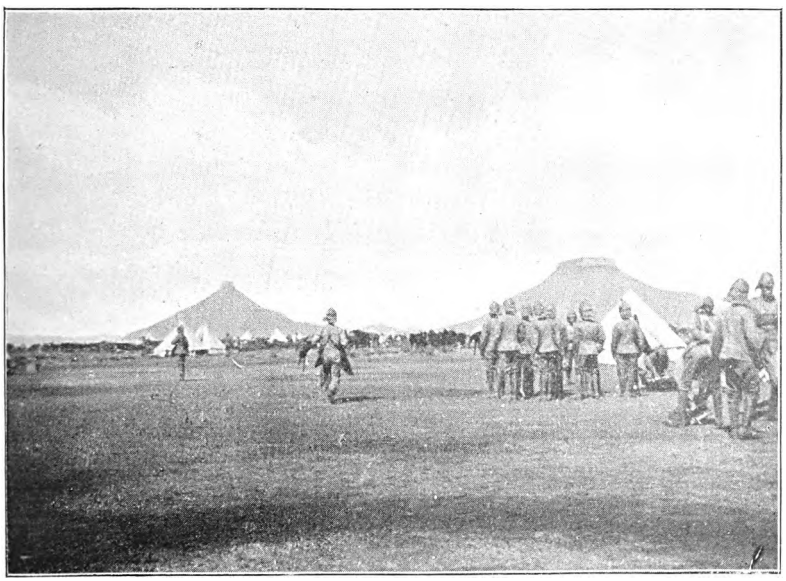
Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google



NAAUWPOORT STATION.



AT THEBUS.

Digitized by Google

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY
ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS
R L

Digitized by Google

Hamilton has had to go into hospital with dysentery, and young Henley (C.F.) is still in hospital at Naauwpoort, so we are getting short-handed already, before seeing a shot fired. The usual daily dust-storm is just coming on.

Extract from letter, dated Modder River Camp, 8th February:—

We have had a week of inaction, though we have just got an order to be ready to move at a moment's notice, which way we have no idea, but we imagine it will be backwards. Lords Roberts and Kitchener are actually here now, and they rode round the outposts to-day. The Highland Brigade have been out for the last few days to the west (Koodoosberg), and apparently they have had a fight, as a convoy of wounded (about eighty) passed through our camp this afternoon. Dust, dirt, and picquet duty are the only excitements in camp, with an occasional shell from the naval guns into the enemy's camp, just to let them know that we are still here. The Regiment is wretchedly weak, under 600, and we shall be glad to get the draft which we hear is coming out. Hamilton is fit for duty again, and has been appointed Adjutant of Mounted Infantry. Private Turner was drowned while bathing in the river on the 4th, his body not being recovered until the next day.

THE INVASION OF THE ORANGE FREE STATE.[1]

The presence of Lord Roberts and Lord Kitchener in Modder River Camp was at once taken as an indication that some movement of considerable importance was about to take place; nor was much time given for speculation, for on the 10th February the machinery was set in motion, and the great advance commenced. So secret was everything kept, that even when the troops had started, nothing had transpired as to the immediate objective.

Certain changes had taken place in the 6th Division, the 18th Brigade having been substituted for the 12th Brigade (Major-General Clements), which it had been found necessary to leave in the neighbourhood of Coles-

[1] *Vide* Map, page 76.

Digitized by Google

berg. The strength and composition of the Division was as follows :—

6TH DIVISION.

In Command . . .	Lieut.-General T. Kelly-Kenny, C.B.
Aides-de-Camp . . .	Captain Booth, The Buffs; Captain Maurice, Derbyshire Regiment.
Assistant Adjutant-General and Chief Staff Officer .	Colonel A. E. W. Goldsmid.
D.A.A.G.'s . . .	Major C. C. Monro, The Queen's, Major J. E. Caunter, Lancashire Fusiliers; and Major Webb, Army Service Corps.
Commanding Royal Engineers	Lieut.-Colonel Buston.
Commanding Royal Artillery	Lieut.-Colonel McDonnell.
Principal Medical Officer .	Lieut.-Colonel W. L. Gubbins, Royal Army Medical Corps.
Medical Officer . . .	Major Skinner.
Assistant Provost-Marshal.	Major M. G. Wilkinson, King's Own Scottish Borderers.
Signalling Officer . .	Captain J. T. Burnett-Stuart, Rifle Brigade.
Chaplains . . .	Rev. F. Norman-Lee, and Rev. J. Blackburn.

13TH BRIGADE.

In Command . . .	Major-General C. E. Knox.
Aide-de-Camp . . .	Captain O. H. E. Marescaux, Shropshire Light Infantry.
Brigade-Major . . .	Captain R. W. Thompson, Loyal North Lancashire Regiment.

Troops.

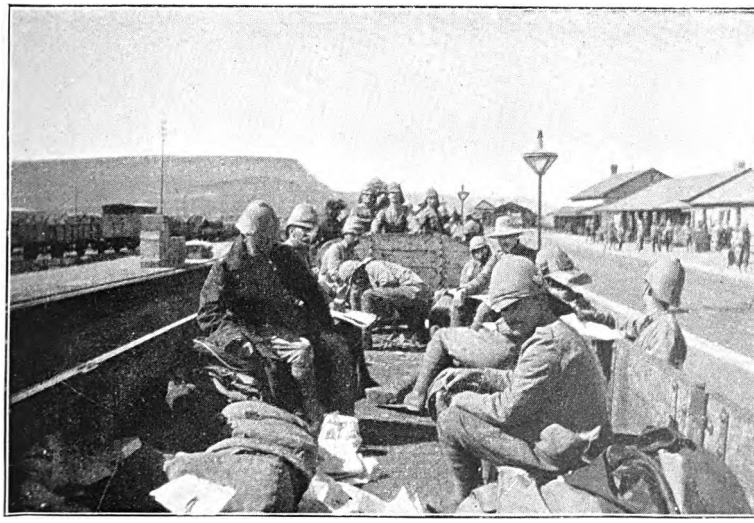
2nd The Buffs (East Kent Regiment) .	Lieut.-Colonel Hickson, 18 officers, 786 N.C.O's and men.
2nd Gloucestershire Regiment . .	Lieut.-Colonel Lindsell, 23 officers, 716 N.C.O's and men.
1st West Riding Regiment . . .	Lieut.-Colonel Lloyd, D.S.O., 23 officers, 789 N.C.O's and men.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

ARRIVAL IN CAMP.



AT NAAUWPOORT.

Digitized by Google

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY
ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS

Digitized by Google

1st Oxfordshire Light Infantry. .	Lieut.-Colonel the Hon. A. E. Dalzell, 20 officers,[1] and 598 N.C.O's and men.

18TH BRIGADE.

In Command . .	Major-General T. E. Stephenson.
Aide-de-Camp . .	Lieut. Howard, Essex Regiment.
Brigade-Major . .	Lieut. Pratt, Essex Regiment.

Troops.

1st P.W.O. Yorkshire Regiment	Lieut.-Colonel H. Bowles, 21 officers, 953 N.C.O's and men.
1st Welch Regiment . .	Lieut.-Colonel Banfield, 23 officers, 875 N.C.O's and men.
1st Essex Regiment . . .	Major F. Brown, 23 officers, 936 N.C.O's and men.

BRIGADE DIVISION, R.A.

76th Battery	Major Harrison.
81st "	Major Chapman.
82nd "	Major Pratt.

ROYAL ENGINEERS.

38th Field Company . . .	Major Roper.

Although we are only concerned with the movements of the 6th Division, a better understanding of these will be arrived at by knowing something of Lord Roberts' general plan, which can best be described by quoting at length from a valuable article that appeared some months afterwards in *The Times* :—

It was obvious that Bloemfontein would be the object of the Field-Marshal's move. There were three lines open for an advance upon this

[1] Names of the Officers :—Lieut. Colonel. Hon. A. E. Dalzell (commanding) ; Major R. W. Porter (2nd in command) ; Capt. C. H. Cobb (Adjutant) ; Lieut. W. Ross (Quartermaster) ; Lieut. A. G. Bayley (Transport Officer) ; Major W. Pike, R.A.M.C. (Medical Officer). A Company : Lieut. Hon. G. W. F. S. Foljambe, 2nd Lieut. G. A. Sullivan. B Company : Capt. F. J. Henley, Lieut. C. F. Henley. C Company : Capt. E. A. E. Lethbridge, Lieut. S. F. Hammick, Lieut. F. H. Stapleton. D Company : Capt. R. E. Watt, Lieut. H. L. Wood. E Company : Major G. F. Mockler, Lieut. L. F. Scott. F Company : Capt F. G. Lamotte, 2nd Lieut. V. A. Ball-Acton. H. Company : Major C. R. Day. Lieut. J. F. C. Fuller commenced the march, but was invalided on Feb. 11th.

Digitized by Google

objective, each of which had railway communication, as least as far as the frontiers of the Orange Free State. A meaner strategist than Lord Roberts might have chosen the more direct line. An advance to either Norval's Pont or Bethulie would have had the advantage of clearing Cape Colony of the enemy before the counter-invasion was undertaken. Such an advance would doubtless have raised the siege of Kimberley and have lessened the pressure in Natal. But the enemy, destroying his railway, would have had a very strong line of defence in the Orange River, and even when driven from it, no doubt at heavy cost, would have fallen back, unbroken in *moral*, to gather again to oppose in strength the subsequent advance. Lord Roberts's strategy was more comprehensive and far-reaching. Rather than clear Cape Colony, he purposely weakened his line in front of Colesberg and gathered his strength for the decisive blow which, with one stroke, would relieve Kimberley, place the British forces in command of a direct road in favourable country upon the Free State capital, scatter the enemy, and automatically influence the pressure in Cape Colony and Natal. That the scheme necessarily included the capture of Cronje and his force is perhaps giving it too comprehensive a standard. But Lord Roberts was at least justified in expecting from it the capture of some of the guns and other *impedimenta* of the force investing Kimberley as the latter broke away to the north or west. Besides, when Lord Roberts decided upon his line of advance, he could not have known that Cronje would select the line of the Modder River for his retreat. If this had been certain the Cavalry would never have been sent into Kimberley. The Field-Marshal's first object was to maintain as many as possible of the enemy in Cape Colony and to keep Cronje at Magersfontein. With great secrecy the Cavalry Division was withdrawn from the neighbourhood of Colesberg, to join the army of 40,000 men which was concentrating between the Modder and Orange rivers. Then a demonstration was made to Koodoosberg against Cronje's right, and by February 11, one month after his arrival in South Africa, Lord Roberts was able to set in motion the great strategical movement which was to prove the turning-point in the war. It must have been an anxious moment when the mounted force, under General French, was launched into the arid plains of the Western Free State. Its duty was to cut the communication with Bloemfontein of the force investing Kimberley, and to hold the drifts over the Modder and Riet rivers until the Infantry, which had concentrated at Ramdam and was following the mounted men by forced marches, could establish themselves in the positions which the Cavalry had won. The move was successful; the Modder River drifts were captured on February 13, and Kimberley was entered two days later.

Digitized by Google

Cronje had been hoodwinked by the simple strategy of the demonstration against his right and by his conviction that British Infantry could never march away from the line of the railway.

PAARDEBERG AND BLOEMFONTEIN.

The characteristic of Boer strategy has been that they have always done the unexpected. Instead of retreating to the north with the whole of his force, Cronje, when on February 15 he raised the siege of Kimberley, sent part of his force north, and with the remainder made a dash for Bloemfontein, stealing a passage between the British Cavalry and the advancing Infantry. General Kelly-Kenny, commanding the Sixth Division, was the senior officer at Klip Drift, but Lord Roberts had relegated the control of operations in this part of the field to Lord Kitchener. With admirable promptitude Lord Kitchener stopped the movement on Kimberley and made the whole force wheel to the right after Cronje, simultaneously advising the Cavalry by the field telegraph. Luck was with the British arms, for though Cronje managed, by skilfully set rearguards, to ward off the attacks of the Mounted Infantry with the Sixth Division, yet the Cavalry, by a forced march from Kimberley, succeeded on February 17, only by a few minutes, in seizing the Koodoosrand Drift by which Cronje had intended to cross the Modder, and in heading him back on Wolveskraal Drift, three miles further down. The next morning he prepared to cross, but the Sixth and Ninth Divisions, under Lord Kitchener, had already come up on the south bank, and at once attacked. The attack was only partially successful, and the price of the attempt to reduce Cronje before he was intrenched was a heavy list of casualties. This action has been much criticised; but it should be remembered that when it was made it was not known how far French's Cavalry had rendered escape for the Boers impossible—the situation of the baggage caught in the act of crossing the drift offered an opportunity of striking a heavy blow under conditions considered favourable for British attack. Moreover, everything pointed to the presence of Boer reinforcements in the vicinity. The exact whereabouts and strength of these reinforcements was unknown, consequently as a military precaution it was expedient to effect the reduction of Cronje's position in case the outside force should be in a position to succour him before the British cordon was complete. Although the action was not so well developed tactically as it might have been, it had the effect of so crippling Cronje that he was unable to effect a further movement. Lord Roberts arrived in person at Paardeberg on the day following the unsuccessful attack. This attack and the loss of a valuable convoy at the Riet River on February 15 were the only incidents which marred

Digitized by Google

the complete success of Lord Roberts's first move. Cronje surrendered unconditionally on February 27. As a strategical move, the advance against Cronje's communications had been fraught with even more success than Lord Roberts could have anticipated. The automatic reduction of pressure in Natal and Cape Colony, which it was designed to effect, was complete. General Buller, after some of the severest fighting in the war, was able to drive back, on the same day that Cronje surrendered, the force with which Louis Botha held the Tugela, and the siege of Ladysmith was raised on the following day. Grobler and Olivier fell back, under telegraphic orders from President Steyn, from their positions in Cape Colony almost without an effort on the part of Generals Gatacre and Clements to dislodge them. And such was the haste with which these withdrawals were effected, that very little damage was done to the direct railway communication between the Free State Capital and the Colony.

Extract from letter, dated Klip Drift, Orange Free State, 15th February, 1900:—

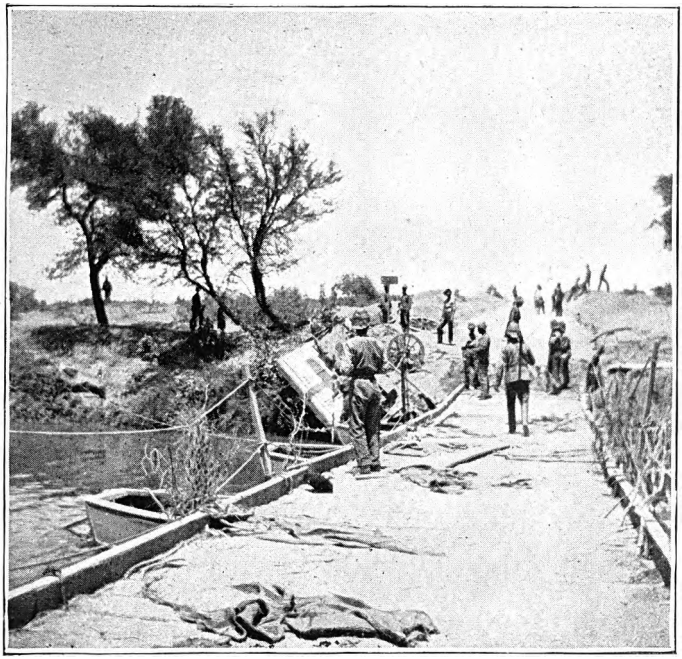
We left Modder River Camp at 10 p.m., 10th February, and railed to Enslin, where we slept the night in bivouac near the railway station. We have left all our tents at Modder, and have little in the way of kit—officers 50 lbs. On the 11th we halted at Enslin, waiting for the rest of the troops, and early on the morning of the 12th we marched to Ramdam, about eight miles. The Regiment was on rearguard, and no incident whatever occurred. The country was open and level. Reached Ramdam about 11 a.m., the 18th Brigade marching in from Graspan Station at about the same time. From the look of things every one now thought that we were bound for Bloemfontein, but we were told nothing. Lethbridge and Henley went on with their companies as escort to a large convoy, and marched all night to Riet River.

On the 13th we started at 5 a.m. for Waterval, on the Riet River, about 11 miles. Flat country, which had been recently burnt; put up any number of hares and koran. The whole Division marched together, consequently it was a long and trying march, with constant halts and checks. We halted for an hour or so, some four or five miles after starting, at the only water to be got during the day. Arrived at Riet Camp at 1 p.m., the whole Division done to a turn (from heat and want of water), and the men made for the water and drank from any stagnant pool. No baggage reached the drift until quite late in the afternoon, and it had hardly arrived before we received orders to continue the march at 1.30 a.m. next morning to a camp near

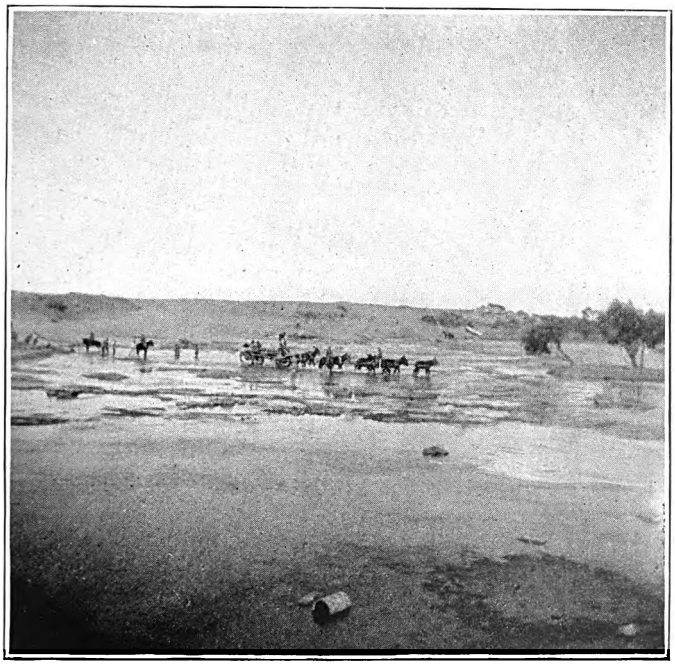
Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google



AN UPSET ON MODDER PONTOON BRIDGE.



CROSSING THE MODDER.

Digitized by Google

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY
ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS

Digitized by Google

Jacobsdal, about 12 miles. Bright joined us to-day, and Foljambe was sent back sick.

On the 14th we marched at 1 a.m., and after going five miles halted till daybreak, as there were dangerous hills on either side of the route, necessitating careful reconnoitring by the Mounted Infantry. Resumed the march at 6 a.m.; but progress was slow, and the men took advantage of the frequent halts to get a nap. Reached Wegdraai Drift at about 10 a.m., and at noon the outposts were suddenly attacked by a party of Boers from Jacobsdal. We all stood to our arms, but nothing much happened, and the enemy was driven off by the picquets. We now imagined that we were to have a rest, but at 2 p.m. we got orders to be ready for a start at 5.30 p.m., and at that hour we were off again for a drift on the Modder. We were told that we had to go eight or ten miles and that we should be in by 10 p.m., but it was not until 1 a.m. this morning (15th February) that we halted. It was a wretched march, made worse by two drenching showers, and as we heard that the Boers were in possession of the drift that we were making for, we changed our direction during the night. We had covered nearly 30 miles in the 24 hours; the men were wet through, had marched in intense heat during the daytime, and practically without water, but they stuck to it to the end, when they dropped to the ground and slept like logs. The Battalion had only ten men out of the ranks when it halted. Want of water is, and must always be, our greatest trouble; we are only allowed one 100-gallon cart for the Battalion, and those of us who have served in India long for the good old *bheestie*, who never failed us.

Lord Kitchener has been with us during the last two marches, and the object of the forced march was to relieve French (who had seized two drifts at Rondeval and this place) and allow him to push on to the relief of Kimberley. We crossed the river soon after daylight and bivouacked, and when French knew that we had done so and were in possession of the drift, he moved ahead. Mockler and two companies went as escort to two long 12-pounder naval guns, and had a tough bit of work helping to get the guns in position on a rocky kopje. Eventually the sailors pulled their guns to pieces (in the good old Military Tournament way), and then the sailors and soldiers carried them bodily up to the top, receiving considerable praise from Lord Kitchener, who was present. The guns were soon in action and making excellent practice, shell after shell being pitched into the retreating Boers as they were galloping full tilt towards Magersfontein. We could hear French hard at it about a couple of miles away, his 42 R.H.A. guns and our three Field Batteries shelling the 3,000 or 4,000 Boers out of their laager. Mockler's two Companies remained with the naval

Digitized by Google

guns until about 1 p.m., by which time French had got clear, and we hope he is now well on the way to Kimberley. I expect we shall be on the move again to-morrow early. Lots of mutton and beef here, as this move of ours has been a bit of a surprise to the Boers, and they went off in a hurry, leaving their stock behind on the farms. No meat is issued, but we send out parties, take what we want, and slaughter it ourselves, so, as you can imagine, the regulation one pound is not weighed very carefully.

KLIP KRAAL.

General French, with his Cavalry Division, had successfully forced his way through the Boers, who had been in two laagers—about four miles and ten miles respectively from our outposts. Early on the 16th, it was discovered that, during the night, the laagers had been evacuated, and that Cronje was in full retreat towards Bloemfontein. The pursuit was at once taken up by the 6th Division, the 13th Brigade, 81st Battery, and a portion of the Mounted Infantry marching along the north bank of the river, the remainder of the Mounted Infantry along the south bank; while the 18th Brigade held the drift and furnished the outposts north of the Modder. Commandant Roos commanded the Boer rearguard throughout the day, and so ably that he succeeded in checking General Knox's advance, though only (as it afterwards turned out) at the sacrifice of the main body of Cronje's force. Roos held his own until darkness set in, and played considerable havoc with Knox's Brigade, but the delay proved fatal to Cronje's chance of escape.

Diary:—

16th February, Friday.—The Brigade paraded at 3 a.m., with orders to reinforce the outpost line, as a large force of Mounted Infantry were to go ahead to Kimberley, and we were if necessary to protect their flank or await orders. The Mounted Infantry were fired on as soon as they moved out on to the veldt. The Brigade advanced to the right

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

KLIP DRIFT, 1900.

Bluejackets and men of the Oxfordshire Light Infantry carrying a naval gun up a kopje.

Reproduced from a drawing by Mr. G. D. Giles, by permission of the "Daily Graphic."

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

flank, in extended order. The Boers had taken up a position on some kopjes [1] overlooking the river. We (43rd) were on the right flank and river bank; the Buffs, on our left, moved up towards the kopjes, where there was a good deal of firing. We (43rd) then forded the river, and marched along the other bank, two Companies on the bank itself, the remainder across the open. Boer fire pretty heavy. After we had got across the open, we hit off the bend of the river again, crossed it at a drift, and found that the Boers had cleared off the kopjes. They left two or three wagons, which were looted and then burnt.

The Brigade re-formed in extended order, and commenced the advance to a big kopje (Klip Kraal), on to which the Boers had retired. We (43rd) were on the right, and moved round under cover of a ridge to the right of the kopje. Lethbridge's and Bright's Companies (C and A) were on the extreme right, keeping well away to that flank, but, as they had not a blade of cover, they had eight or nine casualties before going far, and were soon obliged to halt. D Company was on the left of the firing line, and Mockler's Company (E) and half F (in support) halted in echelon, a little to the left rear of A and C, and by lying flat managed to keep fairly under cover behind a low ridge, but any man who moved was immediately blazed at. E and half F fired fifty or sixty rounds from where they were at the Boers on the kopje, about 1,000 to 1,200 yards away. The Boers continued firing the whole day, in spite of the two guns that we had shelling them. The other half of F Company was escort to the guns, and H Company was in reserve.

By 3.30 p.m. it seemed evident that our frontal attack was not likely to succeed, and men were dropping fast. E Company had already lost Private Yerby killed and three wounded, but the men were so done up for want of water and lying in the broiling sun that one or two at a time were sent back to the river (about half a mile in rear) to fill water bottles. They drew a heavy fire, but fortunately there were no casualties. At 4 p.m. Lethbridge and Bright decided to retire to the river, as their men had run out of ammunition and had no water, moreover their position was so exposed that they were suffering severely. E and half F followed A and C to the river, several of the wounded having to be left behind for the time being, as the stretcher bearers could not be brought up. The retirement was the signal for a fierce Boer fusillade, but no one was hit (why, heaven only knows). We had been lying under fire from 8 a.m. to 4 p.m., and the men, when they reached the river, were completely fagged out.

The remainder of our Companies worked round towards the left with the Buffs and West Riding Regiment, but the Boers were not *turned*

[1] North of Drieputs.

Digitized by Google

out of their position (which was practically impregnable), though they evacuated it after dark. We imagined at first that the kopje was only held by a few of the enemy, but we found out afterwards that we were opposed to the whole of Cronje's rear-guard.

The Brigade bivouacked for the night behind a low ridge facing the kopje.

Result as far as we were concerned:—Stapleton (in charge of the Maxim) wounded in the thigh, 10 men killed and 39 wounded; while the Colonel had a bullet through his helmet, and Day had his field-glasses smashed.[1] The Battalion fired 16,645 rounds.

Another Account.

Extract from a letter from Lieut.-Colonel the Hon. A. E. Dalzell:—Much, of course, is not mentioned by the press, and it is a pity that no correspondents were present at Klip Kraal, which was by far the hottest affair we have yet had. The men behaved very well here, and it was practically our own little show, for the other Regiments of the Brigade took but a minor part in the action. It was quite early in the morning when we advanced against the Boers, composed of from 2,000 to 3,000 of Cronje's men, and we were the right Regiment of the Brigade, having the river on our right. Lord Kitchener was very anxious to get some men across the river, but it was supposed to be impassable, as the enemy held a very strong position along its bank (at the bend which ran across our right flank, about a mile in front), from which they were already peppering us; Knox, our Brigadier, came up to me, and said, "I'm afraid it's no good, but if you could get over the river anyhow we might best them." I ran along the bank, searching keenly for some possible place, and had at last determined to try and swim the Regiment over. Porter tried at one place, sank up to his armpits in the muddy bottom, and convulsed me with laughter. Suddenly, I saw a rock protruding from our bank, which I argued, probably pointed to a bit of rocky bed, and so it proved, enabling us all to wade across, up to our middles only. I sent word back to Lord Kitchener that we were across, and that I should advance at once unless he ordered otherwise. When we were all over (Stapleton got his Maxim across very cleverly), I extended two Companies across the open country, as a blind, whilst I

[1] As an instance of *esprit de corps*, the following incident, recorded by Major Caunter, D.A.A.G., 6th Division, is worth quoting:—"After the Klip Kraal fight I came across a wounded man of the Oxfordshire Light Infantry, and inquired about his wounds and condition. His reply was in the form of a question as to *how the Regiment had behaved in action*—showing that the uppermost thought in the soldier's mind was the well-being of his corps."—Ed.

Digitized by Google

sent three Companies up the river bank amongst the trees and bushes, Porter and I running backwards and forwards to encourage the men, the fire by this time having become fast and furious. Porter and I both very nearly got bagged here, and I felt quite sorry for Porter on one occasion when a bullet missed me by a hair, throwing up all the dirt into my mouth as we lay side by side in the open. Porter said, "Hullo, Colonel!" as if he had almost felt the promotion in his grasp! Well, we crept up successfully, and regularly turned the Boer's right, so that they bolted, leaving some wagons, horses, and other loot in our hands. Meanwhile the West Riding had been working along our left, on the other side of the river, and when we crossed at the weir, we met their advanced Company.

We continued our pursuit, and the Boers retired to a very strong position on a kopje, from which we tried (aided by some guns) to turn them out. The fight went on until dark, and was certainly the warmest entertainment at which I ever wish to assist. Some of our Companies crept right up to the foot of the kopje, and were within 150 yards of the enemy. With two other Companies I tried to work round and turn their flank; but there was no flank to turn, for a flank attack upon a kopje becomes of necessity a direct or frontal attack. The men behaved capitally, and so did the officers. I look back now with wonder at how anyone escaped. Personally I had advanced with Bright, who was in command of A Company, and we were right up in the firing line at the foot of the kopje. He *would* sit up and keep looking at the Boers (though he was not more than 150 yards from them), and I kept telling him to lie down. When I found that the firing line could not advance any further, the fire being simply deadly, I told him to remain where he was, and that I would go back to the support and see if I could not make a diversion. The thing was *how* to get back to the support across a perfectly open fire-swept zone. However, it was no use looking at it, and the Regiment was waiting for further orders, so I said good-bye to Bright, and just turned round and bolted for the support (about two hundred yards back, behind a small rise). I had not gone six yards before a regular deluge of lead came down upon me, one bullet going through my helmet, and another carrying away my right shoulder strap. But I bested them, and got back—*only*, I am sure, by the goodness of Providence, and then sent Henley to work up the river bank and draw off the fire from the firing line, which he did very well.

In the meantime, Watt managed to get back with his Company and direct the Major of the Battery where to concentrate his fire. We were the only Regiment engaged until quite late in the afternoon, when the West Riding and Buffs managed to get up. Poor Stapleton was shot

Digitized by Google

through the thigh as he sat by my side, lamenting that he could not get his Maxim into action. After dark we searched for our dead, and found ten, besides many wounded. The Boers all bolted in the night, and made off for Paardeberg.

Diary continued:—

February 17th.—Marched early morning; after four miles halted to cook some food, the men being given live sheep and goats. Crossed the river, moved on another three miles, halted for an hour, and then did another seven miles (which we had been told would be three). Halted and bivouacked a little after midnight.

PAARDEBERG.

Telegrams from Lord Roberts:—

Jacobsdal, Feb. 16.

I have good reason for belief that the Magersfontein trenches have been abandoned, and that the Boers are endeavouring to escape.

French is scouring the country to the north of Kimberley.

One of Kenny's Brigades of Infantry is in pursuit of a very large Boer convoy moving towards Bloemfontein.

Jacobsdal, Feb. 17, 5.50 a.m.

Kelly-Kenny's Brigade captured yesterday 78 wagons laden with stores, two wagons with Mauser rifles, eight boxes full of shells, ten barrels explosives, and large quantity of stores, all belonging to Cronje's laager, which was still being shelled by our artillery when Lord Kitchener despatched the messenger.

Telegrams through Reuter's Agency:—

Riet River, Feb. 14.

General French left Modder River on Sunday morning for Ramdam, 12 miles to the east of Enslin, where the whole Division concentrated next day. He made a rapid march to the Riet River, where a party of Boers contested his passage at the Dekiel and Waterval Drifts. General French shelled the enemy for some hours, and drove them away; and, crossing the river yesterday, continued his march to the Klip and Rondeval Drifts on the Modder.

Here again there was a short engagement. The enemy were again vigorously shelled and forced to retire precipitately, leaving five laagers in our hands, together with a great quantity of cattle and 2,000 sheep.

Digitized by Google

The rapidity of his march, and the overwhelming nature of his force enabled General French, in spite of the difficulties of water and transport, thoroughly to outwit and surprise the enemy.

During General French's movement the enemy were watching the Orange River, from which a Brigade of Mounted Infantry under Colonel Hannay was marching towards Ramdam. This force met on Sunday a body of 500 Boers with two guns, and were obliged to engage them in order to allow of the passage of our convoy. The Boers held a kopje which practically commanded a short valley along which the convoy was bound to pass. The fighting lasted the whole day, the Boers bringing up two guns in the afternoon. There appears to have been hard fighting. Our men approached within 200 yards of the Boers.

During the fight an unpleasant incident occurred. Our extreme left lay under cover unperceived, but the enemy suspected its presence. According to a description which I have received from an officer who was present, the Boers sent out an ambulance practically for the purpose of discovering our whereabouts. The officer commanding parleyed with the Boer doctor, and, according to my informant, an agreement was made that half a Company of our men should be allowed to go and get water from a farmhouse in the neighbourhood. The ambulance then retired, but had no sooner done so than the enemy rushed down and cut off the water party, of whom the officer in charge and about ten men were made prisoners.

During the night our convoy continued its journey in safety, the Boers having disappeared after nightfall.

We now hold both the Modder and Riet rivers between the Boers intrenched at Magersfontein and their base at Bloemfontein.

Everywhere the farms of the Free Staters have been respected, but the owners in almost every case had fled, taking their effects with them.

The health of our troops is excellent, and their spirits buoyant. Sickness prevails among our horses.

Outside Jacobsdal, Feb. 15.

Yesterday a small Cavalry patrol entered Jacobsdal, which they found full of wounded, including several of ours from Rensburg. The Boers sent back a patrol and occupied the town in small force. A series of skirmishes ensued. To-day a Battery of Artillery shelled the environs and drove out the Boers. The enemy, in order to escape, were obliged to pass over a ridge, where they afforded a splendid mark for our guns, which poured a shower of accurately directed shrapnel upon them in rapid succession.

Jacobsdal is now in our possession.

Digitized by Google

The Boers have left Alexandersfontein, which is now occupied by the garrison.

Lord Roberts is in excellent health and spirits. Rapid marching and the unavoidable hardships of the advance appear to agree with the whole Army, which is in splendid spirits, and is greatly cheered and encouraged by the presence and leadership of its Commander-in-Chief.

Jacobsdal, Feb. 15.

To-day Lord Roberts, at the head of the troops, entered Jacobsdal, which has been in our possession since yesterday.

The utmost order prevails. Military police patrol the streets, and nothing has been taken. At each store a sentry is placed, and soldiers are allowed to enter and purchase what they want. The inhabitants express the utmost surprise at this, for they had been told that the British, when they entered a town, always looted the place. As soon as the impression produced by these reports had been removed, the towns-people welcomed us as friends and not as enemies. The Landdrost offered to retire, but was not allowed to do so.

From conversations I have had with different inhabitants, there can be no doubt that the Free State burghers are heartily sick of the war. They freely declare that President Steyn betrayed them.

The town since the battle of Modder River has been empty of troops, and has been regarded strictly as a hospital. The large German hospital remains in beautiful order, and is clean and sweet. Here the wounded of both sides receive equally careful attention from the doctors. Colonel Henry, who was taken prisoner on the 14th, was found slightly wounded in the hospital with several others.

I have had many talks with the Boer wounded. They confess that they were nonplussed by our movements. Even now they are under the impression that the sole object of our march was the capture of Jacobsdal, and when informed that Kimberley had been relieved they were taken aback.

News has been received that the Boers are leaving Magersfontein. The strategic movements of Lord Roberts have puzzled and scared the enemy, who are stated to be returning in disorganized masses to their farms. In any case the invasion of the Free State has struck a tremendous blow at the enemy, and one which, without too much optimism, may be regarded as likely to result in the defection of a considerable proportion if not of all of the Free State burghers.

February 16.

The troops of General French's Division were received at Kimberley with extraordinary enthusiasm. The officers dined last night at the Kimberley Club.

Digitized by Google

As the result of yesterday's fighting on the Riet River the Boers captured the convoy, which was a large one. Our casualties, in view of the tremendous bombardment, were very slight. Fewer than 30 men were wounded, and only one man was killed.

The news of General French's entry into Kimberley has greatly cheered the troops, who are working splendidly.

The Boers are reported to be leaving Spytfontein in a north-westerly direction.

Cronje, with 10,000 men, is in full retreat towards Bloemfontein. General Kelly-Kenny is fighting a rear-guard action, and is harassing his retreat.

9.45 p.m.

Owing to the fatigue of his oxen, General Cronje was obliged to outspan and form a laager with his uncaptured wagons. When the report was despatched, at a quarter to seven this evening, our Artillery was vigorously shelling Cronje's laager.

Later.

Now that Lord Roberts's great strategic movement has been crowned with success, it is possible to give some details of the achievement.

The Mounted Troops and Horse Artillery in four days covered a distance of 90 miles, fought two small engagements, and finished by relieving Kimberley. The rapidity of their movements helped to solve one of the problems of the war, and will enable us now to disregard Boer intrenched positions wherever the country permits of Cavalry movement.

The movement began on Sunday morning at three o'clock by the concentration of General French's Division at Ramdam. As the Infantry appeared in sight early next morning, General French moved forward and seized two drifts on the Riet River. General Tucker's Division followed, and close behind came General Kelly-Kenny's Division. The drift was almost impassable for the transport, which was obliged to park on the south side of the river; but energy and perseverance overcame all obstacles. It was found impossible for a team of mules to draw its load up the steep north bank, and it therefore became necessary to run relays of oxen, which were hitched on in addition to the mules, and thus the loads were dragged over. At four o'clock next morning most of the transport was on the north side of the river.

Lord Kitchener accompanied General Tucker's Division, which marched to within three miles of Jacobsdal, being obliged to keep to the river on account of the water. Here the Division stayed till the arrival of General Kelly-Kenny, who then moved straight towards Klip

Digitized by Google

Drift on the Modder. General French, who was awaiting the Infantry there, left for Kimberley immediately on the arrival of the Division.

Thursday night saw the completion of the movement.

Lord Methuen was opposite Magersfontein, and General Tucker held Jacobsdal, with General Colvile's Division close at hand, ready to move wherever required, and General Kelly-Kenny's holding the Klip and Rondeval Drifts on the Modder. General French had meanwhile arrived at Kimberley.

General Cronje had thus been completely outflanked, and the position of the Boer army at Spytfontein was untenable. Starvation or retreat was the only alternative. The Boer commander chose the latter, and at the moment of writing we are uncertain whether it is his whole force which is retreating *viâ* the Modder to Bloemfontein or only a portion of it, while the rest is going away to the north of Kimberley. According to the latest reports, General Kelly-Kenny is pressing hard on Cronje's rearguard, following him and harassing his retreat.

There are three points to be noted in connection with the movement—viz., General French's mobility, the efficiency of the transport arrangements, and the splendid marching of the Infantry.

1. It has been proved that a large mobile force is able to move on exterior lines with sufficient rapidity to completely outflank the Boers, although they are themselves so wonderfully mobile. The effect of General French's march upon the enemy has been sufficient to move them out of a strong, indeed, almost impregnable position which they had been preparing for two months. So far, the relief of Kimberley has not cost us 50 men.

2. The transport arrangements have been beyond praise. The long marches were made across a veldt of deep sand, without water. Progress was necessarily slow, and four Divisions had to be fed while they were purposely cut off from their base. It is hardly possible to adequately appreciate the marvellous work accomplished by the transport department under such conditions. Added to all the work of the day was the duty of issuing stores during the night, so that the Transport Officers toiled continuously. This they did with the utmost cheerfulness, and without the slightest fuss they everywhere evolved order out of chaos.

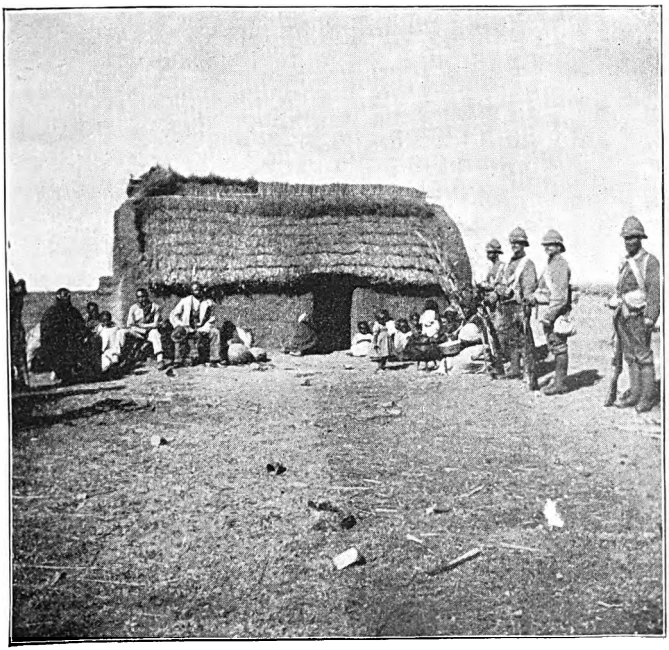
3. The marching of the Infantry, considering the great heat and the absence of water, once more proves that the British soldier is willing and ready to respond to any call. The men never faltered. Some fell out of the ranks from sheer exhaustion ; but these, as soon as they had sufficiently recovered, seized the first opportunity to rejoin their Companies. It was, perhaps, a finer sight than any battle to see the Battalions

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

A BOER FAMILY.



KAFFIR KRAAL.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

moving through the heavy sand under a broiling sun, every man determined, persevering, and cheerful. Not a murmur was heard, and the whole force was animated by a grand faith in their Commander. It is no exaggeration to say that nearly the whole of the troops, horse, foot, and artillery, and especially the transport service men, had not more than three hours' sleep on any of the last three nights. Yet there is no sign of any falling off in their health or strength. All are willing and cheerful, and ready and anxious to do all that men can do.

February 17.

General Kelly-Kenny is still pursuing General Cronje's army. He has captured over 100 wagons and a German ambulance. The prisoners state that if the pursuit is continued, the whole force will probably surrender.

The Highland Brigade last night made a forced march from here, and, arriving to-day at General Kelly-Kenny's headquarters, joined in the pursuit. General French left Kimberley, moving rapidly in order to complete the interception of the Boers, who are in full retreat. He is harassing them terribly.

According to Dutch reports received here, General French twice charged home through the retreating Boers to the north-west of Kimberley.

General Pole-Carew and the Guards Brigade occupy Magersfontein, the Boer former position.

The Boer laagers have been deserted everywhere, and a great quantity of stores, tents, &c., has been taken.

The repairing of the railway is proceeding.

Later.

The enemy are fighting a good rearguard action. They are occupying successive kopjes in order to allow the moving of the convoy, which, however, is forced to go at a slow pace, as apparently the animals are dead beat. The last reports show that the Boers are in the neighbourhood of Klipkraal's Drift, and that they are undoubtedly disheartened.

The shelling of the Boers is still proceeding vigorously.

Telegram from the *Times* Special Correspondent:—

Modder River, Feb. 18, 11.40 a.m.

The following is a summary of the movements of the army since Monday.

The Cavalry Brigade, under General French, left Honeynest Kloof on Monday, crossed Dekiel's Drift on Tuesday, and captured Klip Drift and Drieput Drift on the Modder River. On Thursday he moved on

Digitized by Google

Kimberley, 10,000 strong, and fought two engagements at points distant 18 miles and four miles from Kimberley.

The Sixth Division left the Modder on Monday, Enslin on Tuesday, Waterval on Wednesday, and Klip Drift on Saturday morning for Klip Kraal. The Seventh Division came through Dekiel's Drift. The Ninth Division arrived at Klip Kraal on Friday.

The rearguard of General Cronje's force, with 1,000 wagons, in full retreat, was attacked at Klip Drift and Drieput, where the kopjes were held, the battle lasting all day. General Knox's Brigade distinguished itself under the direction of Lord Kitchener. This is probably the beginning of a rearguard fight all the way to Bloemfontein. Our casualties are few.

Two of the enemy's laagers have been captured, both having been evacuated with the utmost haste. A telegram from the Boer commandant was found complaining that the Boers were completely caught.

One day's delay in relieving Kimberley would probably have meant surrounding the whole Boer force.

We are at present harassing the rear with all the Infantry and with the Cavalry, which have returned from Kimberley.

Jacobsdal was captured after a short fight on Wednesday afternoon.

Magersfontein and Spytfontein were evacuated on Thursday evening.

At Kimberley the greatest enthusiasm prevails. Provisions are being pushed forward.

The whole conception of Lord Roberts's scheme was excellent. The block at Dekiel's Drift, which was almost impassable to wagons, delayed the operation a day, otherwise all the movements were carried out exactly to time.

No Boers remain west of Drieput kopje, where the whole of the Sixth Division is still fighting the retreating Boers. The naval guns pushed forward to-day outrange the Boer gun used to cover the retreat. The great exertions of the Boers are hampered because their ox wagons are overworked.

The well-known mobility of the Boers has now vanished.

The City of London Imperial Volunteers came into Klip Drift camp to-day. The troops are eager to move forward.

It is doubtful when I shall be able to send my next message, as I shall have to rely on the field telegraph.

Telegrams through Reuter's Agency :—

Paardeberg Drift, Feb. 20.

On Sunday the British forces fought one of the most costly actions of the war near here. General Kelly-Kenny's Division, which was

Digitized by Google

advancing in pursuit of the retreating Boers under General Cronje, caught up the enemy's rearguard at Klip Drift and followed up the Boers to where they were in laager at Koodoosrand Drift.

The action began at daybreak, when the Mounted Infantry drove the rearguard up the river towards the main body, while another detachment of the Mounted Infantry manœuvred on the right front and flank of the enemy. Our main body, which was on the north bank of the river, advanced to outflank the Boers. Their laager was likewise on the north bank.

General Kelly-Kenny, having seized the two drifts, found the enemy, who was enclosed, and ordered his men to attack. In the advance to attack the Highland Brigade was on the left, and the Brigade under General Knox in the centre and on the right, while General Smith-Dorrien's Brigade crossed the river and moved along the north bank.

Both on the north and south banks the ground was level, and the advance across it was deadly. Our losses were heavy.

The battle was an almost exact replica of Lord Methuen's action on the Modder. The soldiers were under fire for the whole day, but all the fighting left the position unchanged. The Boers were enclosed and remained enclosed.

Our guns shelled the laager vigorously, and the Boers confessed to a loss of over 800.

On Monday the shelling—the combined fire of 50 guns—was resumed with increased energy, and to-day General Cronje has written to the British Commander asking for an armistice.

Later.

Cronje's magnificent night march from Magersfontein, though successful at the beginning, now appears likely to end in disaster.

The main body of the enemy are enclosed in a veritable death-trap. They are hiding in the bed of the Modder, commanded by our Artillery and enclosed on east and west by our Infantry.

Sunday witnessed a gallant stand by the retreating enemy, who, tired, weary, and harassed, still showed a bold front to the British force.

It is somewhat difficult to explain Sunday's action, in which all our force was engaged, and in which Cronje, although in difficult circumstances, managed to hold his own.

On Saturday night the Mounted Infantry came in touch with Cronje's rearguard, driving back the main body.

On Sunday morning our men renewed the action, but the Boers had intrenched themselves in the bed of the river during the night, and prevented the further advance of the Mounted Infantry in this direction.

Digitized by Google

Meantime the Highland Brigade, comprising the Seaforths, Black Watch, and Argyll and Sutherland Highlanders, advanced from the south bank, while the Essex, Welch, and Yorkshire Regiments closed in in a long line, the left of which rested on the river, the Welch Regiment occupying the extreme right.

The whole line was ordered to envelop the enemy, who lined both banks of the river. Firing soon became heavy. The Boers, holding a splendid position, commanded the left of the Highland Brigade, which advanced partly up the river bed and partly in the open. While the other Regiments swung round to the front, the Highland Brigade, on level ground destitute of cover, were exposed to a terrible fire, which obliged the men to lie prone. This they did for the rest of the day. The fighting began at 7.30 in the morning, and through dreadful heat and a terrible thunderstorm, the men hung on to their position, answering the enemy's fire and shooting steadily.

Meanwhile, the rest of the Infantry performed their enveloping movement, the Welch Regiment succeeding in seizing the drift, and thus completing the envelopment of the enemy, who fought throughout with splendid courage.

Cronje's laager, full of carts, wagons, ammunition, and stores, could be plainly seen near the north bank.

General Smith-Dorrien collected a large body of men, including the Canadians, crossed the river by Paardeberg Drift, and advanced towards the laager, which shelled them vigorously. Here the body made a gallant attempt to charge into the laager, but failed. The enemy, before seizing the western drifts, had occupied a kopje on the south bank of the river, and running down to its edge. Our force was, therefore, cut in two. The enemy holding the kopje possessed one Vickers-Maxim, and probably one or two other guns.

Towards evening the battery on the south side opened fire, co-operating with the battery on the north side. A wonderful sight was then to be seen. The shells fell with remarkable precision along the river bed, forcing the enemy back until they reached the bed of the river opposite the laager, which was shelled thoroughly, everything it contained being damaged. One shell set fire to a small ammunition wagon, and many other wagons were burnt. The Infantry kept up a terrible fire, which was answered vigorously. The whole scene towards nightfall was terribly picturesque, wagons were blazing, and the roar of artillery was mingled with the crackle of the Infantry fire.

Paardeberg, Feb. 20.

With the fall of night on Sunday the fire suddenly ceased. Both sides were thoroughly tired and glad of a rest. The men slept where

Digitized by Google

they had fought all day, while the bearer parties scoured the field, collecting the dead and wounded. The action was one of the most fiercely contested in the history of the war, the Boers fighting desperately for their lives, while the British slowly and doggedly pressed their attack.

Our Mounted Infantry did good work throughout the day. The Highland Brigade fought steadily and sternly, though the men were much worn out. The behaviour of the whole force was excellent. By evening the cordon round the enemy had been completed, and every outlet had been closed. After nightfall almost perfect silence prevailed.

A few of the enemy came in during the night. They all confessed that they were sick of fighting, and had been urging Cronje to surrender.

During the battle the 81st Field Battery, which was engaged on the north side of the river, was exposed to a heavy rifle fire. Four horses were wounded, and the pole of one of the wagons was broken. The struggling, terrified horses inextricably mixed the trace ropes, and the position looked serious. The Gordons, however, who formed the escort, silenced the enemy's fire, and enabled the wagon to be withdrawn.

The men suffered terribly from thirst, and it was impossible to supply them with water. A heavy thunderstorm which broke over the battlefield in the afternoon considerably relieved their sufferings.

Lord Kitchener was present with the force during Sunday's fighting. General MacDonald, of the Highland Brigade, was wounded in the foot, but not severely.

Later.

Monday morning broke, finding the enemy in the same place. During the night they had constructed intrenchments round the laager, which was still threatened by General Smith-Dorrien's force. The Infantry rested after their terribly hard day's work yesterday, but the Mounted Infantry and a Battery of Artillery started to observe the enemy's position on a kopje. As they were riding round the southern side of the hill a heavy fusillade was directed against them by the Boers on the kopje, and they were obliged to move further out. There were no casualties, thus affording another proof of the enemy's bad marksmanship.

Pushing on they found that the kopje extended a considerable way to the west, and sloped gradually to the plain. A good defensive position was seized and garrisoned. The remainder of the force continued the movement, and completely turned the enemy's position, on the extreme left of which a farmhouse was strongly held. The battery vigorously shelled this, and the force returned to camp at nightfall, leaving the

Digitized by Google

garrison on the ridge. Meanwhile a desultory bombardment of the Boer position had been proceeding, and there had been a good deal of rifle fire at one point where the Essex Regiment attempted to push up the river.

About midday a cry of "French has arrived" passed down the ranks, but the Cavalry Division operated out of sight of our force. Lord Roberts arrived later, and addressed several Regiments. He was vigorously cheered.

Early in the day Cronje asked for a twenty-four hours' armistice in order to bury his dead. Lord Kitchener refused to comply. A little later came another message to the effect that if the British were inhuman enough to refuse an armistice for the purpose of allowing the Boers to bury their dead, General Cronje saw no other course but to surrender. Upon this Lord Kitchener proceeded to the Boer laager, in order to arrange for a capitulation, but he was met by a messenger who stated that the whole thing was a mistake. General Cronje had not the slightest intention of surrendering, but would fight until he died.

Lord Kitchener therefore returned to camp and ordered a bombardment of the enemy's position. The 18th, 62nd, and 75th Field Batteries and the 65th (Howitzer) Battery took up a position directly in front of the laager, and began a terribly accurate fire, the howitzers using lyddite freely. The Boers were seen retiring to their trenches in the river bed to seek cover, but no cover could protect them from such fire. The howitzers especially dropped lyddite shell with marvellous precision in the very bed of the river, and the trenches were soon filled with the green fumes from the explosive.

During the night deserters again arrived in camp. They were frightened and terribly shaken. They stated that the Boers had water in abundance, but only very scanty supplies could be drawn from the laager during the night.

To-day (Tuesday) is the third day of Cronje's imprisonment and stubborn resistance. Early in the morning the Infantry engaged the enemy in the bed of the river, driving them back a short distance. The morning sun disclosed the Boers working like ants on their intrenchments round the laager. A few shells were fired to prevent this. Most of the day passed quietly. We heard General French's artillery to the east, presumably engaging the Boer reinforcements.

Every opportunity was given to the enemy to surrender, but when, towards the afternoon, they still gave no sign of doing so, Lord Roberts determined to crush Cronje's resistance once for all. On the south bank he placed in position at a range of 2,000 yards the 18th, 62nd, and 75th Field Batteries, and two naval 12-pounders; and on the north bank,

Digitized by Google

enfilading the whole of the river bed, the 65th (Howitzer), 76th, 81st, and 82nd Field Batteries and three naval 4·7 in. guns.

Then followed the most wonderful scene it has ever been my lot to witness. Once before, in Thessaly, I have seen 110 guns in action, but never such a number of powerful guns concentrating their fire on a spot about a mile square. The lyddite shells raised great clouds of green smoke, which filled the bed of the river, while shrapnel burst along the edge of each bank, except for a small space where the proximity of our Infantry would have made the Artillery fire dangerous to them. Our shells searched every bush and every ravine on the river banks. The enfilading guns must have done terrible execution; yet in a spirit of desperate madness now and again a Boer would attempt a "sniping" shot at one of the naval guns, which were firing at a range of only 1,000 yards.

On each side of the river lay two Battalions, the whirring of whose Maxim fire sounded pretty by the side of the deafening roar of the big guns. What loss the Boers suffered is not yet known.

I am writing in the middle of the sleeping camp. Not a sound disturbs the heavy slumber of the tired soldiers. Down in the river bed not a fire is to be seen nor a cry heard.

February 21.

The fourth day of General Cronje's fine defence of the Boer laager opened in a startling manner. Soon after dawn a terrific rattle of rifle fire broke out, waking everybody. Information came that the Gloucestershire and Essex Regiments had lost their way and bivouacked in error close to the Boer laager on the north side of the river. When they were perceived, the enemy opened a heavy fire upon them. Wonderful to relate, our casualties were practically *nil*. The incident proves again what our soldiers have always contended—that the Boer shooting is bad.

Desultory firing continued on the north and south banks of the river, General Knox's Brigade holding the containing lines on the south side, while General Smith-Dorrien on the north worked towards the laager.

General French had meanwhile advanced far in an easterly direction, and approached a kopje which was held by a strong force of Cronje's men reinforced by a contingent from Ladysmith, while General Broadwood's Brigade, with a Battery of Horse Artillery, was on the left and rear of the same kopje. The front of the hill was thoroughly searched from every side. Suddenly, the Boers bolted in the direction of General French, who headed them towards the drift, shelling them vigorously. A great number escaped, but many were killed by shrapnel, while about 50 prisoners were taken.

As soon as the kopje was evacuated I visited the position, which is

Digitized by Google

one of wonderful natural strength, and really forms the key of the fighting area in case we have to defend ourselves against the enemy's reinforcements advancing from the east. The first contact of the Boers from Ladysmith with our force was thus singularly unfortunate for them. A quantity of forage, provisions, and equipment fell into our hands. Frequent marks of blood showed where the wounded and dead who had been removed had fallen. The Boer method of taking away the dead is to tie two reins round the body, which is then carried off at full gallop by two horsemen.

Several *pourparlers* passed between us and the enemy during the short armistice in the middle of the day. It appears that Cronje is willing to surrender, but that the young Transvaal Boers refuse to give in. The rest of the beleaguered force are said to be anxious to surrender.

One of our doctors, who visited the Boer lines to see the wounded, found the trenches near the river full of them. He also saw many dead.

A deserter who came in last night states that yesterday's bombardment was deadly and terrible in its effects, the howitzers especially battering the river bed with an enfilading fire. The position, nevertheless, remains the same. The Boers are strengthening their intrenchments round the laager, but their case is hopeless.

The capture of the kopje which we effected to-day has given us a splendid position, and will prevent any relieving force from marching to join hands with Cronje.

To-day Lord Roberts sent a message to Cronje offering a safe-conduct for the women and children, and a free pass anywhere. He also offered a loan of doctors and medicine. General Cronje's reply was a curt refusal, and desultory shelling followed.

February 22.

The scene of the last five days' fighting is one of the prettiest spots in South Africa. The river where General Cronje is ensconced and fighting for his life resembles parts of the Thames. The ground all round slopes towards the river. All the higher ground is covered with our artillery, so that General Cronje is faced, front and rear, on both banks by our men, while General French's Cavalry, operating far from our flanks, prevent any sudden inrush of Boer reinforcements.

The Shropshire Regiment occupied the bed of the river from Sunday till to-day. Yesterday the Artillery continued firing till dark. During the night, after the last gun had been fired, the Shropshires rushed forward and seized nearly 200 yards of the new ground, where they spent the remainder of the night in intrenching themselves. As the Shropshires ever since Sunday had been under a galling fire and had done good work, they were to-day relieved by the Gordons.

Digitized by Google

In the course of our Artillery fire last evening, the mules of the 82nd Battery, which remained hitched to the carriages, were startled by a sudden discharge, and the whole of them stampeded and galloped off, but to-day all except one wagon have been recovered.

General French has sent in 75 men whom he had taken prisoners, while a patrol eight miles to the west has captured 30 Boers found wandering away.

Altogether this force has taken 460 prisoners, while numbers of Boer dead have been seen.

The prisoners all comment bitterly on General Cronje's persistence, which they say is simply murder. They are extremely depressed by the course the war is now taking, and by our refusal to attack their strong positions.

To-day a German ambulance attached to the enemy was allowed to pass through our lines from Jacobsdal.

We have captured large quantities of cattle, sheep, and trek oxen which had wandered from the Boer laager.

February 23.

Yesterday afternoon there was a terrible thunderstorm, accompanied by rain. During the night our guns fired several rounds. The position of General Cronje is now more hopeless than ever. We are gradually closing in on all sides.

In last Sunday's fight the Canadians, who were heavily engaged, behaved with great gallantry.

Colonel Martyr has been appointed to command a Brigade of Mounted Infantry.

From the *Times* special correspondent:—

Paardeberg, Feb. 23.

The cordon around General Cronje is being daily drawn a little closer.

To-day the Gordon Highlanders pushed up a distance of 200 yards of the river bed, beyond the point gained by the Shropshire Light Infantry on Wednesday night.

In the afternoon a balloon ascended from the river west of the Boer laager.

Meanwhile, General Cronje's investment is rapidly drawing the Boers together from every quarter, and several thousands are now hovering in the neighbourhood of Paardeberg. At half-past five o'clock this morning, 50 of the 9th Lancers on Poplar Farm were attacked by 500 Boers with a Vickers-Maxim gun. The Lancers, supported by a Battery

Digitized by Google

of Artillery and a Squadron of the 12th Lancers, succeeded in keeping the enemy at a distance.

At the same time a large force made a very determined attack on the south-easterly kopje captured on Wednesday, which is now known as Kitchener's Hill, and is held by the 1st Yorkshire Regiment, and drove in the picquets. The Yorkshires, who were under good cover, held the position till they were supported by the King's Own Scottish Borderers and a Battery of Artillery from the east. By 10.30 most of the Boers were routed. The Buffs, working round to the west, surrounded and captured the remaining 87 Boers, including two Field Cornets and one Commandant belonging to the Johannesburg and Heidelberg commandos, who had just come from Ladysmith, which place they left four days ago.

Through Reuter's agency :—

February 26.

This is the eighth day of General Cronje's resistance. General Smith-Dorrien's Brigade has now worked up the river bed to within 300 yards of the Boer laager.

Our stay here is in no way due to Cronje. Supplies and rest for the troops had become absolutely necessary. The daily arrival of large convoys now allows full rations to be given to the men. During the past three days heavy rain has fallen intermittently, causing great discomfort to our troops, but still greater discomfort to the Boers. The cold winds which sweep across the veldt have killed many sick animals. Last night the river rose, bringing down a great number of Boer dead and horses.

When the history of Lord Roberts's movement comes to be written, it will be found that the marching power and endurance of the British soldier are as great as ever. The distance covered, according to the map, seems nothing very marvellous; but it must be remembered that the whole original plan of the march was changed when General Cronje made his dash from Magersfontein. The whole army immediately swung to the left in hot pursuit. Some Regiments marched 27 miles in 24 hours, outstripping the transport and supplies, and living for days on almost quarter rations. The hardships and fatigue were borne with wonderful cheerfulness.

The troops have been lying fully exposed to the drenching rain of the last three days, and the terribly cold winds at night have severely tried them. They have borne all with admirable patience.

Last Monday afternoon the Gloucesters approached within a short distance of a Boer kopje and contained the enemy until nightfall, when

Digitized by Google

120 men charged the kopje with the bayonet and drove off the Boers with loss. The positions taken were evacuated during the night.

Diary continued:—

February 18th.—Moved off at 3 a.m., without food or water; after a little there was some brisk firing on our right front, when the 6th and 7th Divisions and the Highland Brigade extended. The Boer laager was now sighted across the river, and our Artillery set to work to shell it, soon setting some wagons on fire. We now advanced towards the river, which was held in a sort of semi-circle by the Boers. We got into action at about 8 a.m., and pushed on as far as we could under cover of the ant-hills. Bullets came dropping in most unpleasantly, and soon fell in storms. The left flank moved down to the river, where there was absolutely no cover, and of course suffered terribly, though they reached a point within about 400 yards of the laager. The enemy was intrenched on the opposite bank of the river amongst trees, and could not be seen, so that it was quite impossible to turn him out, even if the river could have been crossed, and the fire was kept up all day. Fortunately their Artillery fire was ineffective, as their shells did not burst, but their "pom-pom" was rather a nuisance, and their rifle fire throughout the day was like the independent firing preliminary to the final assault on a good old Aldershot field-day. We were under it for nearly twelve hours, without food or water. The casualties in the Regiment were heavy; Bright and Ball-Acton were shot dead, Day mortally wounded, Hammick shot in the leg, Watt shot in the shoulder by a Martini bullet, which passed along under the skin of his back and out at the other shoulder, while F. J. Henley had the skin of his leg carried away by a bullet, and Porter escaped by a veritable hair's breadth, a bullet grazing the left side of his head just above the ear. Of the men, 6 were killed and 26 wounded. At dusk all firing ceased, and we all moved back and bivouacked for the night. The Battalion fired during the day 17,260 rounds of ammunition.

SERGEANT E. LUDLOW
(One of the Wounded).

February 19th.—Up at daybreak, having had hardly any sleep, owing to the cold. Moved to two different bivouacs, and then to a third,

Digitized by Google

where we remained. Lords Roberts and Kitchener rode by and inspected our Brigade, being loudly cheered by the men. At 3 p.m. it was announced in camp that the Boers had surrendered; the men cheered, threw their helmets into the air, and there was wild excitement. However, after about three-quarters of an hour, we heard our guns hard at work again, as some of the Boer wagons had been seen to be on the move; and it turned out that there had been some mistake about their surrender, as Cronje had sent in to say that he had no intention of doing anything of the kind.

The Regiment paraded in the evening, and moved off with the object of driving the Boers from a kopje two or three miles away. We joined the Gloucesters on the way, and then advanced, ourselves working round to the right, the Gloucesters on our left. We were hotly peppered from the kopje, and had five or six casualties in the Regiment. The Gloucesters captured the lower kopje (at the foot of the big one) and occupied it until 3 a.m., when they were ordered to evacuate it, as Lord Roberts did not consider it safe with the Boers in possession of the higher kopje. We were ordered to return to camp when darkness came on; but by 1.30 a.m. we were hopelessly fogged as to our whereabouts, and the men were so done up, that we halted and went to sleep on the veldt.

Colonel Dalzell writes:—

On the 19th February—the day after the battle of Paardeberg—I was sent out in command of a small Brigade of ourselves, the Gloucesters, the Yorks, and a Battery, to try and capture a kopje (five miles off) known as "Kitchener's Kopje," on which the Boers were intrenched. We did not start until 6 p.m., and my great fear was that I might lose my force, or some of it, in the dark. I sent the Regiment round to the right to try and get at the Boers' left, whilst I attacked with the Gloucesters in front and Yorks in support. The Gloucesters worked uncommonly well, and got up in spite of a pretty heavy fire, and the Boers retired to a higher hill behind. After being under fire from 7 a.m. until dark the day before, the amusement had begun to pall, and I was glad to get off with only nine men killed. Six men of the Regiment were wounded—two mortally.

Diary continued:—

February 20th.—Got up at 4.30 a.m., and marched a mile to the Brigade bivouac, very hungry and thirsty, as we had had no food or water since 5 p.m. yesterday.

At 3 p.m. the whole of the troops paraded, and the Infantry took up a position along the ridge facing the laager; guns in front; the Cavalry

Digitized by Google

advanced across the plain on the other side of the river; while the Howitzer Battery and two naval guns got into position. The idea was to make a demonstration of the whole force. The guns shelled the laager till nearly dusk, and the Infantry nearest the Boers opened fire. The Regiment returned to camp, but went out again later on, and bivouacked for the night in rear of the naval guns. Everyone put on half rations from this date, owing to the loss of a convoy at Waterval Drift.

February 21st.—Returned to camp in the morning, but went out again and took up the same position, and remained there all night.

February 22nd.—Bivouacked on the outpost line day and night. Kitchener's Kopje, which we had captured but again evacuated on the 19th, and which was still held by the Boers, was surrounded by our Cavalry and taken, and then occupied by the Yorkshires. The possession of this kopje completed the cordon round the Boer position. In the morning French drove back a force of the enemy, killing 150 and capturing 90. One man of the Regiment was hit while going to the picquet line. Heavy thunderstorm at about 5 p.m. Six men of the Gloucesters were struck by lightning, not a hundred yards from our bivouac; one was killed, and the others badly injured; they were all lying under a cart containing lyddite! A flag of truce went to the Boer lines, to suggest the removal of their women, but Cronje refused to allow them to leave the laager. A salvo of all the guns was fired at night into the enemy's position.

February 23rd.—Remained in camp for the morning. The enemy from outside tried to capture Kitchener's Kopje, and the Buffs and the Scottish Borderers, who went out to help the Yorkshires, had a very smart little fight, capturing 71 Boers and a lot of horses. F. J. Henley and his Company escorted 85 prisoners to Klip Drift. Terrific thunderstorm at 6.30 p.m., just as we were going on picquet; everyone soaked; then another on the way out at 7 p.m.; and again a third in the night. All the trenches well filled with water. The river rose tremendously in the night, and more than a thousand dead horses from the laager were seen to float down. The Boers kept up a steady fire from their trenches during the night.

February 24th.—Returned to camp at 5 a.m., all very wet and played out. The guns fired occasionally during the day. Lord Kitchener left for Naauwpoort. We are sapping towards the laager by the river, and are already within 400 yards of the Boer trenches. The Regiment went on picquet at 6.30 p.m., and passed a miserable night of almost continuous rain, lying in two or three inches of water in the trenches.

February 25th.—Back to camp at 5 a.m. Boers not doing much

Digitized by Google

shooting this morning (possibly because it is Sunday); occasional rain during the day, but a fine night for a wonder. Took up our usual picquet line at 6.30 p.m. Heard some heavy firing up the river, about a mile away, at 9 p.m., but it did not last long. Dead horses been floating down from the laager all day, and they cannot have many left now. Captain Rattray, R.A.M.C., relieved Major Pike as Medical Officer to the Battalion.

February 26th.—Returned to camp at 5 a.m.; a nasty morning. Went on picquet at 6 p.m., earlier than usual, as there was an idea that the Boers meant to attempt to break out during the night. The guns shelled the laager at intervals from 7 to 9 p.m. At about 9 p.m. there was some heavy firing near the laager, and a few shots came over our heads. At 2 a.m. there was a regular fusillade from our sapped position down by the river, also firing further up stream, which continued at intervals till 3 or 4 a.m. Heard later that the Canadians had had 35 casualties.

CRONJE'S SURRENDER.

Lord Roberts' telegraphic despatch ran as follows:—

Paardeberg, Feb. 27, 7.45 a.m.

General Cronje and all his force capitulated unconditionally at daylight this morning, and is now a prisoner in my camp.

The strength of his force will be communicated later.

I hope Her Majesty's Government will consider this event satisfactory, occurring as it does on the anniversary of Majuba.

11 a.m.

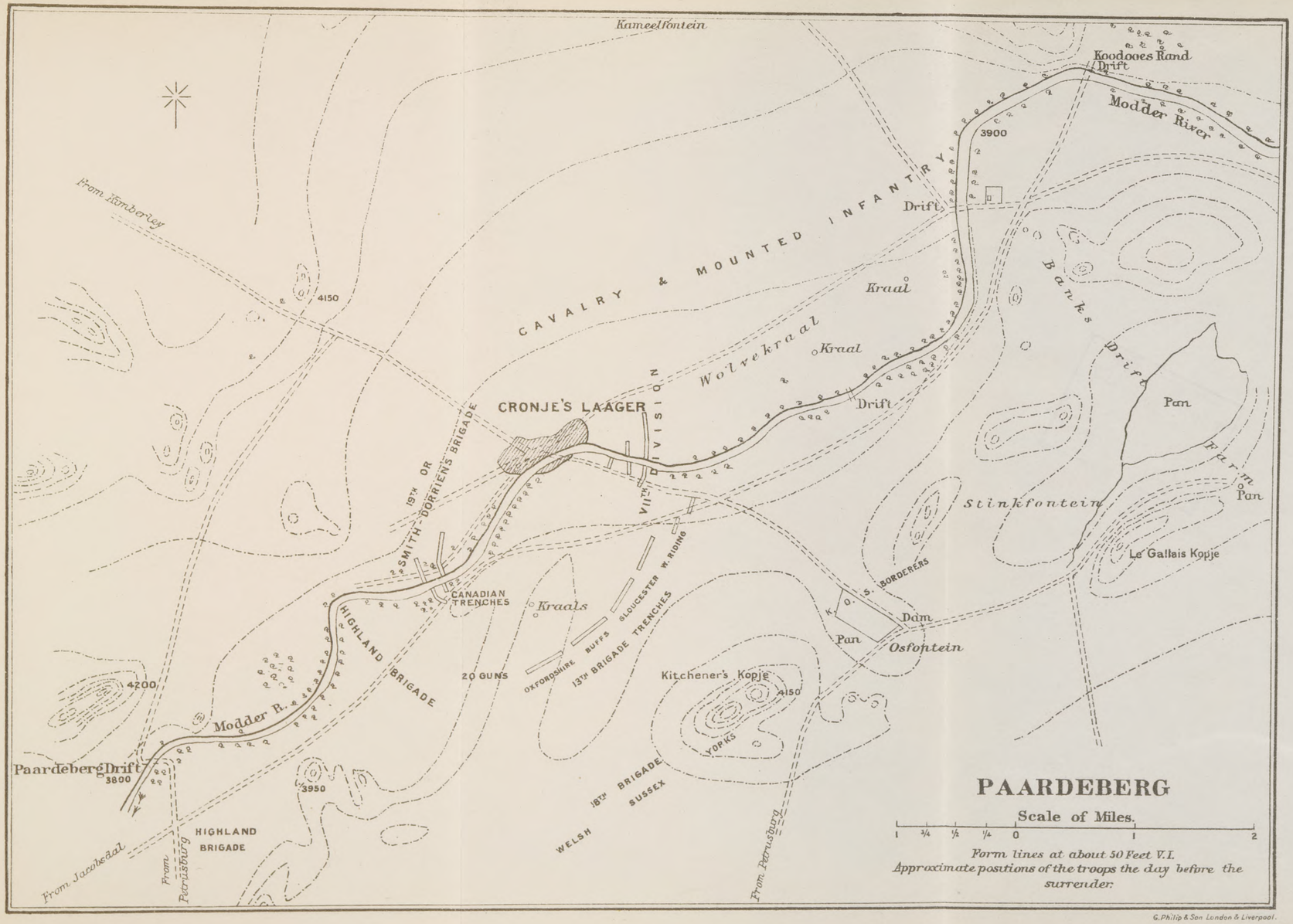
From information furnished daily to me by my Intelligence Department, it became apparent that Cronje's force was becoming more depressed, and that discontent among the troops and discord among the leaders were rapidly increasing.

This feeling doubtless accentuated by the disappointment caused when the Boer reinforcements, which tried to relieve Cronje, were defeated by our troops on the 23rd inst.

I resolved therefore to bring pressure to bear on the enemy. Each night trenches were pushed forward towards the enemy's laager so as to gradually contract his position, and at the same time I bombarded it heavily with Artillery, which was yesterday materially aided by the arrival of four 6 in. howitzers, which I had ordered up from De Aar.

In carrying out these measures, the captive balloon gave great assistance, by keeping us informed of the dispositions and movements of the enemy.

Digitized by Google



G. Philip & Son London & Liverpool.

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS
R L

Digitized by Google

At 3 a.m. to-day a most dashing advance, made by the Canadian Regiment and some Engineers, supported by the 1st Gordon Highlanders and the 2nd Shropshires, resulted in our gaining a point some 600 yards nearer the enemy, and within about 80 yards of his trenches, where our men intrenched themselves and maintained their positions till morning —a gallant deed worthy of our Colonial comrades, and which I am glad to say was attended with comparatively slight loss.

This apparently clinched matters, for at daylight to-day a letter signed by Cronje, in which he stated that he surrendered unconditionally, was brought to our outposts under a flag of truce.

In my reply, I told Cronje that he must present himself at my camp, and that his force must come out of their laager after laying down their arms.

By 7 a.m. I received General Cronje, and despatched a telegram to you announcing the fact. In the course of conversation he asked for kind treatment at our hands, and also that his wife, grandson, private secretary, adjutant, and servants might accompany him wherever he might be sent. I reassured him, and told him his request would be complied with.

I informed him that a General Officer would be sent with him to Cape Town to ensure his being treated with proper respect *en route.* He will start this afternoon under the charge of Major-General Pretyman, who will hand him over to the General Commanding at Cape Town.

The prisoners, who number about 3,000, will be formed into com mandos under their own officers. They also will leave here to-day, reaching Modder River to-morrow, when they will be railed to Cape Town in detachments.

1.5 p.m.

Boer prisoners amount to about 4,000, of whom 1,150 are Free Staters, the remainder Transvaalers. The officers are as follows :—

TRANSVAALERS.

General Piet Cronje.

Chief Commandant M. J. Wolverans.

Commandants F. J. Roos, J. T. Maartens.

Assistant Commandants R. Woest and J. P. G. Verster.

Camp Commandant W. L. Jooste.

Field Cornets Alberts and Vande, J. H. L. Bosman, W. A. Lemmer, H. J. Badenhorst, Früs (who is a Scandinavian), D. H. Hattings, and Venter D. J. Terblanche.

Acting Field Cornets P. V. de Villiers, G. J. Du Plessis.

Assistant Field Cornet R. J. Sneyman.

Digitized by Google

War Commissioner Arnoldi.

Assistant War Commissioner B. J. Jooste.

Magazine Master A. K. Enslin.

Adjutants J. M. A. Wolverans, A. D. W. R. Jolverans, A. Uing, M. S. Maree, J. A. Botha, and G. H. Grobler, in charge of Artillery.

Farrier Thomas Moodie.

FREE STATERS.

Commandants J. P. Wordaan, J. K. Kok, J. C. Villiers, R. J. Sneeyman, S. Meintjes, J. Greyling, Smith.

Field Cornets J. Cronje, C. Oosthuisen, C. Van Lyl, J. Nicuvenhal, M. Kvick, J. Kvick, J. Van der Walt.

Commandant of Artillery, Major Albrecht.

Lieutenants Vaen-Heister, Van Dewitz, Van Angersteins.

Guns captured are as follows:—From Transvaal.—Three 7·5 centimètre Krupp 9-pounders (?) and one Maxim. From Orange Free State. —One 7·5 centimètre Krupp, one Maxim.

Paardeberg, Feb. 28, 11.55 a.m.

Cronje with his family left [here] yesterday in charge of Major-General Pretyman, and under an escort of the City Imperial Volunteers Mounted Infantry. Later in the day the remaining prisoners [left], under the charge of the Earl of Errol, and escorted by the Gloucestershire Regiment and 100 City Imperial Volunteers.

The women and children are all being sent to their homes.

I understand that grave dissatisfaction was felt by the Boers at Cronje's refusal to accept my offer of a safe-conduct to the women and children and medical care of his wounded, 170 of whom are now in our hospital. Very many of them are in a terrible plight from want of care at an earlier stage.

I inspected the Boer laager yesterday, and was much struck by the ingenuity and energy with which the position was made almost impregnable to assault.

Reuter's Agent telegraphed from Paardeberg on the 27th February :—

At three o'clock this morning our camp was awakened by the continued rattle of musketry fire. When day broke the news came that the Canadians were building a trench quite close to the enemy, who were firing at fifty yards' range. The Canadians worked forward, and occupied the edge of the Boer trenches along the river, entirely enfilading the rest.

Digitized by Google

Then, with the exception of an occasional solitary shot, there followed a complete cessation of firing on all sides.

Suddenly the Regiment stationed on the crest of the hill, which first caught sight of the white flag, burst into cheers, and the news rapidly spread that General Cronje had surrendered. Shortly afterwards a note arrived for Lord Roberts stating that General Cronje had unconditionally surrendered. General Pretyman was thereupon sent to take his surrender.

At about 7 a.m. a small group was perceived crossing the plain towards the British headquarters. Lord Roberts, who was walking to and fro in front of the modest cart in which he sleeps, ordered a guard of the Seaforth Highlanders to make a line. As the group of horsemen approached nearer, it was seen that on the right of General Pretyman rode an elderly man clad in a rough, short overcoat, a wide-brimmed hat, ordinary tweed trousers, and brown shoes.

This was General Cronje, his face almost burnt black, and his curly hair tinged with grey. Lord Roberts and his staff stood awaiting him. General Pretyman, addressing the Commander-in-Chief, said, "Commandant Cronje, Sir." General Cronje touched his hat, and the salute was returned by Lord Roberts. The whole group then dismounted, and Lord Roberts, stepping forward, shook hands with the Boer Commandant.

"You have made a gallant defence, Sir," was the first salutation of Lord Roberts to the Boer leader, who was then ushered into the headquarters, where he was entertained with food and refreshment.

Later the *Times* Special Correspondent wrote :—

The events of the early morning of the 27th can best be told from outside.

Brigadier-General MacDonald sent from his bed a note to Lord Roberts reminding him that Tuesday was the anniversary of that disaster which, we all remembered, he had by example, order, and threat himself done his best to avert, even while the panic had been at its height; Sir Henry Colvile submitted a suggested attack backed by the same unanswerable plea. For a moment Lord Roberts demurred to the plan; it seemed likely to cost too heavily, but the insistence of Canada broke down his reluctance, and the men of the oldest colony were sent out in the small hours of Tuesday morning to redeem the blot on the name of the mother country.

From the existing trench, some 700 yards long, on the northern bank, held jointly by the Gordons and the Canadians, the latter were ordered to advance in two lines each, of course, in extended order—

Digitized by Google

thirty yards apart, the first with bayonets fixed, the second reinforced by fifty Royal Engineers under Colonel Kincaid and Captain Boileau.

In dead silence, and covered by a darkness only faintly illuminated by the merest rim of the dying moon, "with the old moon in her lap," the three Companies of Canadians moved on over the bush-strewn ground. For over 400 yards the noiseless advance continued, and when within eighty yards of the Boer trench, the trampling of the scrub betrayed the movement. Instantly the outer trench of the Boers burst into fire, which was kept up almost without intermission from five minutes to three o'clock to ten minutes past the hour. Under this fire the courage and discipline of the Canadians proved themselves. Flinging themselves on the ground, they kept up an incessant fire on the trenches, guided only by the flashes of their enemy's rifles, and the Boers admit that they quickly reduced them to the necessity of lifting their rifles over their heads to the edge of the earthwork, and pulling their triggers at random. Behind this line the Engineers did magnificent work. Careless of danger, the trench was dug from the inner edge of bank to the crest, and then for fifty or sixty yards out through the scrub. The Canadians retired three yards to this protection, and waited for dawn, confident in their new position, which had entered the protected angle of the Boer position, and commanded alike the rifle pits of the banks and the trefoil-shaped embrasures on the north.

Cronje saw that matters were indeed desperate. Many Boers threw up their hands and dashed unharmed across the intervening space; others waved white flags and exposed themselves carelessly on their intrenchments, but not a shot was fired. Colonel Otter and Colonel Kincaid held a hasty consultation, which was disturbed by the sight of Sir Henry Colvile, General of the Ninth Division, quietly riding down within 500 yards of the northern Boer trenches, to bring the news that even while the last few shots were being fired a horseman was hurrying in with a white flag and Cronje's unconditional surrender, to take effect at sunrise.

Of the three Canadian Companies the foremost, and that which suffered most, was the French company, under Major Pelletier.

Meanwhile a few formal preliminaries were being arranged at Headquarters, and General Pretyman went out with a small escort to meet the Boer Commander and his secretary.

Lord Roberts, in the plainest of khaki, without a badge of rank except his Kandahar sword, awaited the arrival of his distinguished prisoner. "Commandant Cronje," was the brief introduction as the Boer swung himself off his white pony, and curtly answering the Field

Digitized by Google

Marshal's salute, shook hands. "I am glad to see you; I am glad to meet so brave a man," was Lord Roberts's brief welcome, and a formal surrender followed, the conversation being interpreted by Cronje's secretary.

The General, a man of few words, sat deeply sunken in his chair with his hands in the pockets of his overcoat, and sullenly regarded the scene. Every consideration was paid him, but until the last was seen of his bulky form driving away to Modder River in the closed carriage which had been provided for him, his set, hardened face only suggested that the bitterest hour of his life was being barely endured by the man whose pluck, whose capacity, and whose straightforwardness we his enemies are the first to admit.

Major Caunter's account:—

The Free Staters next morning told us that their last ration was consumed on the 26th, and that they had on that day addressed a communication to Cronje, in which they set forth that, escape being impossible, hope of relief abandoned, and food exhausted, they had determined that, with or without his leave, they would surrender; but that, to give an opportunity to those who were prepared to risk their lives in an attempt to break out during the night, they would defer their purpose until the morning of the 27th.

However this may be, and whatever may have been the determining factor, loud cheering from our men all along the south front soon after daybreak, announced the fact that at last, without a doubt, Cronje had thrown up the sponge.

And it was the dawn of the nineteenth anniversary of Majuba!

The Boers could be seen sitting outside their trenches, white handkerchiefs and pieces of cloth fluttering here and there in the breeze.

To the Sixth Division fell the honour of taking over the prisoners, who were ordered to collect on the south side, after laying down their arms. Each commando was then formed up under its own commandant, and led past General Kelly-Kenny two and two. As illustrating the complete want of order and organisation among them, it may be mentioned that the Boer officers experienced great difficulty in getting their men to carry out this not very complicated manœuvre. Altogether the standard of intelligence, as judged by their physiognomy, manner, and movements, was of a very low order, the Free Staters, however, comparing favourably with the Transvaalers. Far from being dejected or appearing to feel the ignominy of their position, the majority were in high spirits, and nearly all saluted the General with a smile as they filed

Digitized by Google

past. The official numbers with commandos and commandants were as follows :—

O.F.S. Artillery—Major Albrecht, 45 men.

One Vickers-Maxim, three 7·5-centimetre Krupps, one Q.F. 12-pounder.

Commando.	*Commandant.*	*Men.*
Kroonstad	J. V. Meantages	134
Ladybrand	R. J. Sneyman	134
Ficksberg	De Villiers	44
Winberg	J. W. Kok	193
Hoopstad	J. Greyling	373
Bloemfontein	Fouri	202
Jacobsdal	A. Smit	16
Boshof	J. W. Grunewald (field cornet)	112
Petrusberg, Fauresmith, Vryburg		67
Total Orange Free Staters		1,320

Transvaalers :—

Commando.	*Commandant.*	*Men.*
Potchefstroom	Roos	615
,,	Wolmarans	646
Gatsrand	Maartens	446
Scandinavians	Früs (field cornet)	49
Bowyk	Terblanche (field cornet)	318
Bloemhof	Woeste	518
Total Transvaalers		2,592

Making a grand total, with 160 wounded, of 4,072.

Conversations with the various Commandants elicited some interesting facts. Albrecht appeared somewhat depressed. He said he had repeatedly warned Cronje that he was getting himself into a trap from which there could be no escape, by remaining in the bed of the river, but that his advice was of no avail. As an Artilleryman he had a high opinion of the so-called pom-pom on account of its range, accuracy, mobility, and moral effect. He stated that lyddite both at Magersfontein and here had done little damage. Roos, who had been most kind to two of our officers taken prisoners on the 18th, sharing his tobacco and coffee, and making them as comfortable as the circumstances would

Digitized by Google

permit, was anxious to know what we thought of his management of the rear-guard action at Klip Kraal on the 16th, and was delighted at our warm encomiums. Others told us that Cronje never anticipated the arrival of our Infantry on the 18th; that had he done so he would have occupied the kopjes; that he was about to inspan when he realised their presence, and that in their absence he did not consider it would have been a difficult matter to have pushed on in spite of the Cavalry.

Diary continued:—

February 27th.—At 6 a.m. the Regiment retired under cover of the hill, where we remained until 7 o'clock, a few shots coming over our heads. Half-an-hour later we returned to camp, and shortly afterwards the Boers sent in a flag of truce, offering unconditional surrender, and then Cronje rode into Lord Roberts' camp. The Buffs went down to the laager during the morning, and brought in the prisoners—upwards of 4,000 of them—with a "pom-pom," four guns and two Maxims, and Mrs. Cronje and some women and children. The Boers had run out of food, and, after a Council of War, had agreed to surrender if they could not escape last night. The Gloucesters marched the prisoners to Klip Drift in the evening. It was pleasant to see the last of them. There was a nice collection of captured weapons—rifles and carbines—including Mausers, Martinis, Lee-Metfords, and various others, with about half-a-million rounds of ammunition. At 5.30 p.m. the officers of the Regiment and portions of two Companies went down to the river to the funeral of poor Bright and Ball-Acton.

February 28th.—Quite a relief to have no enemy about, and to have a day off.

Night picquet at the usual place. Very short of food now; half rations hardly enough to keep one going, and we all feel quite sick sometimes for want of a decent meal. I have made a vow never to grumble at the quality of the food again, as long as there is enough of it.

THE ADVANCE ON THE FREE STATE CAPITAL.

Diary:—

March 1st.—The Brigade marched at 8 a.m. to Osfontein, about four miles off, where we bivouacked near a farm, with excellent well-water. Heavy storm for an hour or two at mid-day. Heard of the relief of Ladysmith. Lords Roberts and Kitchener now at Kimberley.

March 2nd.—Halted.

March 3rd.—Lord Roberts arrived, and took up his headquarters at

Digitized by Google

the farmhouse. We got a few supplies from Modder River—most acceptable.

March 4th.—Two Companies of the Regiment on picquet. Heavy rain and thunderstorms most of the day and night; our shelters and kits soaked. An English mail arrived, as well as some stores from Kimberley.

March 5th.—Halted. The Boer position is said to be about five or six miles away, along a line of kopjes.

March 6th.—Still halted at Osfontein. Received orders in the afternoon to move to-morrow, in order to work round the left of the Boer position, and if possible roll them up. French, with the Cavalry Division, is working right round to the enemy's rear; and the 7th Division and other troops are to take the right and centre of the position. General Knox returned from hospital and took over command of the Brigade.

March 7th.—Paraded at 2.30 a.m.; marched at 3.30. The 7th Division moved on the left by the river, the 9th Division and Guards Brigade in the centre, and our (6th) Division on the right. We had previously heard and then seen a field gun firing on French's Cavalry. Our 24 field guns (viz., three field batteries and one howitzer) opened fire on the "Seven Sisters" kopjes, held by the enemy on our flank. The position was almost at once abandoned, the Boers evidently not liking the appearance of French's Cavalry in their rear; their guns ceased fire and disappeared. Our Infantry now advanced and occupied the position, the 6th Division moving right round to the rear, and then through the line of kopjes. The Boers had apparently imagined that we were going to make the usual frontal attack, and had dug shelter trenches all along the crest of the high ground connecting the kopjes. They left in rather a hurry, as we found several wagons, ponies, and tents abandoned. We then halted for a bit, and in about an hour's time advanced again, passing the centre of the enemy's late position —a high kopje, on which they had had a gun. We had now gone 16 miles, and it was another four to the river, which we eventually reached at 3.30 p.m. The men had suffered considerably from the exertion, as they were carrying 150 rounds of ammunition and a whole day's rations, and the heat was intense; they stuck to it however manfully, though 70 men of the Regiment had fallen out from sheer exhaustion. Other Regiments suffered equally, 700 having fallen out when the force reached the river. We immediately settled down in bivouac, as we thought for the night, but we had been in barely an hour when we got orders to be ready to move on at 5.30 p.m. At the appointed time we were off again, eventually reaching Poplar Grove

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY
ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS
K L

Digitized by Google

at 7.20 p.m., having done 25 miles in the last 16 hours. Had no blankets or great coats, and consequently put in little sleep; the men walked about most of the night, and lit fires to keep themselves warm.

French reports 50 casualties in his force to-day. He hunted the Boers the whole day, and pounded them with his guns, but he was never really able to get well into them, as they broke up at once. Two foreign attachés were taken prisoners, and stated that the Boers had 9,000 men, but were rather disorganised, the Transvaalers having quarrelled with the Free Staters.

March 8th.—Marched at 12 noon eight miles, to Roodepoort. Halted half way for half-an-hour. Very hot to start with, but clouded over later, and had a shower of rain. On the way we passed the Mounted Infantry and some of French's Cavalry near some kopjes, the remainder having gone ahead. Reached our bivouac at 4.30 p.m.; the men got their blankets, and had a good night's rest.

March 9th.—Halted at Roodepoort; the Regiment on picquet at night.

March 10th.—The Division marched at 6.30 a.m. to Dam Vallei (near Driefontein), the Regiment forming the rear-guard, and getting away about an hour later. The force moved in three Columns by the three roads to Bloemfontein, the 6th Division on the left, and Lord Roberts with the centre Division. All quiet until about noon, when we heard heavy firing to our left front, and eventually saw a Field Battery in action some way ahead. We, as rear-guard, did not get into the fight, but about a dozen shells were dropped by the enemy from a Creusot gun into the baggage just in front of us, doing no damage, however, as only one or two of the shells burst. We heard later that the rest of our Division had been fighting all day, and had had over 400 casualties; though they had the satisfaction of getting home with the bayonet, and doing terrible execution. We reached our bivouac at 7.30 p.m., having covered only 12 miles in the 12 hours. Very cold night, but we got our blankets. On picquet duty.

March 11th.—More than a hundred dead Boers were buried this morning. The Regiment marched at 7 a.m., on rear-guard again. As we have hardly 400 men fit for duty now, we are not considered strong enough to move in front. First four miles over open veldt to a kopje; then three miles slightly down hill, with another four up. Very open country, with one or two farms about. Transport animals in rather a bad state. Bivouacked near a farm at Salisbury Plain (Kaal's Spruit) at 4.15 p.m. Day's march, 13 miles.

March 12th.—Marched at 5.45 a.m.; Regiment right flank guard. The 6th Division moved on the left, 9th Division on the right, and 7th Division in rear of the 6th. No opposition, the Boers having

Digitized by Google

cleared off, probably to make a stand near Bloemfontein. We halted for an hour at six miles, and reached a tributary of the Modder at 10 miles. Reached Venter's Vallei at 2.30 p.m., after 15 miles marching from the last bivouac. French well ahead of us, and reported to have struck the railway at Leeuwberg.

March 13th.—Ordered to march at 5.30 a.m., but the order was cancelled, and the 9th Division went on ahead, instead of the 6th. Heard that French had met with resistance on arriving at the railway; but he planted a few shells into the Boer laager, and the enemy went off north at once, taking all the rolling stock, and passing through Bloemfontein to Kroonstad. Our other half Division (18th Brigade) marched at 3 p.m., and our Brigade (13th) followed at 5 p.m., the Regiment as advanced guard. We soon caught up the tail of the 18th Brigade, which delayed our march the whole way. Heavy rain for a couple of hours, and we got wet through. Marched all night, and reached our bivouac at 2 a.m. The name of the place was Brand Dam Kop, near a large farm (deserted) belonging to President Steyn's brother. Got our blankets, and managed to put in three or four hours' sleep in spite of rain.

March 14th.—Marched at 9 a.m., the 18th Brigade leading, and the Regiment rear Battalion of the 13th Brigade. Moved through the farm, and then from the high ground got our first sight of Bloemfontein —three or four miles off. Each Regiment marched through the town, and had a great reception from the English residents, who had been cooped up here for the last five months, and must have had rather a poor time of it. We found the "Union Jack" flying over the Residency; Lord Roberts, with French's Division, and the Guards' Brigade, having occupied the town yesterday. The 6th Division marched to bivouacs, about a mile north of the town, under the Fort, at 1.30 p.m. Bloemfontein is rather a pretty little place, close under a kopje, on which the North Fort is situated. The houses are mostly in the Swiss cottage style, of brick, with tin roofs. The public buildings are good, and one or two of the churches fine; the streets broad, but badly looked after. There is electric light throughout, but not in working order at present. No doubt the place will improve a good deal after we have had it for a year or two.

We expect to stay here for about a fortnight, until the line is thoroughly repaired, and the bridge at Norval's Pont rebuilt; then we shall be off after the Boers again. They are reported to be preparing to oppose our advance somewhere about Kroonstad. A good many of the farmers have come in and given up their arms. I don't fancy that the Free Staters will bother us much more.

Digitized by Google

MARCH OF THE 6TH DIVISION FROM ENSLIN TO BLOEMFONTEIN.

12TH FEBRUARY TO 14TH MARCH, 1900.

Date.	From	To	Hour of Start.	Hour of Arrival.	Miles.	Remarks.
12 Feb.	Enslin / Graspan	Ramdam	6.0 a.m.	1.0 p.m.	10½	
13 „ ..	Ramdam	Waterval Dft.	5.0 a.m.	11.0 a.m.	10	
14 „ ..	Waterval Dft.	Wegdrai.....	1.0 a.m.	11.0 a.m.	10	Including detours, 27 miles in 24 hours.
14 „ ..	Wegdrai.....	Klip Drift	5.0 p.m.	12.30 p.m.	12	
16 „ ..	Klip Drift	Brandvallei ..	5.0 a.m.	15th 12 noon	11	13th Bgde. engaged with enemy's rear-guard.
17 „ ..	Klip Drift	Brandvallei...	3.0 a.m.	17th 12.30 p.m.		18th Brigade followed.
17 „ ..	Brandvallei ..	Paardeberg...	5.0 p.m.	9.30 a.m.	5	
18 „ ..	Paardeberg ..	Boer Laager ..	3.0 a.m.	7.0 a.m.	2	Battle of Paardeberg.
1 Mar. .	Boer Laager..	Osfontein.....	—	—	4	
7 „ ..	Osfontein.....	Poplar Grove .	3.30 a.m.	7.0 p.m.	22	Including detour; drove enemy from his position.
8 „ ..	Poplar Grove .	Roodepoort Farm	12 noon.	4.30 p.m.	7	
10 „ ..	Roodepoort...	Driefontein (near)	6.0 a.m.	6.0 p.m.	10	Battle of Driefontein.
11 „ ..	Driefontein...	Kaals Spruit..	5.30 a.m.	3.0 p.m.	14	
12 „ ..	Kaals Spruit .	Venter's Vallei	5.30 a.m.	2.30 p.m.	12½	
13 „ ..	Venter's Vallei	Brand Kop ...	3.0 p.m.	1.0 a.m.	13½	
14 „ ..	Brand Kop...	Bloemfontein.	9.0 a.m.	14th 2.0 p.m.	6	

6TH DIVISION.

DIFFERENCE IN STRENGTH BETWEEN 12TH FEBRUARY AND 14TH MARCH, 1900.

Units.	Strength on 12/2/00.			Strength on 14/3/00.			Decrease.			Explanation of decrease. Killed.		Died of Wounds.		Wounded.		Sick.		Missing.		Other Causes.	
	Officers.	W. Officers	N.C. O's. and Men.	Officers.	W. Officers	N.C. O's. and Men.	Officers.	W. Officers	N.C. O's. and Men.	Officers.	N.C. O's. and Men.	Officers.	N.C. O's. and Men.	Officers.	N.C. O's. and Men.	Officers.	N.C. O's. and Men.	Officers.	N.C. O's. and Men.	Officers.	N.C. O's. and Men.
Divisional Troops ...	38	2	1006	36	2	877	2	–	129	–	4	–	–	1	17	–	65	1	1	–	42
2 Bn. Buffs.	18	1	786	10	1	575	8	–	211	2	25	–	–	6	105	–	81	–	–	–	–
2 Bn. Glouc. Regt.	23	1	716	19	1	572	4	–	144	–	9	–	3	3	46	1	80	–	3	–	3
1 Bn. W. Rid. Regt.	23	1	789	17	1	596	6	–	193	–	23	1	1	4	124	1	45	–	–	–	–
1 Bn. Ox. Lt. Inf.	20	1	595	14	1	430	6	–	165	2	16	1	1	2	74	1	74	–	–	–	–
1 Bn. York. Regt.	21	1	953	12	1	723	9	–	230	1	46	–	–	7	131	1	42	–	11	–	–
1 Bn. Welsh Regt.	23	1	875	10	1	660	13	–	215	2	32	–	–	10	165	–	5	1	13	–	–
1 Bn. Essex Regt.	23	1	936	11	1	757	12	–	179	1	21	1	–	5	123	3	8	–	15	2	7
Totals ..	189	9	6656	129	9	5190	60	–	1466	8	176	3	5	38	790	7	400	2	43	2	52

Digitized by Google

The following order was published to the troops after the entry into Bloemfontein:—

Army Orders—South Africa.

Bloemfontein, 14th March, 1900.

It affords the Field Marshal Commanding-in-Chief the greatest pleasure in congratulating the Army in South Africa on the various events that have occurred during the past few weeks, and he would specially offer his sincere thanks to that portion of the Army which, under his immediate command, has taken part in the operations resulting yesterday in the capture of Bloemfontein.

On the 12th February this force crossed the boundary which divided the Orange Free State from British territory. Three days later Kimberley was relieved. On the 15th day the bulk of the Boer army in this State, under one of their most trusted Generals, were made prisoners. On the 17th day the news of the relief of Ladysmith was received, and on the 13th March, 29 days after the commencement of the operations, the capital of the Orange Free State was occupied.

This is a record of which any army may well be proud—a record which could not have been achieved except by earnest, well-disciplined men, determined to do their duty, and to surmount whatever difficulties or dangers might be encountered.

Exposed to extreme heat by day, bivouacking under heavy rain, marching long distances (not infrequently with reduced rations), the endurance, cheerfulness, and gallantry displayed by all ranks are beyond praise, and Lord Roberts feels sure that neither Her Majesty the Queen nor the British nation will be unmindful of the efforts made by this force to uphold the honour of their country.

The Field Marshal desires especially to refer to the fortitude and heroic spirit with which the wounded have borne their sufferings. Owing to the great extent of country over which modern battles have to be fought, it is not always possible to afford immediate aid to those who are struck down; many hours have indeed, at times, elapsed before some of the wounded could be attended to, but not a word of murmur or complaint has been uttered; the anxiety of all, when succour came, was that their comrades should be cared for first.

In assuring every officer and man how much he appreciates their efforts in the past, Lord Roberts is confident that, in the future, they will continue to show the same resolution and soldierly qualities, and to lay down their lives if need be (as so many brave men have already done)

Digitized by Google

Map to Illustrate
THE MARCH OF THE VI. DIVISION
from
ENSLIN TO BLOEMFONTEIN,
February and March,
1900.
Statute Miles
0 1 2 3 6 9 12
March of the VI Division
KIMBERLEY
BEACONSFIELD STA.
WIMBLEDON STA.
SPYTFONTEIN STA.
OLD ORANGE FREE STATE BOUNDARY
Lange Berg
MERTON STA.
Magersfontein
Riet River
MODDER RIVER STA.
Modder River
Klip Drift 15.2.00
Rondaval Drift
Driepuit
Klipkraal
Klipkraal Drift
Brandvallei Drift 16.2.00
Koodoosrand Drift
Modder R.
Poplar Grove 7.3.00
Seven Sisters
Koodepoort 9.3.00
Wolvekraal
Osfontein 1.3.00
CRONJE'S LAAGER
PAARDEBERG DRIFT 17.2.00 TO 28.2.00
Abrahams Kraal
Dam
Valley
Pan
Baberspan
Modder River
Driefontein 10.3.00
Pan
Asvogel Kop
Salisbury Plain
Dam
Doornboom 11.3.00
Petrusberg
Pan
Emmaus
JACOBSDAL
Jacobsdal
Wegdrai Drift 14.2.00
HONEY NEST KLOOF STA.
ENSLIN STA. 11.2.00
11.2.00
GRASPAN STA.
Pan 12.2.00
Ramdam
13.2.00
Waterval Drift
Dekiels Drift
Riet River
Koffyfontein
BLOEMFONTEIN
14th March 1900
FORT
Brand Dam Kop 13.3.00
Venters Vallei 12.3.00
Leeuwberg
24°40′
25°
25°20′E
25°40′
26°
29°
29°20′
29°26′
© Philip & Son London & Liverpool.

Digitized by Google

in order to ensure that the war in South Africa may be brought to a satisfactory conclusion.

By order,
(Sd.) W. F. KELLY,
Major-General,
Deputy Adjutant General, for Chief of the Staff.

BLOEMFONTEIN.

Diary continued:—

March 15th.—General C. Knox inspected the Brigade in bivouacs. Two Regiments of the Guards' Brigade went south by rail.

March 16th.—Troops put on full rations. Hear that we shall be here two or three weeks. A rest is much needed; men want feeding up. We only have about 400 men now.

March 19th.—Inspection of the Division by Lord Roberts, who addressed every two Regiments in turn. Heavy rain all the afternoon.

March 20th to 30th.—Routine work; picquet duty in the Fort; route marches; a good deal of rain. The effects of Paardeberg water showing up now in enteric.

March 31st.—Our Brigade got sudden orders to march. Buffs, Gloucesters, and West Riding left at 2 p.m. We were rear-guard, and brought the carts, wagons, etc. Started at 5 p.m., and arrived at Steyn's Farm, Roodeval (due east) at 2 a.m. 12 miles.

April 1st.—Other three Regiments left at daybreak; we (rear-guard again) marched at 10 a.m., arriving at Krantz Kraal Bridge at 2 p.m. Left again at 3.30 p.m., and at 5.30 p.m. bivouacked on a kopje (Mokesberg), two Regiments on the kopje, and two below. Day's march 9 miles. Information received soon after midnight that General Colvile (9th Division) had retired at midnight to Bushman's Kop—about seven miles from us, as the Boers were supposed to be trying to cut his communications with Bloemfontein.

April 2nd.—Heavy rain in early morning. The Regiment moved at 7.30 a.m. to a kopje, two miles off, where we took up a position. Two Regiments occupied another kopje, and the other Regiment remained with the convoy. We left our position at 1.30 p.m. and returned to Krantz Kraal Bridge (3 miles), the remainder of the Brigade following. Halted, and marched again at 5.30 p.m. for Springfield Farm, said to be 10 or 12 miles off, but which turned out to be a good 17 miles for us, as we were rear-guard and had to keep to the road. Got in at 1 a.m., and found the 9th Division and some Cavalry also here. Springfield is eight miles south-east of Bloemfontein.

Digitized by Google

April 3rd.—Left at 10 a.m., and reached Bloemfontein at 3 p.m., having marched 50 miles, without any apparent object, as we had no Cavalry, Mounted Infantry, or guns. However, we hear now that, on the 30th, Broadwood's R.H.A. fell into an ambush, losing seven guns near the Bloemfontein Waterworks on the Modder, about 20 miles from the town, and 10 miles or so from the kopje that we occupied yesterday; that Colvile had gone to his assistance, and that we had been sent to protect Colvile's left flank. The Boers damaged the Waterworks a bit, so water is scarce at present.

The 18th Brigade left at 5 p.m. for Springfield. We thought we were going to get a night in bed, but at 10 p.m. we were warned for parade at 4 a.m. to-morrow.

April 4th.—The Brigade marched, at 4.30 a.m., to Tempey Farm (three miles). Two Regiments went a little further, to Fischer's Farm, the Boers having threatened to seize the owner, who had given up his arms. No Boers appeared, so we left at about 10 a.m. The Brigade then took up a line of picquets on the kopjes commanding Bloemfontein, and remained out the day and night. The 12th Brigade (Clements) rejoined the 6th Division in the evening, and the 18th Brigade ceased to belong to the Division.

April 5th.—Off picquet at 8 a.m. Part of the 9th Division sent down to help Gatacre, who has had five Companies captured. Want of boots is our great trouble now. We are beginning to get tents.

April 7th.—200 men of the Regiment (under Mockler) strengthening the Supply Stores with intrenchments—digging all day.

April 8th to10th.—Took up alarm-post positions for defence of Bloemfontein.

April 11th.—Draft from England joined headquarters. Childers, Paske, Christie-Miller, Logan, and White, and about 300 men.

April 12th.—Five Companies on outpost duty.

April 13th.—Enteric is increasing, and there is a lot of dysentery. Numbers of men are dying.

April 16th.—Ward and Simpson arrived with a draft of 100 men from England.

April 19th.—Our tents all up now; had been without them since leaving Modder River on February 10th.

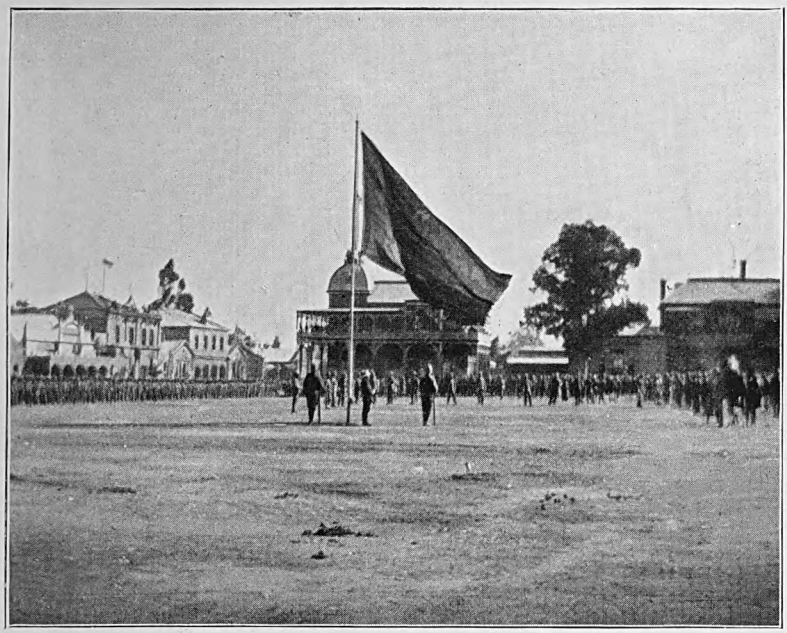
Extract from a letter, dated Bloemfontein, 25th April, 1900:—

We are still here, and nothing startling has happened in these parts since I last wrote. You know that both our drafts have turned up, and we are once again a Regiment, having a good 800 men ready

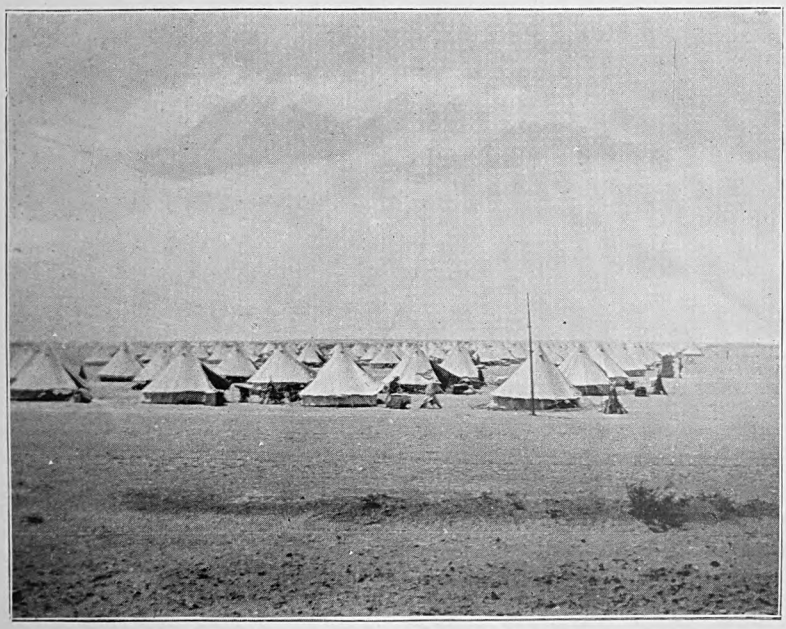
Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google



THE BRITISH FLAG AT BLOEMFONTEIN.



CAMP AT BLOEMFONTEIN.

Digitized by Google

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS
R L

Digitized by Google

for the job; and when we get the Volunteer Company (which is on its way up) we could march 900 strong. The men are as hard as nails, but there is no doubt that the Reserve men have stuck it better than the younger men. Pears, the Sergeant-Major, is very ill with enteric. I sincerely hope he may weather it; but it will be about as much as he can do. Lamotte and Lethbridge are better, and should be out of hospital soon. Porter is still in hospital with dysentery, and Cobb has gone down to Cape Town to pick up after his go of fever.

Extract from letter, dated Bloemfontein, 12th May, 1900:—

The Regiment moved on the 7th to Sussex Hill Camp, four miles out of the town, to relieve some Mounted Infantry. The Gloucesters went to the Waterworks, and two Regiments of Clements' Brigade are out in the country round the town; so our Division is pretty well split up, and I am afraid there is small chance of our moving on towards Pretoria. Our Volunteer Company turned up from England on the 8th; there are a lot of Oxford Undergraduates in the ranks.[1] Life here is a bit slow now, though we have a nice roomy camp, a bit higher than the town. We keep the men fit by playing football when we are not on duty; but there is a heap of enteric about, and a certain number of officers are down with it.

Extract from letter, dated Bloemfontein, 27th May, 1900:—

Still here and kept pretty busy, loading and unloading stores, and one thing and another. We hear that Roberts has crossed the Vaal with little opposition. It is rather sickening being left behind like this, but of course someone had to stay to look after this place and the communications. Seven of our officers are in hospital with enteric now, and of course an equal proportion of the men. We got another draft of 100 men and an officer (Kirkpatrick) to-day, which will help us along for a bit. We are to have a big parade next Monday for the reading of the Proclamation annexing the old Orange Free State.

---

[1] The Volunteer Service Company was enlisted for one year, or until the end of the war. Date of attestation, 19th January 1900; embarked 10th March 1900; arrived at Cape Town, 31st March 1900. Officers: Captain M. F. Lathy (1st V.B.) in command, Lieut. L. C. Hawkins, and Lieut. C. A. Barron (1st Bucks). Strength: 1st (Oxford University) Vol. Battn., 1 Sergeant, 15 R. and F.; 2nd Vol. Battn., 25 R. and F.; 1st Bucks, 1 Colour-Sergeant, 3 Sergeants, and 66 R. and F. Total of all ranks, 114.

Digitized by Google

KROONSTAD AND DETACHMENTS.

Diary :—

June 6th.—Received orders to move at once to Kroonstad, as De Wet is threatening the railway at Rhenoster River. Porter, with 500 men, left at 4 p.m., remainder followed at 7.30 p.m. in coal trucks. Cold night and rain.

June 7th.—Reached Kroonstad at 3.30 p.m.; heavy rain and hail. Detrained and moved into bivouac, north-west of the town. Heard on arrival that Christian De Wet had already cut the railway line, captured Roodeval and its garrison, as well as the Derbyshire Militia at Rhenoster. Reinforcements of the Buffs, and 4th Argyll and Sutherland Highlanders arrived a little later, but no guns or Cavalry. Got to the bivouac ground in the dark; no baggage and only one blanket apiece. Cutting wind and hard frost; sleep out of the question. Took up a strong outpost line, as there was a probability of being attacked; but, owing to the lateness of our arrival and ignorance of the country, it was quite a chance whether the outposts were in the right place. However, nothing happened, though we could see the reflection of the Boer signal lights in the sky all night.

June 8th.—Hard at work intrenching ourselves all day. General Charles Knox arrived and took over command. The kits came in the evening, and blanket shelters put up, but of little use, as they would not keep out the driving cold wind and frost. No. 17 Battery, R.F.A., and a few Yeomanry and Prince Albert's Guard joined us.

June 9th.—Very cold and freezing hard. At 4.15 a.m. paraded for a reconnaissance in force (viz.: the Battery, Yeomanry, half our Battalion, half the Buffs, and half Argyll and Sutherland Highlanders). Moved north, up the railway to America Siding. Enemy had left that morning, but our Basuto scouts tracked them on a kopje about three miles north. Returned to camp at 7 p.m. Day very hot.

June 10th.—At 5 a.m. 6 officers and 100 men (under command of Mockler) left by train, and went down the line to Ventersberg Road; reconnoitered the country round, and returned about 8 p.m.

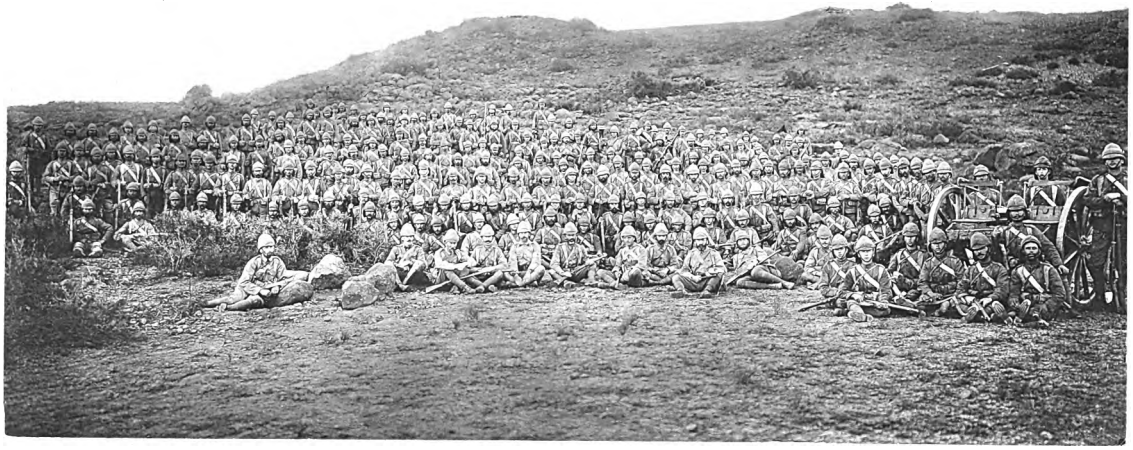
June 11th and 12th.—Busy intrenching the camp; made ourselves fairly secure, and have now got three 5-inch guns. No tents; days very hot, and hard frost at night.

June 13th.—At 11 p.m. orders came for headquarters and 500 men of the Regiment, with two guns of the Battery, to entrain at once for Ventersberg Road. The remainder of the Battery and some Yeomanry started by road. News had come in that the Boers were gathering

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google



[*Woodbury Gravure.*

1ST BATTALION, OXFORDSHIRE LIGHT INFANTRY.

AFTER THE CAPTURE OF BLOEMFONTEIN, 1900.

Digitized by Google

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY
ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS
R L

Digitized by Google

round Zand River—a post on the railway to the south of us—where there is a quantity of stores and ammunition.

June 14th.—Reached Ventersberg Road Station at 6.30 a.m. The stationmaster reported that a loud explosion had taken place at 6.15 a.m., and after that telegraphic communication with Zand River had ceased. We wired up for the remainder of the Battalion and some Mounted Infantry. About 7 a.m. we heard heavy firing in the direction of Zand River (about 13 miles). Set to work at intrenchments, and when the Yeomanry and the remainder of the Battery reached us, we moved on, leaving Mockler and a Company to hold the Station. The guns and Yeomanry went by road, we by rail, pushing on as fast as possible, as we could still hear heavy firing, and knowing that our Zand force had no guns, we fancied that the Boers would be giving them a bad time. Firing ceased suddenly at 3.30 p.m., and we imagined that it was all up with the Zand garrison. We pushed on to Riet Spruit, where there is a big bridge which the Boers had previously blown up, and which had been repaired. Here we detached the Battery and one Company (under Porter), and they set to work to intrench themselves, while the rest of us went on down the rail. We had to stop to examine every culvert, so progress was necessarily slow. At last we reached the break (1½ miles from Zand)—a culvert blown up and the telegraph wire cut. We sent some Yeomen into Zand with information that we were at hand if any help was wanted, but the answer came back that the garrison had repulsed the enemy with small loss to themselves. On hearing this we returned to Riet Spruit (about two miles), where we bivouacked for the night, six of our men and a sapper going back when it was dark and mending the break and laying new rails. About midnight Ballard and 50 men, escorting some sappers to mend the telegraph, marched into the bivouac from Ventersberg Road.

June 15th.—The C.O., Adjutant, and the Volunteer Company railed down to Zand River. The garrison had had a tremendous fight, but the officer in command had got wind of the coming attack, and had made his plans accordingly. His camp was on the top of a hill, but after dark he evacuated it, and took up a position lower down. The garrison dug hard all night, and in the morning had excellent cover. The consequence was that the Boers came along and blazed all they knew into the deserted camp, then walked unexpectedly up to the trenches, where they got more than they bargained for. The Zand people lost five killed and the same number wounded, took eight Boer prisoners, and picked up about a dozen corpses within ten yards of the trenches. Porter, with two Companies (Lamotte's and Watt's) and two guns, remained at Riet Spruit Siding, the remainder returned to Venters-

Digitized by Google

berg Road. [N.B.—Most maps reverse the positions of these two places: Ventersberg Road is six miles *north* of Riet Spruit].

June 16th.—Mockler and his Company and the Maxim gun were left at Ventersberg Road, and the rest of the Battalion went back by rail to Kroonstad, which was reached at 10 p.m. Bivouacked on new ground in pouring rain.

June 17th.—Got our tents and pitched camp, and we were fairly comfortable for some days, though the weather was wet and cold.

June 25th.—The Regiment went out to America Siding to escort back two guns of the 17th Battery. Out till 6 p.m.; nothing happened. The Regiment has had 30 deaths from disease up to date. After this we had comparative peace for about a month, though, as Christian De Wet was hovering about, we always had 400 men ready to turn out, and guards and picquets stood to their arms at 5 a.m. daily.

July 12th.—Our detachments came in from Riet and Ventersberg Road, where they had not a very happy time. Always in a state of intrenching and expecting attacks, which never came off.

July 26th.—Piet De Wet and his staff came in through our outpost line, and surrendered to Lathy (Volunteer Company), who was on picquet. Piet said that his brother, Christian, would not give in as long as his old friend Steyn held out, and that Kruger wanted to make peace directly our troops crossed the Vaal; but Steyn persuaded him that, as he had ruined the Orange Free State, it would be a mean thing to cave in directly the Transvaal was invaded.

Our original Brigade has been split up long ago. General Knox is here in command of the Station; General Kelly-Kenny is at Bloemfontein; the Buffs are at Pretoria, the Gloucesters at Bloemfontein Waterworks, and the West Ridings somewhere about Lindley or Winburg.

Rough estimate of regimental casualties up to date:—*Killed in action and died of wounds*, three officers and 31 men; *wounded*, three officers and 74 men; *died of disease*, 52 men; *invalided home*, six officers and 150 men. This does not include casualties in the Mounted Infantry Company.

OPERATIONS AGAINST DE WET.[1]

Diary:—

August 1st.—Got sudden orders to leave Kroonstad at 2.30 p.m. Rendezvous, on the other side of the line, near our old camp. General C. Knox in command. Troops: Oxfordshire Light Infantry, 600; Royal Scots Militia, 400; five guns and a "pom-pom," and 250 of

[1] *Vide* Map, page 90.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS
R L

Digitized by Google

Sitwell's Mounted Infantry. Marched due west, nine miles, and bivouacked near a spruit. No tents with us. Carried four days' rations. The officers who marched out with the Battalion were :—Lt.-Col. Dalzell; Major Mockler; Captains Lamotte, Childers, and Lathy; Lieutenants Scott, Ballard, Foljambe, Sullivan, Simpson, Ward, Hawkins, and Barron; Captain and Adjutant Cobb; Lieut. and Quartermaster Ross; Captain Rattray, R.A.M.C. Captain Watt and Lieut. Hammick remained in Kroonstad in charge of the Depôt of the Battalion; and Major Porter and Captain Lethbridge in hospital.

August 2nd.—Stood to arms at 5 a.m., and marched at 6.30 north-east towards Rhenoster Kop (a large wooded kopje, six or seven miles round the base, and 340 feet high—a favourite Boer stronghold). Sitwell found about a hundred Boers on the kopje, and drove them off towards Bothaville. Halted for a couple of hours near a farm, and then marched north, passing to the right of the kopje. Halted at Belmont. Day's march, 19 miles.

August 3rd.—Stood to arms at 5 a.m. (a standing order now); waited for news all the morning, and marched west at 2.30 p.m. Left the kopje on our left, and halted on top of a rise called Boschkopjes (seven miles). Laagered for the night in form of a square. As we got into camp in the dusk, heard Sitwell firing his guns on our right front. Hard frost all night; blankets stiff and white in the morning.

August 4th.—Marched north at 6 a.m. After about six miles, heard the Mounted Infantry engaged. About a mile further on, and when within a mile and a quarter of Rhenoster River, the Boers opened fire on us. Halted on the ridge overlooking the river, the Battery shelling the river bed, and driving out what Boers there were (fifty or sixty), who cleared out across the open plain. A sergeant of the Royal Scots was mortally wounded.

The troops formed up, had some food, and fell out until 3 p.m. Then crossed the drift, and advanced across the open towards a line of kopjes two or three miles on. Reached the top of the highest kopje (Rhebokfontein—wooded, rocky, and covered with sheep-pens) at 5.30 p.m., Mockler's Company remaining there on outpost duty for the night, while the remainder of the force bivouacked on the ground below. Day's march, 10 miles.

August 5th, Sunday.—Halt. Kitchener and Broadwood visited the camp. Any number of troops about here—after De Wet, who is said to be north of us, in the Wit kopjes.

August 6th.—Halt.

August 7th.—Received orders to move in early morning. Marched at 10.30 a.m., mostly over rough undulating ground. The Mounted

Digitized by Google

Infantry were fired on, just before reaching camp, from a kopje above a farm-house. Encamped at Doornhoek, on a rise near Kaffir Kraal, and intrenched ourselves, which took till nearly midnight. Opened up communications with Broadwood by lamp. Just as we got to camp, we heard a lot of firing in the direction of the hills, where we could see our Cavalry. They came across about 40 of the enemy, and were fired on at close quarters; one man wounded and two missing. Hard frost at night. Day's march, 12 miles. Heard afterwards that Scott-Murray and a draft of 100 men joined our depôt at Kroonstad to-day.

August 8th.—At 7 a.m. Cobb took 100 men to a farm about two miles away (from which we had been fired on yesterday) and burned it, bringing back a good stock of poultry. Marched at noon to the north, up-hill for four miles; then halted at a pass overlooking the Vaal for about two hours. The General got a despatch from Methuen. Moved on down hill, and then up to some low kopjes, where one or two shots were fired at the Mounted Infantry. Halted on the top of a rise looking down on Rietzburg (one or two farm houses in a big valley), four miles or so from the Vaal. Put on half rations, being short of supplies. Came out originally for four days, and have had only one convoy since leaving. Heard that Methuen had a fight in the morning, with 13 casualties (including six officers). A line of rocky kopjes runs from here to the Vaal. Night outposts. Day's march, eight miles.

August 9th.—Marched at 2 p.m., leaving Rietzburg on our right; then over open country, with range of kopjes on each side. Hit the Vaal River for the first time, after about five miles. Followed the bank for another six miles; camped opposite to Venterskroon (about a dozen houses). Hard frost at night. Day's march, 13½ miles.

August 10th.—Started east at 8.15 a.m., first along the river and then inland, between high hills. Met the Vaal River again at Rensburg Drift. Bivouacked half a mile from the river. Boers supposed to have crossed by this drift. Fine scenery along the river; high, rocky hills, and a good many trees. Day's march, seven miles.

August 11th.—Terrific wind and dust all the morning. Two or three veldt fires in camp, one nearly reaching our bivouac lines, after passing through the gunner lines and doing some damage to saddlery. At 2.30 suddenly ordered to march; crossed the drift (knee deep) and marched for about a mile into the Transvaal, then returned, fairly soaked, to our old bivouac at 5 p.m. Hard frost at night.

August 12th.—Halt at Rensburg Drift. Scouts out all day trying to discover whereabouts of Kitchener and Methuen, but without success.

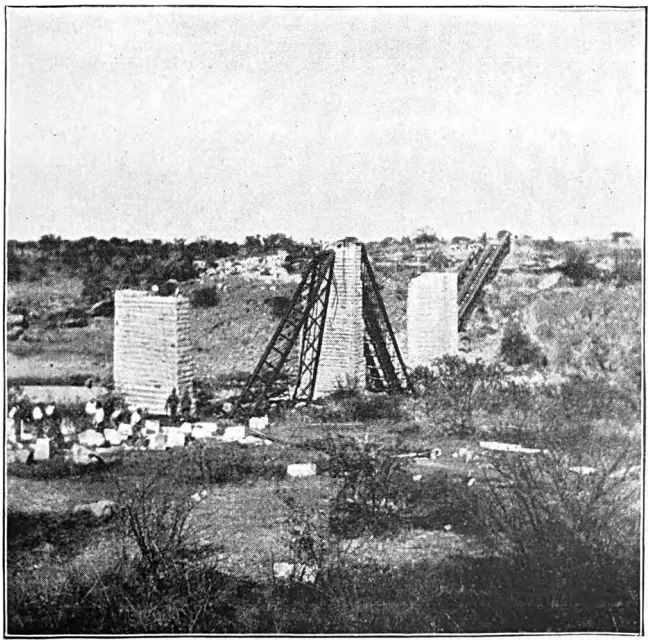
August 13th.—Marched at 1.30 p.m., south-east, to Vredefort (a small town with a few shops); got in 5 p.m.; seven miles. Bought up every-

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

THE VAAL, NEAR VENTERSKROON.



BRIDGE OVER VAAL RIVER.

Digitized by Google

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS
R L

Digitized by Google

thing in the town, though not much to be had. Orders from Lord Roberts to proceed to the drift at Scandinavia.

August 14th.—Moved at 7.30 a.m.; halted at Rietzburg for two hours in the middle of the day. Went on to Vlackfontein, which was reached at 6.30 p.m.; 14 miles.

August 15th.—Left at 7.30. a.m.; through open country; reached the Vaal River at Scandinavia (Forssman's Drift), at noon. About a hundred Boers came to the Kaffir kraal on the opposite side of the river, and inquired who we were. River here about 100 to 150 yards wide. Day's march, 10 miles.

August 16th.—Halted. Sharp night.

August 17th.—Halt. Heard that De Wet had trekked to Rustenberg.

August 18th.—Halt. Hammick, Ballard, and 100 men of the Regiment brought in a convoy from Kroonstad. On full rations again, though nothing but water to drink still.

August 19th.—Halt.

August 20th.—Marched at 7.15 a.m.; open country all the way; passed Doornhoek, and then approached the Rhenoster River. Crossed at Kerr's Drift. Got in at 3.30 p.m., after a 16 mile march. Ox convoy did not arrive until 7 p.m. Heard that mess cart of Royal Scots, returning from Kroonstad, was captured yesterday at Rhenoster Kop.

August 21st.—Marched at 7.15 a.m., as usual. Kept along the left bank of the river till we came to Honing's Spruit. Crossed, and encamped half a mile off, at Wet Kop. Day's march, 13½ miles.

August 22nd.—Marched at 7.15. a.m., for nine miles; crossed a dry drift, and then a mile on to camp (Gansvlei), arriving at 1.30 p.m. A Mounted Infantry patrol went to Rhenoster Kop and burned the farm near which the Royal Scots' cart had been captured.

August 23rd.—Marched at 6.30. a.m. After seven miles came to a lot of low kopjes and the Rhenoster River. Passed De Wet's burnt farm; marks of old encampments about; some shells picked up—probably the remains of Roberts' advance. Crossed the river, and 1½ miles further on struck the railway at Kopjes Station. Encamped on kopjes about a mile from the station. Day's march, 12 miles.

August 24th.—Halted. Made walls all round camp. Strong cold wind blowing all day. The General, Colonel, and Quartermaster went off to Kroonstad to get supplies, etc. Heard that Lethbridge and 100 men have gone to Holfontein. Severe frost at night.

August 25th.—A warm day, no wind. Halted.

August 26th.—Halted. The General and party returned from Kroonstad. "Coats, warm, British," served out, and very welcome.

Digitized by Google

August 27th.—Left at 12.30 p.m.; proceeded along the railway to some hills overlooking Vredefort Station. Got in about 4.30 p.m., after nine miles march. Dug shelter-trenches round the bivouac until 11.30 p.m. A lot of thunder and lightning in the evening, and a little rain. Heard that Bruce Hamilton had captured Olivier near Lindley. All farms along the line have been destroyed.

August 28th.—Marched at 6.30 a.m. Some Boers were reported to be at a farm on the road; the pom-pom went after them, but they cleared off. Crossed a spruit and encamped at 10.30 a.m. near a storehouse known as Shepstone's Farm. Day's march, 10 miles.

August 29th.—Heavy rain at 6 a.m., in spite of which we marched at 7.30, wearing greatcoats over everything. The coats, of course, did not meet in front, so were of little use. Rained in torrents the whole march. We had been intended to march to Vredefort Town, but as the convoy could not be brought out from Vredefort railway station on account of Boers being about, we had to march back to Vredefort Station. The going was very bad, both for men and animals, and we lost several mules —already weakened with continuous trekking. Halted at a kopje with English farm 1½ miles from the station at noon, after marching 13 miles. Rain cleared off a bit in the afternoon, but came on again at 6 p.m., and poured hard all night. We got no dinner. Watt and Higgins, with a convoy from Kroonstad, met us as we reached camp. They went out half-way to Shepstone's Farm, but then got orders to return.

August 30th.—Cleared up in the morning, and the sun came out, at which all the men cheered. Heavy shower at noon, after which we managed to dry our kits to a certain extent.

August 31st.—Cloudless morning, following a dewy night, which had made all our things wet again. Marched at 7 a.m. north-west; thought we were going towards Parys, but route altered at the last. March through open country, in places a perfect swamp. Ox transport could not get along, so halted on some high ground after going six or seven miles. Took a lot of cattle, carts, ponies, etc., from the farms. Barron went into Kroonstad to do duty with the depôt.

September 1st.—Halted.

September 2nd.—Marched at 7 a.m. After six miles passed a lot of farms and kraals, and drove in a good quantity of cattle. About four miles further on, struck the road by which we had formerly marched to Kopjes Station. Another two miles brought us to our destination (Gansvlei) at 2 p.m. De Wet reported to have been here last week, and now to have gone off to Winkle's Drift. Natives say he has no wagons, and only 200 men, but we believe nothing that we hear now.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

September 3rd.—Marched at 7 a.m. Crossed Rhenoster River at a mile from our bivouac; it was dry when we crossed here before, but now knee-deep. Took two or three hours to get all the transport across. Bivouacked at Kristal Kopje (Kitchener's camp when we were at Rhebokfontein). Heard seven explosions in the evening, which we learned later were caused by the blowing up of the line at Honing's Spruit. Day's march, five miles.

September 4th.—An empty convoy went off to Honing's Spruit to get supplies. Mockler went off on this job with 300 of our men, two guns, and 50 Cavalry. They had a fairly good march of 10 miles to the railway, looting some burnt farms of geese, fowls, and pigs on the way, and turning half-a-dozen Boers out of the river bed, though without bagging any of them. The remainder of us moved at 10 a.m. to Roodeval Vlei. Just after crossing the drift over the Honing's Spruit we came to a farm, where the men who had blown up the line the night before had slept. The farm was burned, and the woman and her family arrested. March, 5½ miles.

September 5th.—The men of the Regiment left in camp, with two guns, a pom-pom and Mounted Infantry, went out in the morning to clear Boers off Rhenoster Kop, but after marching all day saw none of the enemy.

September 6th.—Marched early and reached Driekopjes at 4.30 p.m., where we bivouacked. Found Mockler's convoy had arrived at 1.30 p.m., having marched from Honing's Spruit to our old camp yesterday, and on here, with General Knox and the rest of the column, by Lace Diamond Mine and Valsch River to-day.

September 7th.—Marched at 7 a.m.; reached Blesboklaagte at 11.30 a.m., after an eight mile march. The Mounted Infantry and the pom-pom went out at 9 p.m.

September 8th.—Marched at 7 a.m. Thought we were going south-west to Smalldeel, but on starting the direction was altered to north-east. The Boers hearing that we had gone west yesterday trekked north. Day's march, 15 miles. Bivouacked at Tweekuil.

September 9th. Parade postponed until 7.30. a.m., then moved to ground near dam, and bivouacked for the day. Started for a night march at 6.45 p.m., by road all the way; halted, after doing 12 miles, at 11.30 p.m., and bivouacked near a farm. Three Boer prisoners were caught yesterday with valuable information regarding De Wet; one was carrying despatches to the Boer Commandant at Bothaville, telling him to be at Paardekraal on the 12th.

September 10th.—Off at 3.30 a.m. in the dark, and marched to surprise Rhenoster Kop. Reached the kopje at daybreak, and marched all

Digitized by Google

over it without seeing a sign of a Boer (though plenty of game was put up). Moved on to a bivouac near Belmont, and halted at 10 a.m. Started again at 1 p.m. for Honing's Spruit, and arrived at 5.45 p.m., blowing up two farms on the way, and having completed 31 miles in the 23 hours.

September 11th.—As we were within the picquet lines of the Honing's Spruit Garrison, we did not stand to arms at 5.0 a.m., the first time for six weeks. Marched at 8 a.m., crossed the line, and then on to Boschpoort (nine miles); bivouacked near a dam. Watt went into Kroonstad sick.

September 12th.—Started on a night march last night at 11 p.m., the idea being to surprise Paardekraal, about ten miles away. The convoy was left behind with a guard to come on afterwards. Halted every hour for ten minutes. We were to have marched till daylight, and consequently carried no coats or blankets. At 2.30 a.m., however, the force was found to be only a mile or two from Paardekraal, so was formed up and bivouacked in strict silence, and a good deal of shivering until 5.30 a.m. The Regiment then led the way to the farm, which was empty, except for one of our Mounted Infantry, who told us that the rest of the Mounted Infantry had passed at 4 a.m. There was nothing further to be done, so we halted, and our transport came up in the afternoon. The Boers had left the place yesterday.

September 13th.—Marched at 5 a.m. towards Kroonstad. Halted at Hout Kop at 10.30 a.m. after 15 miles.

September 14th.—Halt.

September 15th.—Marched at 4 p.m. four or five miles nearer to Kroonstad, and halted for the night at Welgevenden.

September 16th.—Marched at 5 a.m. to Kroonstad. Crossed the drift, and halted half a mile from the river. Went into our Depôt camp in the afternoon to get kit, etc. Been out 47 days, instead of the original four days. Distance marched, roughly, 350 miles.

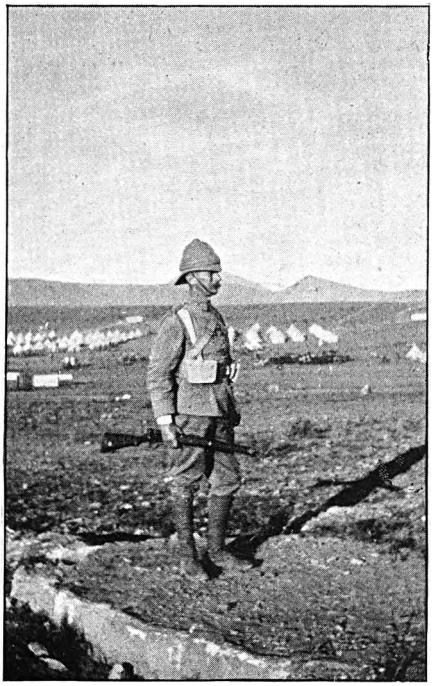
September 17th.—Off again on another job at 5 a.m. Marched along the Senekal road (14 miles), and bivouacked at 10.30 a.m., at Ranjeslaagte, on the Bloem Spruit. The Cavalry of the 3rd Brigade, and four R.H.A. guns, now forming part of our force, preceded us over-night, and moved on ahead again as we arrived at our bivouac News was brought in later that the Cavalry had located the Boers on Klompje Doorns, and that an officer of the 16th Lancers had been shot in the arm from a farm-house.

September 18th.—Marched at 5 a.m. Heard on the march that a laager had been sighted by the Cavalry, and after we had gone about eight miles the R.H.A. and our battery opened fire. The Royal Scots moved

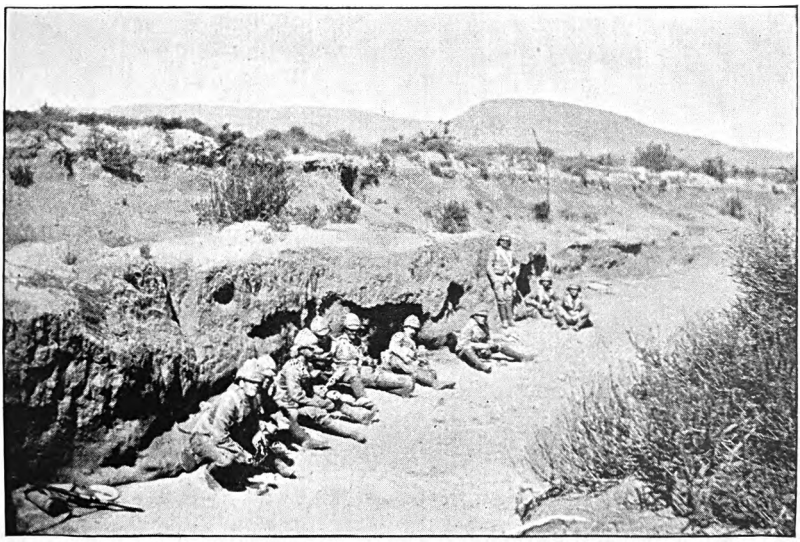
Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google



MAJOR R. W. PORTER.



PIQUET AT DINNER.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

round the right flank, and fired a few rounds at some retreating Boers, while we moved round the left flank, but saw only a few Boers in the far distance. The laager had cleared off in the early morning. Our advanced Cavalry, we heard, nearly came to grief; a party of Boers *dressed in khaki* beckoned to them, and then opened fire, but made away as soon as they saw the Infantry advancing. The casualties were two men of the 16th Lancers killed, five Cavalry men and one gunner wounded. Two dead Boers were found. We halted from 11 a.m. till 2 p.m., then bivouacked for dinner, and moved in the evening on to higher ground (Blaauwboschbank) for the night. There are now seven columns advancing from the south, and the object of our force is to prevent the enemy breaking north.

September 19th and 20th.—Halt.

September 21st.—Marched at 5 a.m., and reached Kroonstad at 5 p.m., having marched the whole 25 miles straight off, in order to get a day's rest in tents at our Standing Camp.

September 22nd.—Had an easy morning; did not stand to arms.

September 23rd.—Away again at 5 a.m. on the Heilbron road (by which we had returned from Paardekraal). Were to have gone this trek to Bothaville, but the route was changed last night. Halted on our old ground at Hout Kop (15 miles).

September 24th.—Moved at 5 a.m. to Paardekraal, 15 miles.

September 25th.—Mockler sent into Kroonstad hospital with fever and ague. Marched at 5 a.m. to Paardekraal North. Came across De Lisle's force at the drift over Rhenoster at Vaalkrans; 14 miles.

September 26th.—Heard guns to the north. General Knox rode on to join the 3rd Cavalry Brigade, who were engaging the enemy near Heilbron. Our C.O. assumed command of the Column, and we moved on to Leeuwfontein, on the Heilbron road, 5 miles.

September 27th.—Moved at 5 a.m. due west to Uitkijk, where we met Dalgety's Colonials. 15 miles.

September 28th—October 1st.—Halted at Uitkijk.

October 2nd.—Marched at 6 a.m. to Hartebeestefontein, 15 miles.

October 3rd.—Marched into Heilbron and bivouacked on the south side of the town, re-opening the railway, which had been closed for seven months. Childers (with H Company), Lathy (with I Company), and Barron and Sullivan went off at 3.30 p.m. by armoured train on detachment to Gottenberg, a bridge on the Heilbron—Wolvehoek line (about 17 miles from Heilbron). A few miles from Gottenberg, the train was attacked by a party of Boers who, however, soon dispersed when our men opened fire.

Digitized by Google

A correspondent writes to the *Times* as follows:—

Heilbron, O.R.C., Oct. 15.

As the result of there being no press-men in the Orange River Colony, where all the real fighting has been and is going on (the Free Staters being the men who have made the stand throughout), the doings of the troops south of the Vaal have been but little chronicled. The public have thus been left in the dark regarding the movements of the different Columns operating against the now notorious De Wet and the many marauding bodies and commandos of Boers still at large. As I think it will interest very many of our friends at home, I send you an account of the last "trek" of Major-General Knox's Column which left Kroonstad on the first of August and "fetched up" at Heilbron on the 3rd of October, after having marched over 500 miles, part of the time on half rations, and covered nearly every yard of country lying between Bothaville and Heilbron, west and east, and between the Vaal River and Ventersburg, north and south. The Column was engaged in rounding-up cattle, burning farms, searching for arms, and generally clearing the country, besides pursuing De Wet's and other commandos. Owing to the extraordinary "slimness" and mobility of the enemy the course of the Column was necessarily very tortuous. We were constantly on the heels of the enemy or endeavouring to effect a surprise. The passage of the Rhenoster River on August 4, which was strongly opposed by De Wet's rearguard, being the point where the greatest resistance was encountered. With the exception of 100 Yeomanry (77th Company), the Column was destitute of mounted men, the force being composed of 17th Battery R.F.A. (Major Johnson), 1st Oxfordshire Light Infantry (Lieutenant-Colonel Hon. A. E. Dalzell), 3rd Royal Scots (Colonel Grant), and a section of Royal Engineers (Captain Barrington). It is wonderful the mobility this force exhibited, and how frequently it came in touch with the enemy, though it was never able to crush the Boer commandos, owing to its composition being entirely of Infantry and Artillery.

Major-General Charles Knox, who must not be confounded with W. G. Knox, now at Kroonstad, undoubtedly deserves great credit for the manner in which he carried out his arduous task. It must be admitted, however, that the officers and men under him would have preferred to see him use more drastic measures with the enemy, and ruthlessly destroy all farms harbouring rebels, rather than allow his kind heart to be imposed upon by weeping women left behind for the purpose. The fact is, that in this country mounted men are an absolute necessity. Our Cavalry and Mounted Infantry have disappointed us. The first are

Digitized by Google

G. Philip & Son London & Liverpool

Digitized by Google

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY
ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS
R L

Digitized by Google

still armed with lance, sword, and carbine, the two former weapons being relics of the Middle Ages, and the latter useless against the Mauser Rifle. In our action of Blauwbosch Bank, on September 18th, the 16th Lancers, who had joined us for a short time, left their cumbrous spears on the veldt until the affair was over, and then went back to fetch them. During all this period it must be remembered that the troops have had nothing to eat but "trek-ox"—no one knows the oak-like character of the ox that daily treks who has not sampled him—and ration biscuit, with an occasional pig, goose, or hen commandeered *en route;* that they lay every night in the open, and were exposed all day to the ever-varying whims of the South African climate. Here, at Heilbron, there is comparative rest. We have had our tents sent up, and as a big supply depôt is being formed here, we are not likely to starve. When we marched into the place the Boers had just marched out, and we found everything in a state of siege. The shops were closed and empty, the post-office and other public institutions wrecked, the railway a bare line with no rolling stock, and everything chaotic. Now we have a train in every day heavily laden with supplies, the shops are open, the Dutch conventicle taken over for Church of England services, the offices reorganised, and things generally put straight. Heilbron is quite a small town, but is cleaner and better built than most South African places, and the water supply is excellent. In ransacking the railway station soon after we marched in, I found a large number of invoices for the despatch of arms and ammunition, showing how fully prepared the Boers were. Their dates were in September and October of last year. We have now got this place into a good state of defence, and strongly intrenched. On October 13th we got news that a large commando had collected between this and Frankfort, and the General despatched 400 Oxfordshires with two guns at 3 a.m. to attack them and co-operate with Colonel Le Gallais, who was moving from the Frankfort side. At 7 a.m. we saw the Boers retreating towards us before Le Gallais, but unfortunately, they all turned off, riding on the spur, four miles from our position, and we only bagged five odd ones. Yesterday a few of them rounded up 70 oxen belonging to the Royal Scots while the canny ones were in kirk. The Boers are very hard up for food, and would "round up" anything now, even Oom Paul himself! As for ourselves, we are a collection of "prehistoric peeps," and I shall hardly know a decent meal or bed when I see one.

HEILBRON AND DETACHMENTS.

From October until the end of the year the headquarters of the Regiment were at Heilbron, with four

Digitized by Google

Companies out on detachment in the neighbourhood, guarding the railway line. Nothing of great importance took place during this period, though the Headquarter Companies were constantly called upon to make sudden marches to endeavour to cut off small parties of Boers, and destroy farms that harboured the enemy, and the isolated detachments were occasionally attacked, and were frequently threatened.

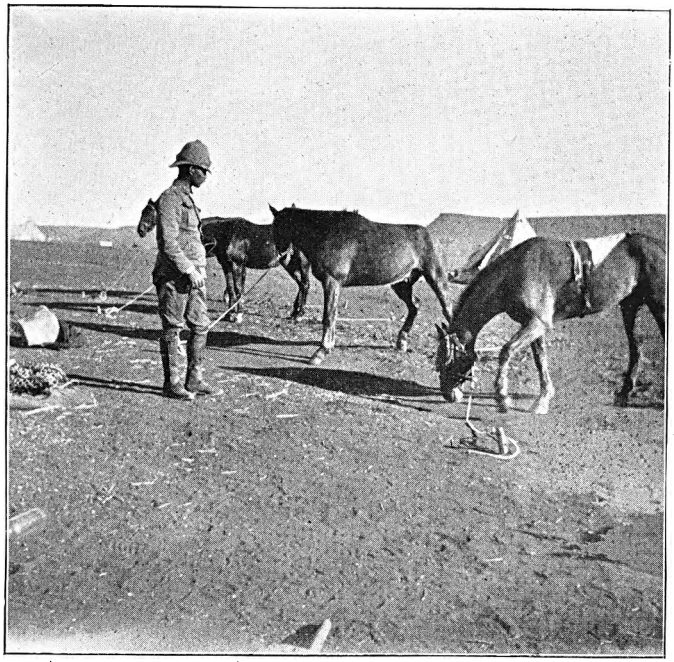
Extract of a letter from Major R. W. Porter, dated Heilbron, 5th November, 1900:—

We are anchored down here for a bit, I fancy, and not sorry that the trekking after De Wet is over, as far as we are concerned. We are left here with a 5-inch gun, two field guns, 40 or 50 Yeomen, and ourselves, as a garrison for this town, Roberts having promised the inhabitants that it shall not be again evacuated. Colonel Dalzell is in command of the Station; Cobb, Station Staff Officer; and myself, Provost Marshal. The Regiment is well up to strength again, since the draft of 140 men joined us on the 22nd October, and we can turn out 820 men, including all the detachments. Lamotte and 60 men are at a bridge four miles from here; Childers, with his Company and part of the Volunteer Company, at Gottenberg (half-way to Wolvehoek), and the other half of the Volunteer Company is at two small posts close by. I was out a fortnight ago with 200 men and a "pom-pom" for four days, trying to locate a laager about 15 or 16 miles from here. I found it all right, and there was to have been an attack on it in combination with another force from this place; but at the last moment the plans were altered, as we were wanted to go off to Vredefort Road, so I had to march straight back to Heilbron. It was a pity, as we might have got a few. The Boers tried to see me home to camp the day I spotted their laager; and when I was about four miles on my way back, about a hundred of them came after me and opened fire on my Yeomen, who were doing rear-guard. But the moment I said "pom-pom" to them, they bolted for their horses and were off to a man, and I saw no more of them. There are lots of them in small parties all round us—tens, twenties, and so on—but I don't believe they mean business at all; they are just waiting about till the job is over, so as to avoid being sent away. They have a shot or two at long ranges at our picquets now and then, but nothing else. We are very nearly cut off from the world here, as we only get two

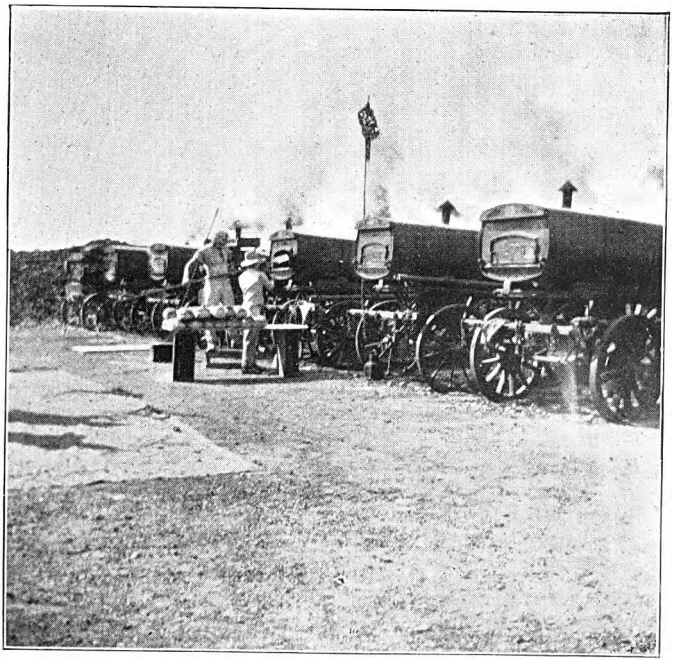
Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google



THE ADJUTANT AND OFFICERS' CHARGERS.



FIELD BAKERY.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

trains a-week with supplies, consequently we hear little or no news. Fanshawe and his lot got a couple of guns and a few prisoners off De Wet last week. He (Fanshawe) is making a great name for himself, and I hope he will get something out of it. Hamilton is quite fit again now, but had a near shave, I believe, as he was hit on the side of the head by a splinter of a shell.

Diary :—

November 5th.—Moved at 10 a.m. with 200 men of the Regiment, 2 guns, and 20 Yeomen. Visited Hartebeestefontein, burned the house (good substitute for fifth of November bonfire !), and took the family back to the town. Then proceeded to Brakfontein farm, which had been already burned by a former Column, but which had been re-roofed and occupied by several families. We took all the women and children back to Heilbron.

November 6th.—Sent out a wagon at 7 a.m. this morning, with an escort of 12 men, under Sergeant Bibby and 6 Yeomen, for the purpose of destroying the roof of Brakfontein farm, and bringing away the iron work. About noon heard firing in that direction, and 20 Yeomen, 100 Infantry, and 2 guns went out, and took up a position on a ridge above the farm. Found the wagon in the low ground, and the escort taking cover in a spruit. Located enemy in a kraal, about 3,000 yards away. Shelled them, and the rocky ridge above the farm. Enemy cleared off, and we brought the wagon in. The escort had been attacked soon after leaving the farm on the return journey, and, being surrounded, took cover in the spruit. The Boers kept up a continuous fire, but only killed one mule and wounded four (of which three had to be destroyed). When first attacked, one of the Yeomanry galloped back to give the alarm to camp, but his horse was killed before he had gone 70 yards.

November 7th.—Hammick's outpost on Kraal Hill heavily fired on at 5 p.m.

November 9th.—Foljambe went out with a party of our men and some Yeomen to destroy farms at Skeit Kraal and Damplaats, both of which were the resort of Boer sniping parties. The enemy kept up a brisk fire from a distance during the operations.

November 12th.—Burned two farms—Luyts and Badenhorst. Drove in a quantity of stock. A good deal of resistance from Boers, who had to be shelled out of their positions.

November 13th.—Wagon sent to Luyts Farm to fetch in wood, etc., attacked by a party of Boers. Simpson took a party out and drove the enemy off. No casualties.

November 26th.—The Holfontein detachment (Watt and Hawkins) came in. Fuller rejoined from sick leave in England.

Digitized by Google

Writing on the 7th December, an officer of the Regiment says:—

One day last week, one of our small posts, five miles from Gottenburg, got into a mess. Four men went out from camp to collect fuel, and apparently strayed too far, being suddenly surrounded and fired on, with the result that one man was killed and the other three were taken prisoners. The subaltern at the next post, hearing of it, went off, with 15 men, to the rescue, but met with a warm reception, having four men wounded and four missing. The Boers sent back one of our men to have the wounded taken away, which was done—one poor chap was hit in three places. Two days later the three prisoners turned up, having been released; but we have not heard anything of the four missing men.[1] Mockler has relieved Childers at Gottenburg.

Diary:—

December 8th.—The sentry at Leeuwpoort bridge was fired on at about 11 p.m., and had a narrow shave, one of the three shots they had at him passing through the skirt of his jacket.

December 12th.—A small mixed force went out at Leeuwpoort and Steyn's Halt to try and round up some Boers. Saw about 20 of them in the far distance and shelled them. Killed one and wounded another. Drove in about 800 head of cattle, horses, and sheep.

December 18th.—Two armed Boers came in and surrendered. Both had Lee-Metfords, bandoliers, and ammunition. One rifle belonged to the Lancashire Fusiliers, the other to the Royal Scots Fusiliers. Some refugee women also came in.

December 19th.—Tried to come the "slim" over the Boers, by hiding some men in farms which the enemy were known to frequent. They were too cunning to be caught, however, and they gave our Yeomen a bad time. Eventually Lathy and 50 men went out to cover the retirement, and the guns did a bit of shelling. Hot day and rain all night.

Our last letter of the year is dated Heilbron, 31st December, 1900, and the following is an extract:—

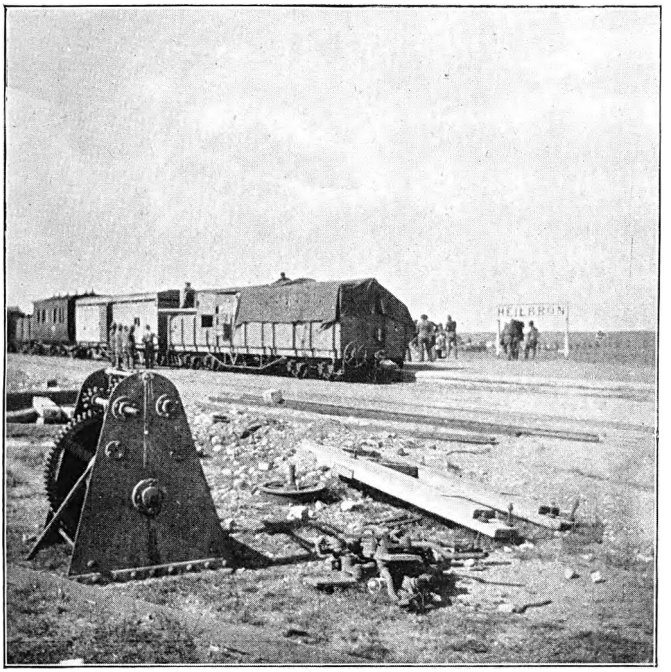
Not a very merry Christmas, perhaps, but merry enough under the circumstances. Since my last there has not been much excitement; a few farms have been destroyed round about; a few Boers have surrendered, and a certain number of Boer families have come in or been

[1] They eventually came in to Frankfort, 30 miles from Heilbron.

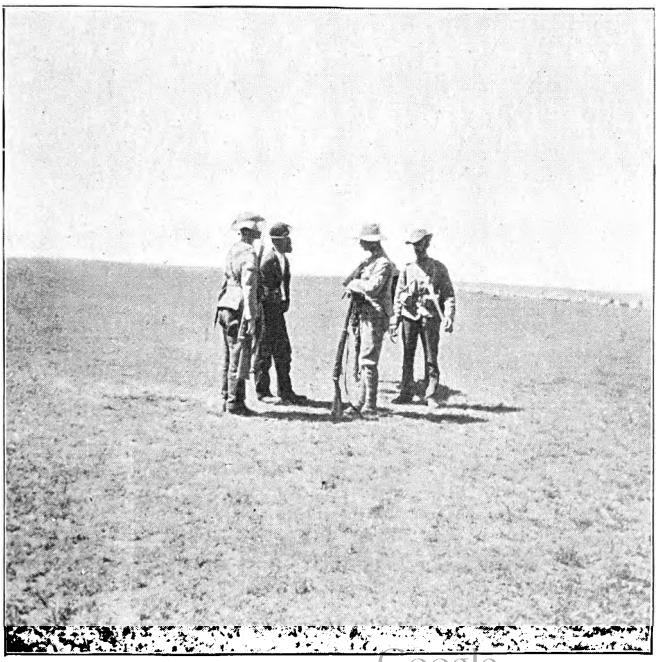
Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google



THE STATION FOR HEILBRON.



BOER SURRENDERING TO MAJOR PORTER.

Digitized by Google

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS
R L

Digitized by Google

brought in. Attempts have also been made to induce troublesome parties in the neighbourhood to give themselves up. The latest proclamations have been freely distributed among the burghers, but they all seem to be a bit shy. However, I suppose they will get sick of it in time. We had our sports on the 27th—quite a good show, and we have started a real live weekly newspaper, called the *Pom-pom*, which will probably have the largest circulation in—Heilbron.

Digitized by Google

THE MOUNTED INFANTRY FIGHT AT BOTHAVILLE,

NOVEMBER 5TH, 1900.

THE Mounted Infantry Company of the Regiment took part in the brilliant affair at Bothaville on the 5th November, but owing to Captain G. N. Colvile having been severely wounded, we have been unable to obtain from him any details of the engagement. The following accounts are taken from the *Times* :—

Official Despatch from Lord Roberts. Telegram dated Johannesburg, November 8th.

Colonel Le Gallais surprised the Boer forces on night of 5th inst. three miles south of Bothaville. He was heavily engaged for five hours, the enemy's strength about 1,000. Charles Knox followed Le Gallais with De Lisle's Mounted Infantry and completely defeated the enemy.

We captured one 12-pounder of "Q" Battery, one 15-pounder 14th Battery, four Krupp guns, one "pom-pom," and one Maxim, with all their ammunition and wagons, and 100 prisoners. Twenty-five Boers were left dead on the field and 30 wounded.

Steyn and De Wet were with this force, and left in great haste.

The enemy were pursued for some miles in a south-easterly direction, when they broke up in small parties.

Our casualties were :—

Killed.—Le Gallais, 8th Hussars; Captain F. Engelbach, of the Buffs; Lieut. W. A. Williams, South Wales Borderers; and eight men. Wounded.—Seven officers and 26 men.

I deeply regret the death of these three officers, all most promising. Le Gallais is, indeed, a very serious loss, a most gallant and capable cavalry leader.

The officers wounded are—Lieut.-Colonel W. C. Ross, Durham Light Infantry, neck and face, dangerously, but doing well; Captain Colvile, Oxfordshire Light Infantry, side, severe; Lieut. D. Percy-Smith, Middlesex Regiment, slight; Lieut. A. S. Peebles, Suffolk Regiment, seriously; Captain O. Harris, West Riding Regiment, slight;

Digitized by Google

Captain G. T. Mair, R.H.A., severe; and Major N. Welch, Hampshire Regiment, severe.

The fighting must at one time have been at close quarters. "U" Battery, R.H.A., under Major P. B. Taylor, was in action at a range of 400 yards.

Amongst the wounded prisoners is De Villiers, Steyn's secretary, and amongst the dead the Boer doctor with Red Cross on his arm, rifle in hand, and bandolier half emptied.

THE ACTION AT BOTHAVILLE.

Kroonstad, Nov. 18th.

On the last day of October it became known that De Wet was somewhere in the neighbourhood. Immediately Major-General Charles Knox despatched three columns from different points, all converging towards Rhebokfontein, where De Wet was reported to be encamped, some 50 miles almost due east of Rhenoster Station. Le Gallais's force started from Honing's Spruit. De Lisle, with the colonial division, marched from Kopjes, the first station north of Rhenoster, but the colonials, after marching some miles with the column, diverged off towards the north, so as to make a wider turning movement and cut off De Wet should he attempt to retreat to the Vaal. Le Gallais, by marching all the night of the 2nd inst., in pouring rain and over heavy country, was the first to approach the Boer general's hiding-place. By daylight he was in a position ready to attack, but the bird had flown, and all that was left of De Wet was the litter of his camp. Le Gallais decided to follow his tracks. The whole concerted movement thus became abortive, and General Knox, fearing that De Wet was moving to the valley north of Reitzburg, where his wife is said to be living, despatched the colonial division to the Vaal. He himself, with De Lisle, followed Le Gallais a day's march to the rear.

Meanwhile Le Gallais continued the chase hot-foot. De Wet's tracks led to Klip Drift, south west, on towards Bothaville. At midday on the 8th the pursuing force reached Doornbult, while Knox remained at Grootkorn, ten miles off. Le Gallais's force proceeded to camp, but he himself, with 200 men and two guns of "U" Battery, moved forward to reconnoitre Bothaville. On nearing the town, now a heap of ruins, he was saluted by two guns placed on a couple of kopjes north of the town and commanding it. The river, crossed by a good drift, ran between. Le Gallais engaged the enemy for two hours, when night put an end to the fighting. Our losses were five men wounded. We remained on the ground, and Le Gallais sent back orders for his baggage

Digitized by Google

wagons to inspan immediately, and follow with the rest of the force. They arrived at 10 p.m., and immediately the baggage was parked in the deserted square of Bothaville, while the 5th and 8th Mounted Infantry were pressed over the drift towards the kopjes lately held by De Wet. These were found to be unoccupied, and were strongly picqueted that night.

At 4.30 a.m. on the morning of the 6th, Le Gallais's little force moved off in his indefatigable chase after De Wet. The 5th Mounted Infantry led the column, followed by the 8th Corps, under Colonel Ross. The 5th, 17th, and 18th Companies of the Imperial Yeomanry acted as escort to the three guns of "U" Battery, while the 7th Mounted Infantry, under Major Welch, and one gun of "U" Battery remained behind to protect the crossing of the baggage.

The country to our front was open and undulating, and there were no kopjes to afford a hiding-place to the enemy. The 5th Mounted Infantry, under Major Lean, moved rapidly forward, taking every precaution against accidents. Suddenly they came upon a small picquet of the enemy lying fast asleep. Around them their horses, firmly knee-haltered, were peacefully grazing. In a moment they were awakened, and, after rubbing their eyes, found themselves prisoners. Major Lean and his little force rode straight forward towards the next rise. The enemy's laager lay within 300 yards of him, and beneath him guns, wagons, and horses, all contained in a small space of a few hundred yards square. Immediately despatching a messenger with the news, Major Lean dismounted his men and fired volley after volley into the thick of them. Then arose such a panic as perhaps the Boers had never before experienced. Steyn and De Wet fled incontinently in a Cape cart. Those burghers who had horses at hand leaped on their backs and galloped away, leaving everything—guns, ammunition, and wagons. Only those who could not get their horses remained and fought with the courage of despairing men.

In order to understand the fighting that followed, it is necessary to give a rough description of the ground. Lean's men held the top of a rise, which sloped gently towards the Boer laager. Close to the top stood a farmhouse, with a stone wall extending towards the right. Beyond that, again, was another stone enclosure, while on our extreme left was a Kaffir kraal. The Boer position was stronger. About 250 yards from where Lean fired his first volley there was an enclosure of about 100 yards square, with strong thick stone walls of about 6 feet high. On the right corner of this (from the Boer point of view) was a dam with steep banks facing us. The laager was unprotected on the left. On the left rear of the Boers was another dam, while on the right rear of the stone enclosure, and about half-way up another slope, stood a

Digitized by Google

white house. Immediately the fighting commenced the Boers clambered into the enclosure, and held it stubbornly, as well as a stone wall that projected some way to the left. They also manned the banks of both dams, and occupied the white house. There was a small pig-sty situated only 20 yards from our position. Two men remained in it, and caused us considerable annoyance. Once under the different sorts of cover the Boers opened a heavy, well-sustained fire.

Up to the present we only had 60 men, which was all that Lean had with him. The Boers numbered fully 200, but the unequal fight was kept up with vigour by our men. At this stage of the fight our front was formed as follows: On our left front, where the 8th Mounted Infantry had taken up a position in echelon, stood a Kaffir kraal, where lay 14 men of the Oxford Light Infantry (Mounted Infantry), under Captain Maurice, Le Gallais's galloper, who took command when Captain Colvile was hit. In the centre ten men of the Oxford Light Infantry (Mounted Infantry), held the farmhouse; while 20 Buffs and the Royal Irish Mounted Infantry, under Captain Englebach, who was killed, held a piece of the wall on the right of the farmhouse. Further to the right 20 of the Worcester Mounted Infantry, under Captain Holland, had secured and held a bit of good ground. Later on 20 men of the Royal Irish, under Captain Brush, held a similar position on our extreme right front. Le Gallais and Ross, hearing the firing, galloped forward to see how things were going. They reached the farmhouse, and, leaving their horses outside, entered the building, whence a good view of the position could be obtained. Le Gallais perceived that about 800 Boers, who had fled at the first volley, had formed up and were working round both our flanks. Le Gallais thereupon ordered Major Hickie, his staff officer, to ride back to the heliograph, and order Major Welch, who was in charge of the baggage escort, to park his baggage between the two kopjes, and send every man available to the left flank. This order was promptly obeyed; the Cape-cart drivers—mostly men who had lost their horses—outspanned and held the kopjes, while Major Welch took the rest of the 7th Mounted Infantry up towards our left wing. At the same time the 17th and 18th Companies of the Imperial Yeomanry were ordered to move to the right flank. This relieved the situation somewhat, but still it was a difficult position, requiring great coolness and courage to face it.

Major Hickie rode back to the farmhouse, and was greeted by a hail of bullets, five of which hit his horse, and killed it. He, however, was luckily unhurt, and immediately entered the house. It was a terrible sight that met his eyes. The gallant Le Gallais lay mortally wounded. Ross, in another room, was stretched on the floor, with his jaw and a

Digitized by Google 414142 A

portion of his throat shot away. Captain Williams lay dead, and Lieut. Percy-Smith, of the Middlesex Regiment, wounded, together with four men. Outside the house 14 dead horses testified to the terrible nature of the Boer fire. It had become a perfect charnel-house, for it was a splendid mark for the Boers. The front window, which overlooked the Boer position, was an inferno of whistling, shrieking bullets, spattering the walls and breaking the woodwork and glass. Ross, it appeared, had gone straight to this window to see what was the position of affairs. The door of the room was exactly opposite the window, and unfortunately it had been left open, so that the enemy could see right through the house. When Ross was hit four men picked him up and carried him out, showing up clear against the light of the back doorway. The enemy, although they saw that it was only a wounded man being carried away, opened a terrible fire. But the brave four never flinched, and continued to carry their beloved commander down the passage, when suddenly Le Gallais appeared from another room to see what was the matter, and was immediately hit. The bullet entered his left breast, traversed his body, and came out on his left side. He sank to the ground with a groan, and was quickly put under cover. He was conscious all the time, and never seemed to think about his wound, but kept asking questions about the progress of the fight.

For five hours these gallant men, forming our front, held their ground against an overwhelming fire. Man after man was shot, killed, or wounded, but the others continued firing calmly and steadily. The wounded men in several cases filled the magazines for their comrades still fighting, and handed up the full rifles to them. It wanted courage of a very high order to hold the position. Not only were 200 Boers firing with terrible rapidity at short ranges, but 800 were threatening to cut them off. But the men, with bulldog tenacity, would not yield, and never flinched. As one of the men said afterwards:—"We could see their guns, and we wasn't going to lose them." And so the fight went on in front—the courage of despair on one side, and on the other that dogged, bulldog courage which has brought us out of so many a difficulty.

On our right flank the Boers had made an attempt to get in, but the two companies of Yeomanry, under Captain Coates and Lieut. Bolton, faced them steadily, and drove them off in some confusion.

The arrival of Major Welch with the 7th Mounted Infantry and the Durhams was most welcome. Gradually they drove the Boers back until they got opposite the Boer laager, and were in a position to enfilade them. Quickly a pom-pom was unlimbered, and shell after

Digitized by Google

shell was accurately placed along the sides of the dam and the walls held by the enemy. It was a timely arrival, which considerably relieved our front, and showed the Boers the hopelessness of their position. The two companies of Yeomanry also pushed forward on our right, and soon we held three sides of a square, in the middle of which was the Boer laager.

And now De Lisle and his men were up, and were clearing our front flanks rapidly. At a little after 9 the Boers were surrounded. But their cover was excellent, and they kept firing at everything they could see. But our men were in the highest spirits, and shot coolly and steadily, joking with each other as they fired. Gradually it became apparent to the Boers that their position was absolutely untenable, and at last at half-past 10 the white flag was hoisted, and all round the encircling force there rang out a cheer of triumph. But our men would not leave their cover. "Lay down your arms and come out," they shouted, and immediately the walls became black with clambering Boers, who sullenly walked up to our men. The result of the day's work was seven guns—one 15-pounder belonging to the 14th Battery, captured at Colenso, one 12-pounder belonging to "Q" Battery, taken at Sanna's Post, three Krupp 75mm., one pom-pom, one 37mm. quick-firer—13 wagons, containing immense quantities of gun and small arm ammunition, and a large amount of black powder and dynamite, besides all the Boer supplies. But the victory was dearly purchased. Le Gallais lay dead, mourned sincerely by his men. His dash had won the victory, and everybody felt that it was bitter that he should not have lived to enjoy its fruits. If anything can console a mother for the loss of such a gallant son, it is the last words he uttered feebly to his staff officer, Major Hickie, "If I die tell my mother that I died happy, as we got the guns."

It is not, luckily, an uncommon thing to chronicle the gallantry of the Medical Corps. Captain Surgeon Naismith behaved throughout the whole day with the utmost coolness. He tended the wounded wherever he found them, regardless of bullets, and apparently unconscious of them. Captain Newmarsh, an Australian doctor, volunteered to stay with the wounded at the farmhouse. The Boers behaved very kindly, and put a sentry on the house with orders to allow no one to approach. When he left, Captain Newmarsh presented them with some provisions in return for their kindness. Ross is now in hospital here, and is going on very well.

Digitized by Google

THE MOUNTED INFANTRY COMPANY.

FROM ALDERSHOT TO PRETORIA.

By C. E. Forrest.

The Regiment mobilised on December 4th, 1899, at Aldershot.

The mobilisation was half completed when an order was issued to the effect that each Regiment of the 6th Division would find a Mounted Infantry Company. This Company was to consist of one Captain, three Subalterns, and 140 rank and file.

G Company was chosen to form the nucleus of our Mounted Infantry Company, those men who did not wish to become Mounted Infantrymen being transferred to other Companies. The men of the Regiment who already possessed Mounted Infantry certificates, were then transferred to G Company. The total was reached by means of Volunteers from other Companies. The officers were Captain G. N. Colvile, Lieut. C. E. Forrest, and 2nd Lieut. R. R. M. Brooke.

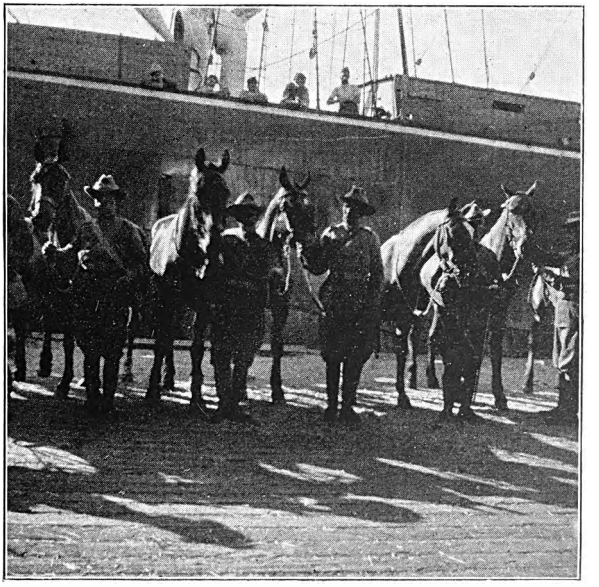
The Regiment sailed for South Africa on board the *Gaika* on December 23rd, the Mounted Infantry Companies of the 6th Division being left behind to follow when they had received their horses. A lot of hard work had to be got through before orders to sail were received; saddles, nosebags, hay-nets, horse-shoes, wire-cutters, sandbags, a field forge, and innumerable straps, were a few among the many different articles to be drawn in addition to the usual tents, blankets, etc.; then "stables" at 7 a.m. till 8 a.m., again from 9. 30 a.m. to 12, and 5 p.m. to 5.30. p.m.; and lastly, parades and inspections for the General.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

FUNERAL OF A HORSE.



THE M.I. COMPANY DISEMBARKING.

Digitized by Google

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS

Digitized by Google

Major Evelegh was in command of the Mounted Infantry of the 13th Brigade and remained so till our arrival at Maitland Camp, South Africa.

Three weeks after the Regiment had sailed, orders were received for the Mounted Infantry to embark on the *Pindari* at the Albert Docks on January 13th, taking 84 cobs with them. The deficit in cobs was to be made up at Cape Town. A certain amount of difficulty was experienced in finding the required number; as, although there were over 400 to choose from, most of them had strangles.

The *Pindari* belonged to the Brocklebank Line, Liverpool, and had already made one voyage with troops to the Cape. The troops on board consisted of the Mounted Infantry Companies of the Oxfordshire Light Infantry and the West Riding Regiment, and a draft for the Inniskilling Dragoons. The number of horses on board was 480, and Major Evelegh was in command of the troops.

There was sufficient work to be done at stables to allow of physical drill being practically dispensed with. Except when it was rough every horse was taken out of its box and groomed daily. On the voyage 23 horses died; but when the *Pindari* arrived at Cape Town she had the second best average for horse-ships from England.

On arrival at Cape Town we found the bay full of transports, hospital ships, and yachts. On February 8th, the *Pindari* was laid alongside the docks; the disembarkation commenced; and after half-a-dozen hours' work a start was made for Maitland Camp. The horses at once showed their appreciation of being again on *terra firma*, and more than one unfortunate tram passed on the road bore the marks of their hoofs.

On reaching Maitland Camp, the cobs were turned

Digitized by Google

loose into wire kraals, and it was with the greatest difficulty that they were prevented from breaking out, though after a time they settled down.

The cobs of the West Riding Mounted Infantry Company, however, ran clean over the wire of the kraal in which they were placed, some being badly cut about, and having to be shot. Next day additional horses were received, thus making the Company complete.

Parades were held every morning. Men who could not ride were taught to ride, fresh bandoliers were drawn, and unnecessary baggage was stored at the base.

On Febuary 13th, the Company left by train for De Aar at 9.5 p.m. The scene on mounting when leaving Maitland Camp for Cape Town Station was most amusing. Men mounting from the near side; mounting from the off side; men lying on their backs on the ground; men with their arms round their horses' necks, and the horses kicking and squealing all over the field.

The sleeping accommodation was good. Early next morning the train slowly climbed up the Hex River Pass—the line is a most wonderful feat of engineering. More than twenty horses were placed in most of the trucks. One or two were continually falling down, and the train had to stop at stations until they were put on their legs again. The country through which the train passed is called the Great Karoo. It has a very sandy soil, and is covered with small bushes, which are its only kind of pasture. Water is very scarce, sheep being the only animals which can be reared. On nearing Magjesfontein the guard pointed out General Wauchope's grave. At the station Mr. Logan made his appearance, and with great kindness asked the officers to lunch. He had been wounded at Belmont, and gave a graphic description of the battle. He was there as a sight-seer.

Digitized by Google

De Aar at last! after two nights and a day in the train. The usual stoppage for watering and feeding horses. Up to now the Company had expected to join Lord Roberts's Army at Orange River, but at De Aar fresh orders awaited it. After two hours stop the train left for Naauwpoort. At Hanover Road Station the Victoria Mounted Rifles were passed. On arriving at Naauwpoort orders were received to go as quickly as possible to Arundel, which place General Clements had just reached in his retirement from Colesberg. Expectations ran high as to whether the Mounted Infantry Company, although starting three weeks after the Regiment, would see service first. By this time, however, we learned afterwards, the Paardeberg campaign had begun. The train reached Arundel at 9 p.m., when the horses and baggage were unloaded, and the Commandant pointed out the camping ground. The Wiltshire Regiment provided tea, food, and so forth. They were very despondent, having had two Companies captured the day before during the retreat. Having reached Arundel they thought they had got a good position, and would not have to retire on Naauwpoort, as was at one time feared.

The position at Arundel consisted of a range of kopjes running east and west. The Boers occupied the range running parallel through the north of it, distant about 4½ miles. Innumerable smaller kopjes dotted the whole country. (The country in Cape Colony was far more mountainous than any afterwards encountered in the Free State.)

The troops at Arundel consisted of the 12th Brigade, 6th Division, the Inniskilling Dragoons, J Battery R.H.A., two Batteries R.F.A., four 5-inch howitzers, and about 700 Volunteer Mounted Infantry, consisting of South Africans and Australians. General Clements

Digitized by Google

was in command. Two nights after arrival the Company found two picquets, each consisting of one officer and 25 men. A plain extended between the British and Boer positions. About 2¾ miles from Arundel Camp side, and therefore about 1½ miles from the Boer side, were three small hills, called respectively Inniskilling, Australian, and Epsom, on which the picquets were posted.

From all three the Boers were distinctly visible. It was a standing order that no horses were to be unbitted or ungirthed. It was a most jumpy kind of game. The picquets arrived back in camp at 8 a.m., having been relieved by some Colonials. One hour for breakfast, and then off on a two days' reconnaissance. The force making the reconnaissance consisted of one Battery R.F.A., Inniskilling Dragoons, and the Oxfordshire Light Infantry and West Riding Mounted Infantry Companies. This was the first time the Company had seen any fighting. After getting about two miles beyond the picquet line on the west flank, the Boers put in an appearance. They opened fire from a big gun on Taaibosh Hill, and from a couple of pom-poms. These last when heard for the first time, and even at any time, give one a most uncomfortable feeling. The Battery had soon to retire, the remainder of the force following more leisurely. The Boers then came out into the open, and compelled the whole force to retreat behind the picquet line. One object of the reconnaissance was to open up communication with Hanover Road.

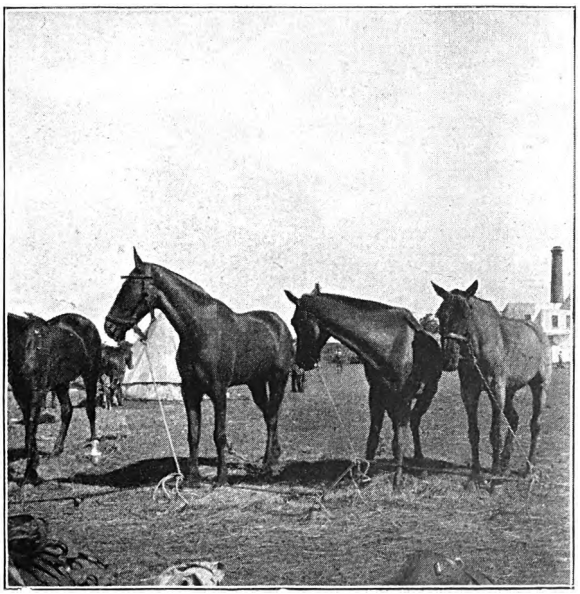
Although several other reconnaissances were made, they generally had the same result, namely, that after getting a few miles beyond the picquet line, the Boers compelled the force to retreat. During one of these reconnaissances, Captain Wallis, commanding the West Riding Mounted Infantry Company, was killed.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

SECOND-LIEUT. BROOKE AND HIS CHARGER.



IN THE HORSE LINES.

Digitized by Google

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY
ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS
R L

Digitized by Google

Another picquet found by the Mounted Infantry was on the extreme left. One day Brooke with 25 men was on picquet there. There was a long low kopje from 1,500 to 2,000 yards away facing his position, which was on a high kopje overlooking a farm. Suddenly, and without any warning, 300 Boers appeared over the kopje facing him. Luckily a squadron of the Inniskillings was in sight, and he sent back to them for assistance, at the same time sending back word to camp. The Boers endeavoured for a long time to find out whether there was a picquet on the kopje, and if so, of what strength. As our people kept quite still, the enemy found out nothing. Their intention was to seize the kopje on which the picquet was posted, and then turn our left flank. They approached the farm very carefully, and two old gentlemen (one in a black frock coat) rode up and dismounted at the farm, which was vacant. The picquet fired a volley at them, knocking over one man and a horse. The remainder of the Boers then retired to the kopje in the distance at their best pace. All the troops in camp had now been turned out, and the remainder of the Mounted Infantry arrived on the scene. Orders were given to find out whether the Boers were still on the kopje in front, and whether in any strength. Four men started to go round the right of the kopje and four round the left. Directly the patrols made their appearance, the Boers opened fire. The patrols went on until within 200 yards, when some of the Boers could be seen. Owing to a locust storm, the patrols made a bad mark to shoot at, which was a mercy. Having found out what was required, they came back as quickly as possible, and, on dismounting, one of the horses was found to have been shot in the shoulder.

The Infantry which had arrived was now sent back to camp, and the Mounted Infantry was placed on

Digitized by Google

detached kopjes to prolong the left flank. Next morning a battery came up, and, after carefully concealing the guns, shelled the Boers out of the kopje in front. In the evening the battery and the extra picquets on the left flank were withdrawn.

At Arundel four cold-shoers were attached to the Company; two coming from the gunners, the others being Indians. Colvile thought the latter would make an excellent body-guard to him, as one was a Central India horseman, and the other a Madras Lancer, and both were very keen to fight. The General, however, did not see it in the same light.

Towards the end of February news arrived that Kimberley had been relieved, and a few days later that 68 wagons belonging to Cronje had been captured. After that confused reports flew about, some saying that Cronje was captured, and that Ladysmith was relieved.

Shortly after these rumours, Lord Kitchener came and inspected the troops.

On the 27th February a general advance of the troops at Arundel was ordered, its objective being Norval's Pont. For the last week the Boers had been much quieter, and at a reconnaissance on the 25th showed signs of being in largely reduced numbers; in fact they were already retreating; the majority, with their General (Delarey), having gone to try and succour Cronje.

The Company was attached to a force under Major King-King, ordered to guard the right flank of the advance. The force consisted (besides ourselves) of one sectisn of J Battery R.H.A., one Company West Australians, and two Companies Prince Alfred's Guard. Each Company of Mounted Infantry had two buck-wagons as transport, each wagon being drawn by ten mules. The West Australians, under Major Moore, were a

Digitized by Google

splendid body of men; they compared more than favourably with any other Colonials met with afterwards.

The advance began early in the morning, and the force slowly approached the original Boer position. A sharp fire opened on nearing it. Some of the Boers were still there. The guns were unlimbered, and after shelling Taaibosch Hill for half an hour the advance continued, and no other opposition was met with. A halt was made at mid-day at Jasfontein, a farm where the Boers had watered their horses for over three weeks in sight of the picquets. Later on their laagers were passed, and by their appearance the Boers must have lived as well, if not better, than the British troops; sardine tins being especially noticeable. Khaki coats, minus their field-dressing and identification cards, were found lying about. A halt was made at Jasfontein for the night. The farm had evidently been deserted in a hurry. Clothes, etc., were strewn all over the rooms—from the old frau's black Sunday dress to the farmer's brown slouch hat. There were two harmoniums in good working order.

Next day Rensburg was occupied. A mile beyond the station was an overturned train, which in the previous retreat from Colesberg had carried three days' rations for the whole force. The station-master had treacherously pushed it down the hill towards the Boers, but luckily, the points being crossed, it had upset after going a mile. A force had to be sent down to burn the train to prevent the provisions falling into the enemy's hands. Upon one of the doors at Rensburg Station a Boer had written up the following riddle:—

Q. How many kinds of fools are there?

A. Three. The fool; the —— fool; and the British General.

General Clements saw this, and was much amused at it.

Digitized by Google

The next place of interest was Slingersfontein, round which a lot of fighting had taken place during the retreat. Colesberg was then occupied. The Boers had been in possession here for over 100 days. Most of the population were Dutch, and the few remaining British residents had had a very bad time. Coleskop could be seen overlooking the town. Two guns had been placed on the top of it when General French was in command.

A halt was made here for a few days to rest the horses and repair the line, every single bridge of which was blown up. Very little fighting had been done since leaving Arundel, the General's intention being not to attack as long as the Boers kept retreating. This may appear to have been wrong, but the positions were tremendously strong, and as long as the Boers continued to retreat there was no need to hurry them. If an attack had been made it would probably have failed, and if it had failed, it would have put fresh life into the Boers, who could then have remained at Norval's Pont, and cut Lord Roberts' lines of communication. However, all went well, and the Boers retreated.

When Colesberg was left, the Company still remained on the right flank, generally about 14 or 15 miles from the main body. A great many of the people in the farms were unable to speak English, although this was still Cape Colony. Anyhow, they were most polite to the troops; but in spite of this, a great number were sent into Colesberg to answer the charge of disloyalty. At one farm, called Hebron, the people were particularly kind, and one felt very sorry when they had to go to Colesberg with the rest. The farms about here were very fine, this being a great horse-breeding and ostrich-rearing district. On arriving at Hebron, which was distant 12 miles from Norval's Pont, a loud explosion

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY
ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS
L
B

Digitized by Google

was heard, and a column of dust rose in the air. The Pont was blown up!

After this there was no hurry; the next thing to do was to get across the river. The force gradually approached, and at last caught sight of the Orange Free State. The Boers were still in force on the north side of the river. The bridge had cost £99,000 to build, and the three centre arches and piers had been blown down. It took two months before these were replaced and the bridge was again ready for use.

The Intelligence Department expected a big fight to take place. The river was commanded on both sides by steep kopjes. The banks, which were covered with trees (thus affording good cover for snipers) were low, and good for bridging purposes. The current was very strong, and Dent, an officer of the Inniskillings, who came out on board the *Pindari*, was drowned whilst bathing.

Major King-King's force, to which the Company still belonged, was sent along to the east to make a demonstration. This took place at Kruger's Drift. Several farm houses were visible across the river, about a mile inside the Orange Free State. A few Boers were seen walking about. The guns were unlimbered and a shot fired, which fell short. The next shot burst in the middle of the Boers, who were galloping away; two men and horses being left on the ground. The guns then shelled the farms, when a white flag was immediately hoisted. A big reconnaissance was made at the same time opposite the main Boer position. This last was shelled for some time, but there was no response. Volunteers who could row were then asked for, and the West Australians were able to send in, among others, the name of the champion sculler of Australia.

The crossing was to be attempted on the 15th March.

Digitized by Google

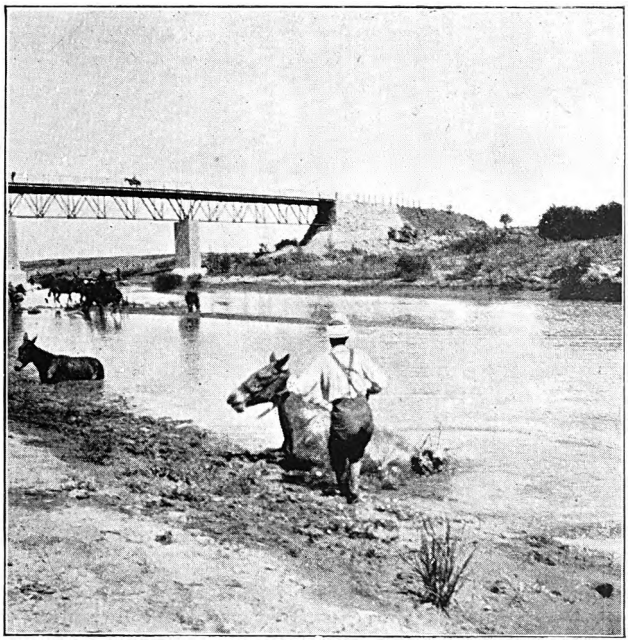
On the evening before a concert was held, at which several of the Company took part. Up to now everyone had thought that the passage was going to be contested. The Company was ordered to prevent any Boer reinforcement coming to assist those opposing the main column. A pontoon bridge was to be thrown over in a re-entrant bend towards the British side. The Company was posted on the eastern flank of this bend and marched down to its position very early in the morning. Sangars were built, and all expected to have a warm time. The covering party had been sent over before daylight. The sun rose and still there was no firing, and after half-an-hour it was known that the passage was not going to be disputed. The bridge was the longest one that has ever been built on active service by the British Army. By the afternoon all the Infantry had crossed, and in two days the whole force was over the river. On the second day after crossing General Pole-Carew came down from Bloemfontein by train, thus showing that communications between the Colony and Bloemfontein had been opened up.

The Company was moved on March 18th to Donkerpoort, this being the first station within the Orange Free State. During its stay of several days, patrols were sent out to visit the farms and collect arms. The farmers, although they had been fighting, were most friendly, and wanted to keep their Mausers for "sporting purposes," as they said! One man told a patrol how he had been at Colesberg, and when asked if he had ever shot at the British and killed any of them, he answered, that one afternoon he had assisted in a small fight, but when a number of men were firing together it was very hard to say if one hit anyone. He was a Scotchman, and seemed quite delighted to tell the tale!

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google



RIET RIVER.

NORVAL'S PONT.

Digitized by Google

PUBLIC LIBRARY
ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS
R L

Digitized by Google

After waiting three days at Donkerpoort, orders came to proceed to Bloemfontein by way of Philippolis and Fauresmith. There were to be two mobile columns, to act as an advance guard. The Company was attached to the one under the command of Major Dauncey, Inniskilling Dragoons. The force consisted of one squadron of Inniskilling Dragoons, one Battery R.A., the Oxfordshire Light Infantry and the West Riding Mounted Infantry Companies, and the West Australians.

Philippolis was reached in three or four days. The Company discovered a large quantity of ammunition buried under a kopje, two or three miles from the town, and destroyed it all next day. Whilst here the weather was awful, raining for 40 hours without stopping; and as there was only one blanket apiece it was most uncomfortable. At Philippolis, as at the other towns afterwards visited, it was impossible to get luxuries in any shape or form. When the ground became dry enough for the wagons to move, a start was made for Fauresmith. On leaving Philippolis the whole force marched past the General, the bands playing. This was done to impress the burghers with the true state of affairs. President Steyn's daughter was among the crowd looking on. Major Dauncey's Column had orders to call at Jagersfontein on the way to Fauresmith. During the march, an old Armstrong gun and a Maxim were found down a disused mine-shaft. On the Column entering Jagersfontein the people were intensely pleased, a great many of them being English, or having English sympathies. The force was accommodated in the mine compound. All night long the strains of "Rule Britannia" and "God Save the Queen" could be heard all over the town. Next day Fauresmith was reached. Got news that the remains of a commando had been

Digitized by Google

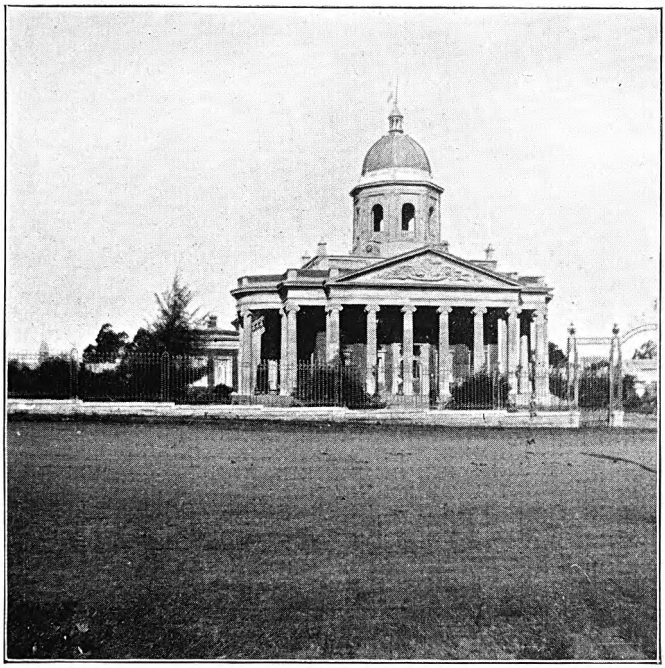
heard of at Koffyfontein. General Clements with a small force went to attempt its capture, but it had dispersed. Petrusburg was then visited, and the next point was Bloemfontein, which every one was very anxious to see. Signs of a large force having marched this way were evident; old camping grounds, distinguished by "bully" beef and biscuit tins were passed; dead horses marked the line of advance, and the smell from them was sickening. Their presence could be detected at a considerable distance, and one endeavoured by filling one's lungs as full as possible with air, and by holding one's nose, to escape more than the first sniff. One's breath, however, generally gave out when one was exactly opposite the object, and it was then possible to know how a *dead* horse *could* smell. No opposition having been met with during the march, the affair of Sanna's Post (the news of which came during the last march but one before reaching Bloemfontein) was a great surprise to most.

The force reached Bloemfontein April 3rd, and was broken up on arrival there. The Government Buildings in the town we found to be decidedly handsome, and there was a good Club. Provisions were already beginning to run short, and it was extremely hard to get a bath, owing to the Boers being in possession of the waterworks. The Company met the Regiment here and learned all about Paardeberg; and although one would have liked to have been there on account of the fighting, one was glad *not* to have been there on account of the food — or rather its absence. At Bloemfontein the Mounted Infantry was formed into a Division, consisting of two Brigades; each Brigade having four corps. Our Company belonged to the 8th Corps, commanded by Colonel Ross, Durham Light Infantry. After waiting three days at Bloemfontein,

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google



PARLIAMENT HOUSE AT BLOEMFONTEIN.

BLOEMFONTEIN RAILWAY STATION.

Digitized by Google

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY
ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS
R L

Digitized by Google

it went to join the remainder of its corps at Karree Siding, twenty-four miles north.

The Corps was composed of four Companies of other regiments, with Lumsden's and Loch's Horse. The Oxfordshire and West Riding Mounted Infantry Companies were stronger than the other four regular Companies, who never seemed to have recovered from Paardeberg. The work consisted for a long time in doing outpost duty day and night, and nothing else. Bradford could be seen towards the west, and the Boer picquets could be discerned at a distance of two or three miles, on the top of a long grassy slope. One morning the Boers got close to the picquets, and a lot of firing took place. After using two and a half boxes of ammunition, with apparently little result, the firing ceased. Shortly after, however, the Boers sent down an ambulance, which showed that the firing had not been altogether unsuccessful.

One morning a raid was made on the enemy's cattle, which used to feed in front of their picquets. It resulted in the capture of over 2,000 sheep, about 50 oxen, and three Cape carts. During this raid, and while it was still dark, Colvile came across a wire fence. He dismounted and cut the wire, when he suddenly heard some one talking at a distance of about thirty yards. It was a Boer picquet. He thought it was time to get on his horse, which he did quickly, and galloped away, followed by the bullets of the picquet, who were now awake.

Our Company and the West Riding Company were now sent to General Maxwell's Brigade at Krantz Kraal. On the third night after arrival there, and whilst it was dark, General Broadwood's Cavalry Brigade, with three Batteries of Artillery, joined the force. Early next morning an advance was made on the Boer position in

Digitized by Google

front, the Cavalry being on the right, the Infantry on the left rear, and the two Companies of Mounted Infantry keeping up communication between them. The Boers, after firing a few shots, retreated, and the Infantry occupied their position. The Cavalry still continued its advance, the Mounted Infantry following; and late in the afternoon a shower of pom-pom shells fell in the former. The Cavalry retired a short way, and bivouacked for the night. Owing to the turning movement being a large one, the Mounted Infantry had lost touch with the Infantry, and no one knew where one was! The only thing to be done was to bivouac at the nearest farm, commandeering what food and forage there was. Picquets were posted, no fires being allowed, and a sharp look-out was kept, as the enemy was believed to be quite close, and the whole force of Mounted Infantry was barely 150. Nothing happened in the night, and next morning the Infantry was rejoined. Next day another short advance was made, and the Boers could be seen trekking in the distance. The object of the operations of these two or three days was to straighten out the line before making a general advance on Brandfort.

Early next morning the Company was joined by the 4th and 8th Mounted Infantry Corps, the intention being to work round to the north of Brandfort, and to cut off the Boers' retreat. The advance had barely begun before the Company received a volley from a Boer picquet. As one section after another galloped across a piece of open ground the volleys continued. The picquet commander could be heard giving the command to fire in English. The range was taken, and the Boers soon retreated. The men mounted, one section advancing towards some Kaffir kraals, another along a spruit. It was necessary to dismount after going a short

Digitized by Google

way, as rifle fire again opened, this time supplemented by two guns. The section advancing along the spruit saw some Boers, who appeared from the formation to be Zarps, marching calmly along to take up a fresh position. Riding their horses into the spruit, and thus getting cover and concealment from its banks, the men again dismounted and fired two volleys at the unconscious enemy. The range was 1,800 yards, but the Zarps extended quickly, and disappeared into the spruit higher up. The section then advanced into the open to get closer, but directly it appeared bullets whizzed around, so it returned to the spruit and walked along it for three or four hundred yards, having excellent cover all the way. A few volleys soon turned the Boers out of their shelter; and, as they retired up the hill, another volley caused them to go at their best pace.

The 8th Mounted Infantry had now to wait till the 4th Mounted Infantry, which had been hanging back, came up on the right. The advance continued, and the top of the ridges was reached without further opposition. Directly the Mounted Infantry appeared over the crest, the Boer guns (which had been moved to another range of kopjes) opened fire, and nearly hit one of the Mounted Infantry pom-poms. Brooke had gone on with one section to a kopje in front, and as he reached it the firing again commenced sharper than ever. No one could make out what had happened; but on reaching the kopje a Boer gun was seen disappearing in the distance, and the firing had come from its escort. Whilst waiting here for a short time to reform, Maxwell's Brigade could be seen some distance away on the left flank. After re-forming, a move was made towards a farm in front; but on reaching it the Boer guns, which had its range, opened again. Men were dismounted and advanced towards the Boer position, but after going a short

Digitized by Google

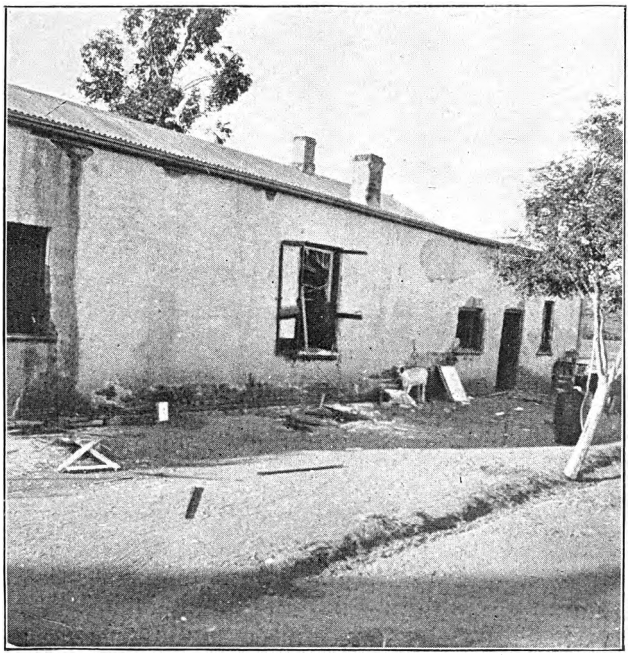
way, and partly owing to night coming on, this was abandoned. The Mounted Infantry marched back, and bivouacked for the night about three miles on the right flank of the Infantry. The attempt to cut off the Boer retreat from Brandfort had failed, but the latter place had been occupied by the Guards' Brigade with very little loss. The casualties in the Mounted Infantry were only six, although they had been firing at the Boers, and the Boers at them, from six o'clock in the morning till dark. A Boer ambulance was captured during the day, with three badly wounded Boers inside, and the doctor in charge (an Englishman) said that the enemy's gunners were Frenchmen.

Next day a halt was made to allow the wagons to come up; and when the advance continued, the 4th and 8th Corps, which from now to Pretoria worked together, were ordered to join Ian Hamilton, who was marching on Winburg. An early start was made, but at about two o'clock an order came from Lord Roberts for the Mounted Infantry to wheel to the left, as General Maxwell was being strongly opposed by the Boers at Vet River. The two corps started at the trot, and came in on the Boer left as they were retreating, General Maxwell having crossed the river. From here a patrol (April 5th) of one officer and twenty men was sent off with a message from Lord Roberts to General Hamilton, who was supposed to be where the Bloemfontein-Winburg road crossed the Vet River. The only guide was the telegraph wire between Winburg and Brandfort, on the north side of which were the Boers. It was necessary, therefore, to keep well to the south. The patrol had no map or compass, the former of which would have made matters a great deal easier. A deserted farm by the telegraph wire was reached just before dark; the horses were fed for the first time during the

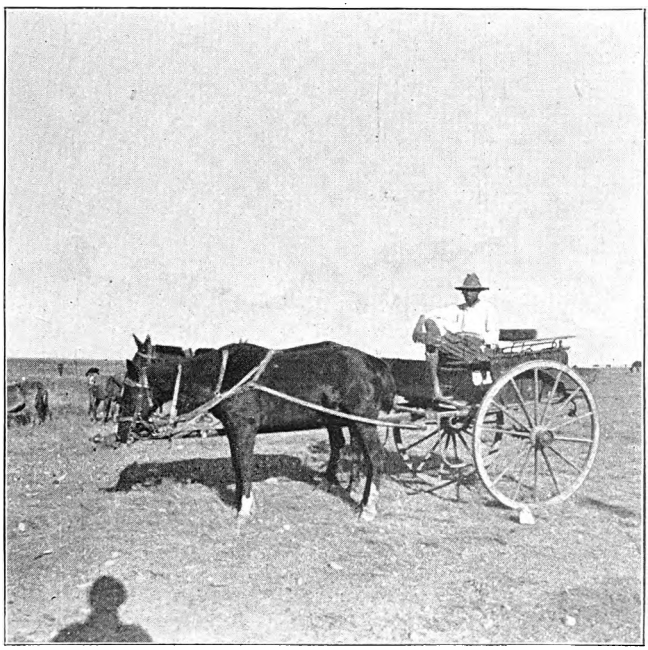
Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google



FARM OF EX-PRESIDENT STEYN'S BROTHER.



THE MESS CART.

Digitized by Google

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

Digitized by Google

day, and several chickens afterwards adorned the saddles, as the men were without food.

It was now dark, and nothing remained but to move on in a south-east direction till someone or something was seen. After a time, camp fires were made out; whether they were Boer or British it was impossible to tell; but the patrol made towards them. After marching for a couple of hours, and twice crossing a river (which proved to be the Vet) the patrol crawled up on their stomachs, and found that they were British, and the Highland Brigade. General Hamilton was not where he was supposed to be, but twelve miles further on, at Winburg. After this the way was easy enough, there being a good road.

Winburg was reached at 3.30 a.m.; every one very tired, having been in the saddle from 6 a.m. the previous day. The horses were dead beat. It took four days to get back to the Company, which was at Smaldeel, one night being spent at a deserted farm belonging to Steyn's brother. Next day a short march was made close to Zand River; and during the afternoon, while making a reconnaissance towards the station, the Boers opened a heavy fire. At an early hour next morning the Mounted Infantry marched down to the drift. They waited here till Gordon's Cavalry Brigade, Tucker's Division, the guns, and Headquarters' Staff arrived. About a mile further back the captive balloon rose in the air. The Mounted Infantry were the first to cross the drift, and were able to advance for half a mile beyond it, the enemy's shell fire then stopping them. The gunners could not see the enemy's guns for a few moments, and the shelling still continued. Luckily it was common shell, and no one was hurt, although they kept bursting all among the horses. The Horse Artillery then opened fire, and in a couple of minutes the Boer guns, which

Digitized by Google

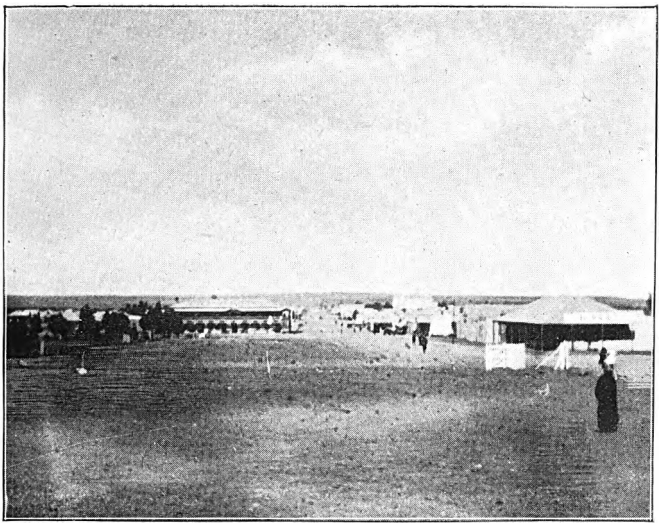
were previously invisible, could be seen retreating. The Mounted Infantry then galloped on to the kopje the Boers had just left. After our people had occupied several more kopjes the whole of the Boer army could be seen retreating. It was the first and last time the Boers were visible in any great numbers. The Mounted Infantry pom-poms came into action against some Boers behind the railway embankment. In a minute they were scuttling out like rats. The Company then advanced with the rest of the 8th Corps against a long, low kopje, in front of which was a mealie patch. The ground was open, and the horses were left behind. On getting close to the mealie patch, the Boers (who were concealed in it) opened fire. There were no ant hills to give cover, and the fire was too hot to allow any one to raise his head in order to return it. The only two men who moved about were shot. Captain Head, commanding the 8th Mounted Infantry Regiment, was mortally wounded; and Sergeant G. Watson of our Company was shot through both legs. He was the Company's first casualty. After a time the firing slackened, and one was able to return it. The Mounted Infantry then advanced, but the Boers had gone. They had been protecting the removal of one of their guns. When it was all over, a squadron of Lancers and a battery of guns came up. After that there was no more firing, and the Mounted forces moved on to Ventersburg Road Station, where they camped for the night.

Next morning an early start was made, and at twelve o'clock the Company was lying along a grassy ridge firing at the Boers, seven miles from Kroonstad. Two Horse Batteries came up, but no further advance could be made. The firing continued till night, when the Infantry came up and camped four miles in the rear. Picquets were left out all night, and next morning the

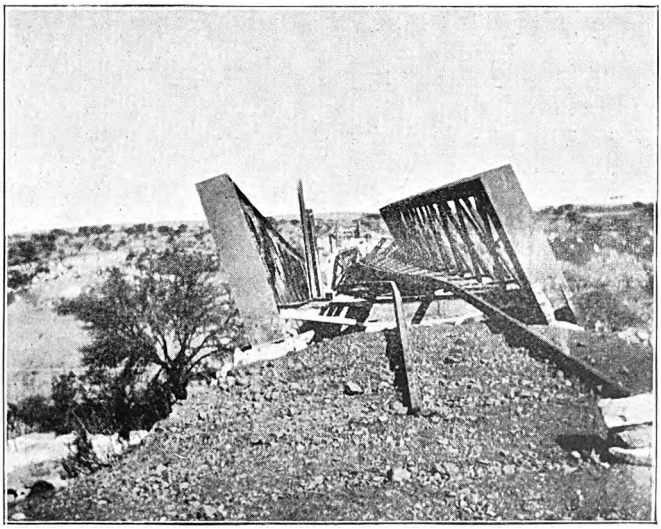
Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google



KROONSTAD.



KROONSTAD BRIDGE.

Digitized by Google

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS
R

Digitized by Google

Mounted Infantry again crept up the ridge. Each man picked out the biggest ant-heap he could find, and all waited for the enemy's fire to break out, and the expected battle of Kroonstad to begin. The scouts went slowly forward to the position held by the Boers the day before, but still there was no firing. The position proved to be unoccupied, and in a quarter of an hour's reconnaissance not a Boer was seen. The enemy had retreated, leaving Kroonstad to its fate. The Mounted Infantry was formed up, and rode with Lord Roberts to the drift outside the town. As they approached the town, General French's force could be seen coming in from the north, while other forces came in from the east and west. Lord Roberts halted outside the town, and the Mounted Infantry camped, and waited anxiously for their wagons. The Company had been two and a half days without them, and all were hungry and tired. After three hours the Guards' Brigade marched up, and Lord Roberts entered the town at their head.

The bridge over the Valsch River having been blown up, a deviation was made alongside the drift. It was at this drift that President Steyn had taken up his stand the evening before the British troops entered the town, and with his shambok endeavoured to instil courage (*i.e.* Dutch!) into the minds of the burghers.

The next day Colvile, armed with a pass from the Commissariat Department, endeavoured to buy a few things in the food line; but this he found to be impossible, as there was nothing to be had. The troops stayed for a week at Kroonstad, and during this time the Company received remounts, which were badly needed. These remounts (which were Argentines) followed the army up from Bloemfontein and had apparently been fed on the veldt most of the way. They were received the day before a fresh start was made,

Digitized by Google

and having had little or no corn, were absolutely unable to do the work required of them. Their main idea seemed to be to kick anyone who happened to be behind their heels, or to lie down and refuse to rise.

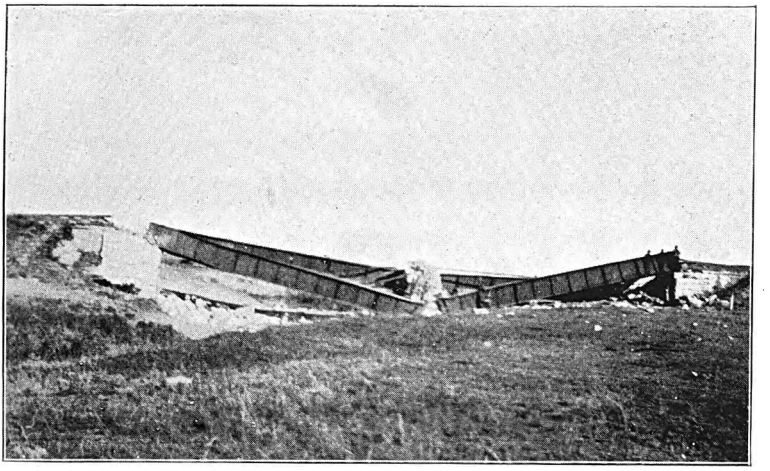
The advance continued about the 20th May, and for the next three or four days no opposition was met with. Farmers came in from the surrounding country, and gave in their arms and ammunition—a great deal of the latter containing expanding and explosive bullets. By dint of great exertions, the Army Service Corps had managed to bring up some rum, and on 24th May a double ration was issued, the Queen's health drunk, and "God Save the Queen" sung. From this all the way to Pretoria, the Boers burnt the grass after them, and every night the whole veldt was ablaze. The Intelligence Department prognosticated a battle at Rhenoster River, but on arriving there, it was found that the Boers had decamped. This was owing to the left flank of their position having been turned by General Hamilton, and their right by General French. The enemy, it was evident, had made great preparations to fight at Rhenoster. Trenches, after the Paardeberg type, had been dug; and a siding for a big gun had been laid down. The position was of considerable strength; and it appeared doubtful if shell fire would have had any effect on the trenches.

On nearing the Vaal the good news came that General French had crossed into the Transvaal at Parys. General Hamilton's Column now crossed and took up the centre position, Lord Roberts taking the right of the line of advance. Every bridge from Kroonstad to the Vaal was blown up, and at Rhenoster the line was torn up for over a mile. On reaching Wolverhoek, orders were received that next day the Mounted Infantry, supported by a section of guns, would cross the

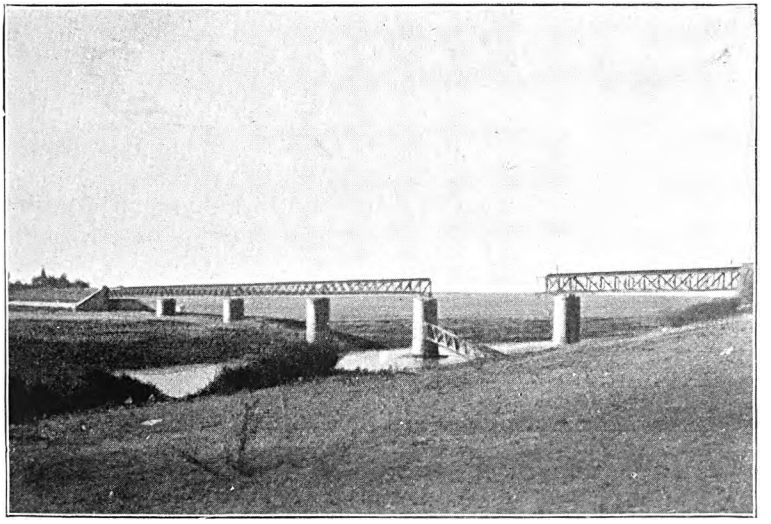
Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google



BROKEN BRIDGE NEAR RHENOSTER.



AT VEREENIGING, OR VILJOEN'S DRIFT.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Vaal at Viljeon's Drift. The orders stated that there were twenty-five Englishmen shut up in the coal mines at Vereeniging, and that no help was to be expected from the Infantry.

On starting next morning the 8th Corps marched on the left of the line, the 4th on the right. The coal mines at Viljeon's Drift were sighted after two hours' marching, mostly through mealie fields. As the 8th Corps neared the buildings the Boers opened fire. A few minutes afterwards there was an explosion, and an arch of the railway bridge over the Vaal fell into the river. The Boers had blown it up. The Company was on the left of the line, and after a quarter of an hour's skirmishing reached the river. On the Transvaal side, and close to the water's edge, was a high bank of slack. From the top of this the Boers, who had now retreated to that side of the river, continued their fire. The men dismounted and skirmished along the river bank, and a Boer could be seen coming out of the doorway at intervals, and firing off his rifle. It was soon made too hot for him to stay there. A drift had meantime been discovered on the left flank, and Colvile went over with half the Company. The remainder lined the bank of the river, in order to cover his retreat if necessary, and still kept up a warm fire at the slack bank. The two guns now opened on the same object, and Colvile's party rode towards the slack bank in widely extended order. The remainder of the Corps hurried across, but the Boers had retreated to Vereeniging Station, which they at once set on fire. The ground was too open to attack them with the small force at Colonel Henry's disposal; and as the passage of the river had been gained, it was only necessary to prevent them gaining command of it. When the Boers had done as much damage as possible to the Station,

Digitized by Google

they retreated, and the Company camped there that night. The English people at the mine were delighted to see their fellow countrymen, and were most kind to the officers and men.

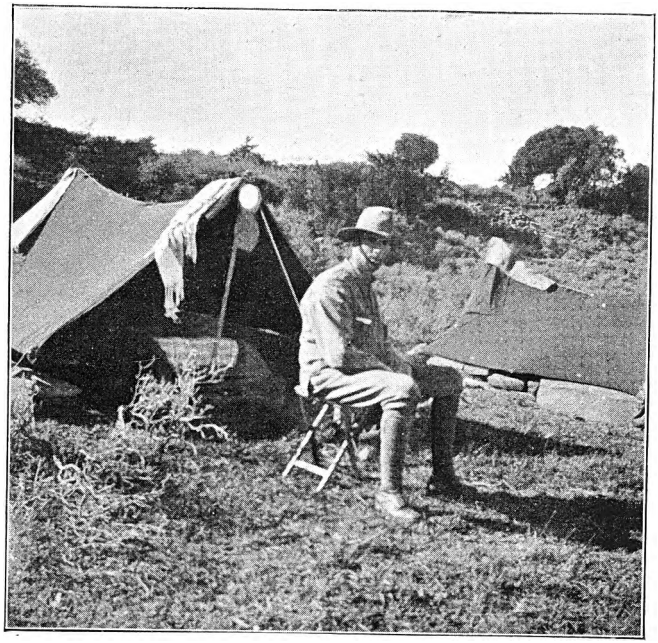
At noon next day the main body crossed the river. The Mounted Infantry had been hoping to have a day's rest; but directly the Infantry had crossed they were ordered to go down to Engelbacht Drift and engage the enemy if they saw them, Gordon's Cavalry Brigade being supposed to be held up by some Boers. This entailed a march of some twenty miles, all of which had to be done at a walk, as the horses were worn out, and could only canter in presence of the enemy. The Boers were seen but did not wait to fight; and on arrival at Engelbacht Drift Gordon's Cavalry Brigade was found to have extricated itself and to have gone on. The force turned round and commenced to retrace its steps; but night came on after going ten miles, so it camped in a mealie field. There were no wagons, nor any forage, and one was told if one wanted water to march on a certain star for three or four hundred yards—to find in the end stuff unfit to drink. The horses were fed at two o'clock next morning, and the Mounted Infantry cut in in front of the main body at about 6 a.m.

Soon after this a big plain was reached, on the further side of which was a long and high kopje. It looked as if there was going to be a real good fight, and the heavy guns, with their teams of sixteen oxen, where hauled out into the open. At this display of force the Boers retreated, and the march continued to Klip River, where a halt was made for the night. Throughout the last hour before reaching the camping ground, the sound of General French's guns could be heard away on the left flank, and as the sun went down

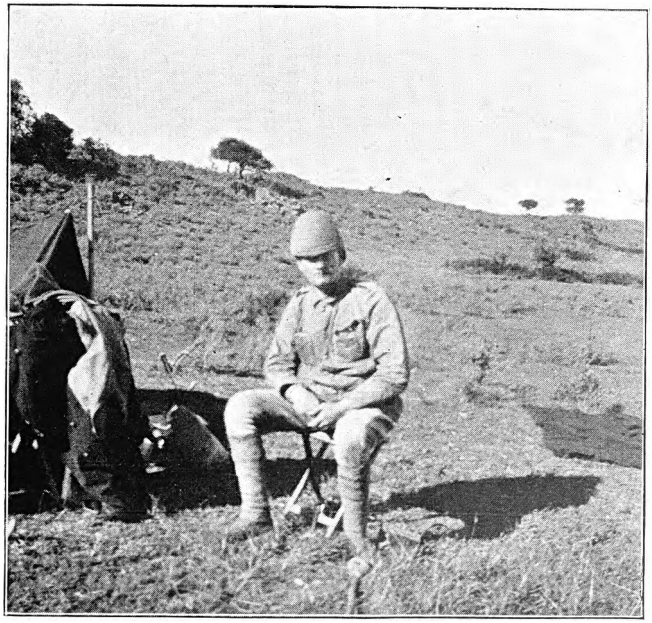
Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google



CAPTAIN G. N. COLVILE.



SECOND-LIEUT. R. R. M. BROOKE.

Digitized by Google

THE N
PUBL
ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS
R L

Digitized by Google

the last sound to fill the air was produced by a pom-pom firing off a dozen of its shells.

The orders received that night were that the Mounted Infantry were to go on next day at their best pace and seize Elandsfontein at all costs, and to capture as much rolling stock as possible. Accordingly, next morning the 8th Corps started, the 4th Corps following in reserve. The Company led the way on the right of the line, the West Riding Company on the left. The pace was much quicker than usual. On reaching Natal Spruit, one of the scouts brought in word that a train could be seen coming up the Natal line, on its way to Elandsfontein. Here was a chance of capturing some rolling stock. Up to now only smoke had been seen; but, as the first section came over a rise, the train itself, steaming along at a slow pace six hundred yards away, became visible. The remainder of the Company galloped up, the men dismounted and opened fire, and the train put on full steam. The railway lines ran in a curve; one section started across, so as to reach a small station higher up the line before the train, but a wire fence intervened. *There were no wire cutters*, and as the men rode up and down the fence looking for an opening, a sharp fire broke out from the train. Half the Heidelberg commando (300 men) was in it. It was impossible to go further, and the train disappeared round a corner. The remainder of the Corps had now come up, and the advance continued. There was a long range of hills on the left flank, and from this three guns at once opened fire, one being quite close, as could be told by the sharp crack it made. There were no guns with the Mounted Infantry, as one of the naval 4·7 guns had fallen through the bridge at Klip River, thus blocking the way to the rest of the army. Lumsden's Horse deployed to the right, and could now be seen advancing in skirmishing

Digitized by Google

order. The Company moved on, and in a few minutes reached the top of the ridge of hills on the left. As it arrived there, two men opened fire upon it. The men took cover in a Boer trench which was close at hand, and did not return the fire. The two men who were firing belonged to the West Riding Company, and it took some time to make them understand that they were firing *at their own side!* This was at last accomplished by sounding their regimental call, white handkerchiefs and helmets on the ends of rifles having failed to stop them firing.

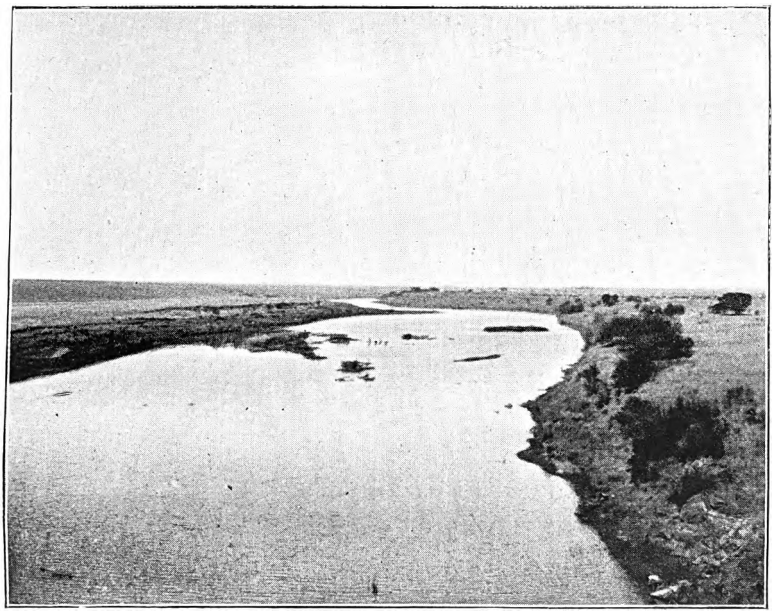
Elandsfontein Station, and several gold mines, could be seen from the top of the hill. The remainder of the Corps now received orders to cut the line further to the east, and not to go into the station, as was at first intended. The Company never received these orders, so it proceeded straight down the line towards the station. As Colvile went in with one section on the left side of the station yard, the Boers again began firing. The horses were got under cover as quickly as possible, but three were hit, one receiving six wounds. The men got behind a tin shed, but the Mauser bullets easily found their way through it, causing them to retire with three men wounded. No more headway could be made, and reinforcements were anxiously looked for, but there were none in sight. Doctors from the Russian ambulance now came and dressed the wounded, and, after waiting for some time, a fresh attempt to reach the station was made. This second attempt was successful; but sniping broke out, and was only put a stop to by the appearance on the scene of the Grenadier Guards. The Company bivouacked in the yard for the night, and next day rejoined the 8th Corps.

On the 30th of May there was a twenty-four hours' armistice, to allow the people in Johannesburg to decide

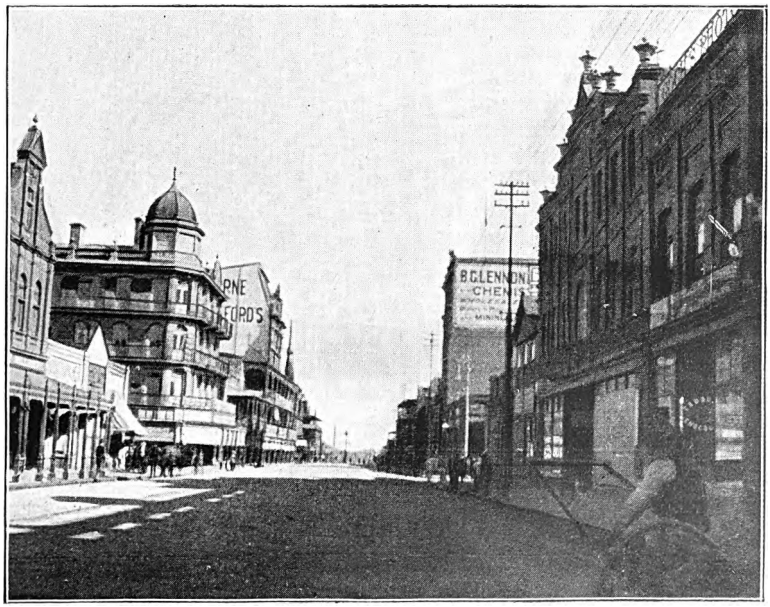
Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google



THE VAAL, LOOKING WEST.



IN JOHANNESBURG.

Digitized by Google

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS
R L

Digitized by Google

whether they would surrender the town or stand a bombardment. The result, as everyone knows, was that they chose the former alternative, and on the 31st the troops marched through the town. The march began through Jeppe and the mines, and after five miles the Government buildings were reached. The English flag was hoisted, and there was a certain amount of cheering.

The troops camped at Orange Grove for the night, and two days after they fought near Pretoria.

The writer is unable to give a further account of these two or three days, as he was not there.[1] Amongst the different things learned during the period that this account covers are the following:—

1. Never to trust a white flag.
2. To get cover as quickly as possible.
3. That one volley was worth ten rounds independent per man.
4. Long range volley firing was useful.

These are only opinions, and must be taken as such.

---

[1] He was wounded at Elandsfontein Station, and invalided home.—Ed.

Digitized by Google

A PRISONER OF WAR.

By Lieut.-Colonel F. J. Evelegh.

In December 1899, on arrival from Staff employment in India, I was ordered to organise and take out to South Africa the Mounted Infantry of the 13th (Knox's) Brigade, 6th Division. This consisted of 15 officers, 560 rank and file, and 520 horses; and we arrived at Cape Town, after a 28 days' voyage, on the *S.S. Pindari*, the 8th February 1900.

On the 11th February I received an order, which had been awaiting me, to the effect that "being second in command of the Battalion, I was to rejoin it at Enslin, and to proceed by the mail train that night." This meant that I must travel without my cob, as the train would not convey horses. My soldier-servant appeared to desire that I should also go up country without my saddle and carbine, as he carefully packed them in the main barracks with my store baggage. However, at 8 p.m. I made a fair start, and arrived at Enslin early on the 14th, to find that Lord Roberts' last Division had marched the day before on its journey towards Pretoria.

Headlam, R.H.A., and I, with servants, having detrained, tried to do our duty by a very nasty "bully-beef" breakfast on the sandy veldt by the railway, after which we went and reported our arrival to Count Gleichen, the Camp Commandant, and then to my sorrow I learned that, though a battle was expected next day, he could not mount me and enable me to join the Regiment, which was already toiling along 25 miles off.

There was a fair amount of life outside the camp; in

Digitized by Google

one direction, Modder camp, heavy guns were being fired into Kimberley, and a large war balloon hovering over Methuen's forces; eastward, dense columns of sand rose heavily in the air, denoting the march of Infantry columns and lines of wagons some 20 miles off; we also noticed, some miles away, a mule wagon coming slowly towards camp, which on arrival proved to be a wagon carrying sick officers, among them Ruck Keene, looking very seedy and worn out. I may mention that this wagon and its mules formed part of my convoy, which was to start later.

Gleichen now rode up, and said he had just received a most pressing telegram from Lord Roberts, ordering him to send by convoy boots, kit, etc., for the Highland Light Infantry and Highland Brigade; and as some remounts for the Duke of Cornwall's Light Infantry and mules had come in, he would mount me if I would take charge, or rather *tactical* charge, of the convoy. This offer I jumped at, as I was anxious to be with the Regiment in time for the fight.

At 7 p.m. that evening I was warned that the small convoy was ready to start, and at once joined it, to find the carts drawn by thirty odd, tired-looking mules, and an escort consisting of 2nd Lieut. C. P. M. Craigie-Halkett, Highland Light Infantry, Dr. Kelbe, a gallant colonial doctor, who, having just lost his wife, had come, apparently reckless of life, to rejoin the Highland Brigade, six mounted scouts of Kitchener's Horse, lent by Colonel Legge, and sixteen convalescent casuals of Infantry; and also, at the last moment, another half-dozen convalescents, but these last were unarmed, and took advantage of our escort and joined us by order.

My instructions were, as there were no drifts marked on our maps of South Africa, to follow the field telegraph wire through Ramdam, cross the Riet River at

Digitized by Google

Waterval Drift, and catch up Lord Roberts' army on the other side. We had not much difficulty in following the tracks, as many dead horses and mules lay about; but the occasional unloading and lifting carts out of holes by my none too strong men, made an hour or two's rest by the water at Ramdam a necessity; we, therefore, out-spanned and waited for daylight, the men lying down to sleep without a thought of food. I looked up a doctor in charge of sick at the only house within sight, who casually remarked, "Begad, there's not a Boer within forty mile of ye!" I here noticed that my servant had lost himself, and fancy he joined a convoy of sick, which passed us on its way back to Enslin, just as a furious thunder shower made us turn our heads for a minute the wrong way; at any rate, I have not since seen him; but a month or so after I received a letter from him, asking me to let him have his kit, as he had been drugged (by the Boers?), who had left him at Orange River, miles behind us, without even his horse, boots, or "britches," and with only a belt on; and he added insult to injury by asking me if I knew anything of the horse that had carried him.

At 10 a.m., on February 15th, the convoy passed through a ridge of kopjes; we found the Riet a mile in front,[1] and a battle going on as far as the eye could reach on the other side. I have since learned that 2,000 Boers, with guns, under De Wet, had fallen on the rear-guard, which was not strong enough to put him to rout, and it therefore had been obliged to retire slowly.

I further saw my advanced scouts galloping back, one wounded through the thigh, the bullets flicking up the sand about them as they came along; and when they arrived the convoy had then a fairly heavy fire

[1] Waterval Drift, where the 6th Division had bivouacked on the 13th Feb. *Vide* Map, page 76.

Digitized by Google

opened on it from a distant kopje. We were moving down hill, so I at once directed the head of the convoy towards a small plateau, where there appeared to be a chance of cover on my right, and then turned to try and find out what was meant, and saw, about a mile away, two sections of about 30 Boers each galloping for us, and a fairly dense cloud of sand, evidently raised by a larger body moving fast to my right.

My first idea was to retire my convoy back through the kopjes and hold the enemy there, but a second's consideration told me that my mules could not get the carts up the hill in time, as I had already outspanned several to die, and, therefore, that we must fight all we knew where we stood. I at once ordered a low parapet of all available boxes, bales of hay, and clothing to be made.

Just then four East Lancashire Mounted Infantry, who had been bringing along some cattle, rode up, so I sent them with three mounted scouts to hold a shoulder which looked down on us some 300 yards off, and the two remaining to a Company of Mounted Infantry, which was retiring under fire a mile on my left, to ask its Commander for assistance.

In the moment or so before firing was opened on us, I could not help noticing that, although all knew they were in for a hot time of it, the men exhibited the greatest calmness, as they sat on boxes carefully examining their bolts and sights; yet all were tired out and parched with thirst, the heat being intense, and the well we had just passed had had a dead horse in it, and the water therefore undrinkable.

I may here say that four men out of my 16 Infantry reported broken rifles to me, and a Kitchener's Horse scout had anxiously asked me to instruct him how to get his cartridges from the magazine to the barrel.

A heavy fire now began from the enemy, under cover,

Digitized by Google

about 400 yards in front, and my mounted scouts were at once driven from their hill by a body which turned out to be 100 strong.

As the Boers were impossible to see, I at first reserved my fire; but on "independent" commencing, we all found that our helmets and pouches prevented us firing under cover lying down, and the sun being too fierce to take our helmets off, it became necessary to expose ourselves when firing, which, under the circumstances, did not mean deliberate shooting.

The mules and drivers I had sent away, that they might, if possible, escape the fire directed on us; but every horse had now been shot down, as a heavy magazine fire had been opened from at least 150 rifles on to our small patch of ground from three different quarters; that from the shoulder was the most searching. Now a Company on my left flank worked up to within 80 yards. I was on that flank, and had now, with the assistance of the men about me, to draw back the left-hand boxes and bales so as to face that attack, and also to save the remainder from enfilade fire.

We now began to suffer most severely. Private W. Buckle, West Riding Regiment, sharing the left side of my bale, received three bullets in his temple and cheek bone, his blood spurting over me. At the same moment Dr. Kelbe, behind the box next on my right, was shot through the windpipe; and then, having fired several shots, I turned round and shouted to Craigie-Halkett, who commanded the right flank, to ask how he was getting on, but received no answer—he, poor boy, having been shot through the heart and stomach. I saw only wounded men writhing, the bullets, which were pouring in, simply knocking our boxes and bales to pieces. I noticed rows of brown boots or shoes and tartan plaids, and after a minute or so our poor doctor,

Digitized by Google

black in the face, and waving his handkerchief as a flag of truce, evidently determined before his death to save our lives, and undoubtedly two minutes more would have seen the last of us.

His action, however, placed me in a most awkward position; but, recognising that the situation was hopeless, and that a further continuance of the fight meant a useless expenditure of life, I was therefore obliged to accept the signal, and hold up my red handkerchief, which I tied to my carbine. At first this was taken as defiance; but as I, who had the only effective rifle on that flank did not fire, the Boer leader rode in from his men, shouted to me to surrender, and I surrendered. Our loss was 2nd Lieut. Craigie-Halkett and Private Buckle killed; Dr. Kelbe mortally and six privates wounded. About half our small force.

We had, with about 20 effective rifles on an untenable position, to face 150 of the enemy, holding on our left flank a kopje which thoroughly commanded the inside of our small defence.

I must say, that I was surprised at the generous behaviour of the Boers when once we had stopped fighting, each man offering his water-bottle and bread eagerly to our parched men.

They ordered us to move on at once, and towards the river, so that we might drink, and poisonous stagnant water it appeared to be. I was allowed to leave behind two excellent fellows, Private Clark, of Kitchener's Horse, and Private Finucane, of the Hampshire Regiment, to bury our dead and bring on the wounded in ambulances brought up by the Boers. We then walked some eight miles to a farm—Winterspruit—where we were joined by Lieut. Horne and some 30 other prisoners taken between Waterval Drift and Jacobsdal. The enemy meant to cram us into two rooms for the night,

Digitized by Google

but on my word being given that we would not attempt to escape, we were allowed to lie on the ground outside. I held up poor Kelbe for some hours, but thanks to an urgent remonstrance, Dr. Tubner, a German surgeon and an excellent fellow, was sent for, and in time arrived, and drove poor Kelbe to the Koffyfontein hospital.

The next morning, having breakfasted off a supply of our own biscuit, we marched into Koffyfontein, where we filed into the gaol, and in ten minutes I was all but asleep, face on haversack, but was then told that I was wanted. Horne and I were led through a door in the gaol, and found ourselves in a comfortable little parlour, where the Town Provost was. He most civilly had a bottle of beer for each of us, and then handed us over to the gaoler, Mr. Bailey, an old K.D.G., who, with his good wife, gave us a comfortable lunch.

The next day or so we heard a good deal of heavy firing, and were accordingly hurried on, in the most cruel of wagons, and always over rough ground, the next night being spent at Fauresmith, where another gaol awaited us; but after a short time Horne and I were put into a house, which was being built for the gaoler. Here we were indeed refreshed by a large basket of grapes, brought to us by an English girl, whose brother had to fight on commando, but whose old father saved himself from fighting against us by offering himself as an escort for prisoners. The next night we were hustled on again, and in passing through Jagersfontein were allowed to be entertained by the diamond miners for half an hour with biscuits and whisky and soda, and excellent they were!

A great deal of heavy firing could be heard, and we hoped our Cavalry might appear on the scene, but no such luck, and, on the other hand, we were not allowed to stop till we got to Edenburg, a station on the railway south of Bloemfontein. Hence in a couple of hours we

Digitized by Google

were sent on by train to Bloemfontein, where we arrived in the evening, 19th February, the men being sent to gaol, but Horne and I were driven to Grey College, where we were placed on parole, and lived in luxury in the house of the kind Dr. and Mrs. Leith, he being the head professor there, and a real good Scotchman. As I had not undressed for eight days, the delights of a warm bath, clean night shirt, and a spring bed is not to be easily forgotten.

The next evening we were forwarded by train to Pretoria, and arrived the following day at 8 p.m., our men prisoners having increased to at least 100. Here also our escort were right good fellows. One, Elfers, a Swede, whose brother was a bookseller, gave me half-a-dozen first-class novels, which I and my fellow prisoners enjoyed much. I may mention that at Fauresmith Dr. Keyes, a real nice fellow, gave me a razor, and Dawson, who had been an officer in our service, a toothbrush.

At Pretoria, Horne and I had to walk from the train through a dense crowd of fashionable Pretorians, while our trainful of prisoners in loud tones sang, to the greatest annoyance of the assembly, "God Save the Queen." The train took the men on to Waterval, twelve miles out; we had a walk of a mile to the Staats Model School, and Horne did not forget to carry a bottle of whisky in his great-coat pocket, which had been given us with many cigarettes by the Mining Superintendents as we passed Vereeniging.

The Model School, a rectangular one-storied red brick building, about 70 yards long, was surrounded by an iron paling, outside which at every 20 yards a fully-armed Zarp or policeman stood. He was always spoken of as a Zarp, although the letters on his shoulder only stood for Zud African Republiek Polis. The School contained about 100 officers, mostly brought in from Stormberg,

Digitized by Google

Nicholson's Nek, Tugela, and some civilians, among whom were the Rev. Hoffmeyer, and the defender of Kuruman, the Magistrate Hilliard, both very able and excellent fellows. And now began a life of weary despondency, which was to last me 3½ months. The climate was distinctly hot at this time, so most of the day was spent on chairs in the front and back verandahs reading books. Some of us managed to get exercise by playing fives, otherwise we usually waited till after tea, and then there was a continuous stream of walkers round the building—nine times round to the mile. The building was divided into about 20 rooms, the largest being used as a dining room, the remainder as dormitories, the school gymnasium being used as a storeroom. The room next to mine had 14 fellows in it, mine eight, and at one time for 17 days we had Haldane of the Gordons, Le Mesurier of the Dublin Fusiliers, and Brockie, Imperial Light Horse, lying under the boards of the floor previous to their escape, and many were the loaves of bread and candles sneaked under my coat to pass down to them during the quietness of the meal time. Only six former inhabitants of our room knew their whereabouts, as the greatest secrecy was necessary with these Zarps everlastingly listening and staring into the building a few yards off. The account of their escape I have seen in a book written by Haldane. We at this time daily read accounts of hastily-left food being found in empty houses, and eventually of the escaped men being re-captured and shot. Some men spent the hot days illustrating the walls, and most perfect maps, 20 feet by 10 feet, were painted by Holford, a gunner, on his room walls. These were afterwards varnished over and carefully preserved by the Boers, but they expended whitewash, bought at our expense, on excellent caricatures painted by Frankland, Dublin Fusiliers; one being

Digitized by Google

"Oom Paul going to Restore Courage to his Burghers," when he went Bloemfontein way, and another, "Oom Paul's Return." The old man, running hard, trousers halfway up to his knees, Bible, umbrella, top hat, flying loose, and, after him, an excellent picture of Lord Roberts, with drawn sword, in his usual kit of khaki, and moving 40 miles an hour.

They allowed us as food daily, ½ lb. of trek ox, 1 lb. of bread, and a small quantity of coffee, sugar and salt, but we did very fairly, as a certain shopman, Bosscher, was allowed to attend to our wants, and his foreman, Bennett, an Englishman, obtained anything we put down for, but naturally at three times the value. We had a mess committee, and a hard and thankless job they had of it, especially as it entailed keeping a shop. We suffered from no internal rules beyond roll call at 10 a.m. and 5 p.m., and were not allowed outside the building after 8 p.m., and at the afternoon hour were allowed to buy, at a "tikky" per copy, the *Volkstem*, or daily liar, half Dutch and half English, the latter side certainly containing the daily depressing news of English slaughter and defeat. About this hour the inhabitants of Pretoria made our two bounding roads their fashionable walk, just to get a sniff of British prisoner air.

We could afford to smile at the news the *Volkstem* contained, as we knew regularly by Kruger's private telegrams the very latest news, the receipt of them meaning health and refreshment to these hundred odd men longing for better days. I may add that we were allowed about 20 privates from Waterval to act as servants.

When word was passed that the "Dog" man had walked past, we did not rest till in possession of the latest news. The "Dog" man was a Mr. Pattison, the head of the Telegraph Department, and I need hardly

Digitized by Google

say an Englishman, who was always accompanied by a large mastiff. His friend, a Mr. Cullingworth, also an elderly Britisher, lived in a house opposite the end of the school. Besides his wife there were two Miss Cullingworths, and also a little girl and two boys. The two elder daughters had been taught to flag-wag most correctly, and on receipt of the latest messages these girls got in touch with our look-out man, usually Bonham, Essex Regiment, when, stationed about 15 feet back in their own hall, the small children acting as scouts in front, they sent over the usual two or three messages. This was a dangerous operation, as they were suspected though never caught by the police, but poor old Pattison and Cullingworth were in the end commandeered, and equipped and sent to Kroonstad, where in attempting to escape they were caught by an outlying picquet and sentenced to be shot, but were saved by Joubert and sent to prison at Pretoria, where they were released on June 4th, and where they afterwards were employed in a civil capacity and spent their time arresting old friends. Men who fell sick went into Bourke's hospital next door. Bourke is an Irishman of means, and was forced to find and keep up this hospital or go on commando and fight his countrymen. The hospital was an excellent one, some of the Boer Generals' wives and daughters acting as the kindest of Sisters. Of the doctors, however, Dr. Veale behaved very badly to our men at Waterval, and was forced to leave the country after June 4th.

The prisoners were under the jurisdiction of a committee, Reitz, Kruger's private secretary, being the chief, but we were immediately under the control of Commandant Oppeman, a thorough scoundrel, who usually walked about with a sjambock, so that he might look, to outsiders, as if he used it pretty freely when amongst us. His assistant, Dr. Gunning, was a fairly

Digitized by Google

decent little fellow, who, I fancy to suit his feelings, ran with the hare and hunted with the hounds.

Of course there were rumours of conspiracy amongst us to break out, and, with the assistance of British townspeople, to seize arms and plant ourselves in one of the forts, or take a train and run to Lorenzo Marques; but the plans when submitted to a board of senior officers were invariably found to be worthless, and some of us did not like the idea of giving the Waterval prisoners the slip. However, when Churchill escaped, good care was taken of us by increased sentries, with an outer line of Kaffir police; at length, what with the supposed escape of Haldane and Co., and the rumour of townspeople assisting in a conspiracy, the order came for us to be moved to the "Bird Cage," a long, corrugated iron shed situated on the slope of a kopje north of the town, which had been built to hold the officers of the Ladysmith garrison when it should have fallen!

Our Sunday service was originally held by a disgrace-to-the-Church, the Rev. Godfrey, who seized the opportunity of Churchill's escape to write and tell us that he could not hold service for the companions of men who broke their parole. I must say that had we been given parole to walk up and down outside our palings it would have been much valued, but no offer of parole had ever been suggested by the Boers. About March 14th, to the delight of the poor fellows under the floor, who succeeded in making good their escape that night, we were told to turn out and move off to the Bird Cage; so some marched in fours and were well guarded, while the remainder of us drove in victorias, the cab of the country, accompanied by a strong escort. The Bird Cage stands well above the town, and from it there is a good view of the valley in which Pretoria lies. The view stretches some ten miles west, Mafeking way, and includes three of the

Digitized by Google

fairly-modern forts which defend Pretoria. The Cage itself is a corrugated iron house, 100 yards long, of one story, and consists of an unboarded sleeping-room, which held 140 of us, a bed being provided for each, these beds being placed in four long rows, with a space of half a yard between each, or rather the breadth of the chair each of us was allowed. At this end of the building, but outside, were the four fairly good bath-rooms we were allowed; at the other side of the bedroom was an equally large dining-room, containing four long rows of plank tables and forms, and beyond a small kitchen and office of the mess committee.

Fifty yards clear round the house was a barbed wire entanglement, five yards broad, and six feet high, and outside again a sentry at every thirty yards. Just inside, and twenty feet high, was a row of electric lights, and inside again, after a space of two yards, was a wall of chicken-run wire, about twelve feet high, and hooked to wooden beams underground. The entrance was by double gates, over a space six feet broad, and held by two sentries.

The Commandant here was Westerling, a businesslike man, who was very fair in his treatment of us throughout.

The weather was still fairly hot, and the dense swarms of locusts sometimes blackened the sky for miles and quite obstructed our view. We most of us sat on particular spots and read, when a book or paper was obtainable. My particular spot faced Mafeking way, whither I always had a longing gaze for B.P.'s troops. Each day had its cricket match—Eton *v.* the World, or Mounted *v.* Unmounted, played with a pickaxe handle and soft ball, the space not being large enough for anything else. Once we had some excellent sports, which were made amusing by our bookey, Haig of the Inni-

Digitized by Google

skillings. At 4.30 p.m., immediately after tea, everyone walked round the path we had made for the general lounge until dinner, or till our daily *Volkstem* arrived.

Chess also was much played, and Duhan, of Kitchener's Horse, acquired great fame, as he could beat the next two best on different games when blindfolded, or else six unblindfolded; but then he had made a dead heat of it in the English Midland Counties Chess Tournament. After dinner many took to "patience" or whist, bridge, etc.; but one long table was crowded with six roulette tables, worked by one roulette board in the centre, stakes unlimited, and this naturally was not quite pleasant to the senior men, if only for the noise it caused. However, at 9 o'clock the electric house light went out, but only to be replaced by the candle each man produced.

At first snakes were plentiful, and at the sight of one there was usually a crowded rush to see him end his days.

One attempt to escape was made by four men; each one lay in a selected spot by the chicken-run wire about 11 o'clock one night. But the moment the wire connecting the surrounding lights was cut by their accomplice, a heavy fire was opened by the sentries, which was the signal for every guard who was comfortably in bed to jump out and rush with lamps to different stations round the enclosure. This attempt to escape was unsuccessful, and no further attempt was made, as it was quite recognised as hopeless. We all knew that a combined effort would make us masters of the guard, but the outlying distant commandos and the distance of our forces rendered that way of escape impossible.

Once or twice bullets whistled by our heads, just

Digitized by Google

playful games of odd Boers returning to the town after a little rifle practice at a kopje near us; but this became rather warm one day, when the bullets came unpleasantly close to their own sentries, and afterwards nothing of this sort was allowed on our kopje. This meant also no more telegrams. The Sunday before, the two Miss Cullingworths had climbed up to the top of a near kopje, and as the weather was hot, it was natural that their handkerchiefs should be pulled out to fan themselves. We apparently looked anywhere but in their direction, but our look-out men read to our delight, "Mafeking relieved. Giving them fits at Kroonstad."

About this time Mr. Hoffmeyer was released, and an excellent Wesleyan clergyman undertook our services; we were naturally anxious to get information, and therefore the latter was afterwards accompanied to the gates, he and each of his guards being surrounded by at least half a dozen of us. Much interesting conversation was carried on with the guards, so that the latest news unwound from the parson might be emitted unheard by them.

One Sunday shortly afterwards, great was the attention paid to his sermon, when in it he imparted the pleasant news that Lord Roberts was coming along fast. The time at length came when someone heard a distant explosion. Of course it was one of our guns, and the informant was told to keep such nonsense to himself; but on May 29th a steady cannonade was carried on all day, and pleasant was the sound thereof. We imagined the fighting to be a few miles off, but it afterwards proved to be at Elandsfontein, nearly forty miles away. However, it was enough for old Kruger, for whilst at dinner that evening the American Consul, and Leigh Wood, the manager of the Bank of Natal, came up and

Digitized by Google

told us that the town was in a state of disorder, that looting was rife everywhere, that a mob was carrying goods from the Government stores, and that Kruger was at the station, and was just about to bolt eastwards, and that he had sacks of gold with him, which were lying about in the most unsafe way on the platform. It appears that he had commandeered all loose gold in the National Bank, and had then paid his officials by worthless cheques on the same bank. We were all most excited, cheered heartily, and sang our National Anthem, feeling that the good time was soon coming. The Consul and Mr. Leigh Wood then told our senior, Colonel Hunt, R.A., who had been badly wounded at the Tugela, that our men at Waterval could scarcely be restrained, as they were in such an excited state, and that the consequences might be very serious, and requested that we would send over twenty officers to steady them. This was agreed to, and twenty officers, whose Regiments were well represented there, went off to them at once, but with the agreement that neither officers or men were to be removed from their present quarters in the event of Lord Roberts taking Pretoria.

The following day anxiously was every pass and road watched for a sign of our advanced patrols, but day after day passed without encouragement, and our spirits rapidly fell. Then a Column was seen coming in Mafeking way, and this was the first of several strong Boer Columns which retreated into Pretoria after B. P. had been relieved.

However, it occurred to many of us that Roberts would not let the 4th of June go by without a fight, and delightfully were we aroused that morning by an undoubted cannonade. We found that a fieldwork had been thrown up during the night; that it was firing

Digitized by Google

rapidly, and that shells were bursting over it, and in an hour the range of kopjes in front reminded one of a Crystal Palace firework display. There had been serious meetings in the town to form a ladies commando, one of the principal duties being to guard the prisoners, but from this morning the idea was given up. Now firing was opened on the large fort in front, each lyddite shell struck it, and by the huge volume of smoke[1] and dust which arose, and by the heavy explosion, we thought the fort must have disappeared; but I rode up the following day, and can with a clear conscience say that a four-year-old boy would have scraped a hole with his spade in two minutes similar to any hole on the parapet, and the one shell which we had seen fall in the centre of the fort, and which drew forth our congratulations, had on inspection knocked off the top of a brick gate-post, and had broken one window.

Our shells were now passing over the range of kopjes, some bursting very unpleasantly on the edge of the town, and clearing out the inhabitants pretty fast; they were, however, intended for the station, and luckily just missed two trains full of British prisoners who were being brought in from Waterval and were passing eastwards. Our balloon was now a welcome sight in the sky, and frantic cheers greeted it.

All day and the day previous the town had been full of large columns of mounted men and guns going east, and at five o'clock that evening the supreme moment appeared to have arrived. The Western Valley was full of galloping Boers making north through Dasport, the northern outlet from Pretoria. Hundreds of shells were passing over the kopjes, but were falling short of the retreating Boers, and a heavy cannonade

[1] Called by the Kaffirs "Zum Bimeby"—Zum standing for the discharge, Bimeby for what came after.

Digitized by Google

was being directed on the main force retiring into Pretoria.

A well-mounted commando now rode past the Bird-cage, and we momentarily expected a shot or so into us as a keepsake; but a pleasant-spoken fellow called out "Your friends are near," and another "The old man is coming along." Towards dusk the fire ceased, and our eyes looked anxiously for our advancing troops, but night came, and we felt at any rate we should be "out" to-morrow. I felt a bit overwrought that night, after the exciting day we had undergone, and we certainly all went to bed feeling that something was wrong; however, the hour came when the usual snoring proclaimed that sleep had conquered, but not for long, for between one and two a.m. we were aroused by the Commandant who, walking past the foot of our beds, called out in a loud tone, "Get up, you have to march at three o'clock." After some five minutes consideration, I felt it would be no use saying "I won't," so I got up. Many fellows were already up, and the language was a bit boisterous. Outside were half a dozen wagons being packed with our sentries' tents, and a fair-sized commando sitting quietly on their horses, but looking a bit determined. About this time fellows began slipping out of the building to examine a rock, or a shrub or out-house, with a view to hiding till the remainder had marched and daylight had brought up our people, and several went to where there was a hole in the ceiling, but were greeted by jeers from a Colonel and half-a-dozen others, who had got up to it by climbing a plank, and had drawn the plank up afterwards. Yet still 120 remained angrily talking in the building, till McInerny, a huge Australian, threw his weight, both moral and physical, on the side of refusing to go; so it was settled that we should offer a passive resistance.

Digitized by Google

The Commandant now came in to see that we were all up, but he no sooner got in than he was made a prisoner by McInerny; and shortly afterwards his Adjutant came to seek the Commandant, but he also shared the same fate. The commando outside now began to consider sending an armed party into the building, but by this time some serious conversation had been carried on. The Commandant admitted the promise made on the 29th not to remove us, and eventually he was released on parole to go out and square the matter with the commando leader, our message being, that they might shoot if they liked, but we would not go. This he did, and after some strong language, to our relief the commando moved off; but it afterwards turned out that Hutton's Mounted Infantry and some Cavalry were working north, and the commando feared being cut off. We then to a man turned in, and in the early morning were somewhat surprised to find ourselves still there. As soon as we were up, we occupied ourselves trying to decide whether the distant masses were troops or cattle, when someone exclaimed, "Why, here are two fellows riding up in khaki!" Then followed a cry of "No, they are burghers!" and we gnashed our teeth. Then loud shouts of "Khaki, khaki!" followed by a rush to the fence and frantic cheers, for there was Marlborough and Churchill, attended by the Commissioner of Pretoria police. Then every sentry ran to the guard-house followed by a cheering, frantic mob, and in two minutes a Union Jack was flying, every sentry a prisoner, and shortly after a guard of servants was on duty over our prisoners, and we were off down town to greet Lord Roberts, and see his troops march in; and so ended an experience which no one need wish to share.

At Waterval, the Commandant gave our men to understand that they were to be sent into Pretoria, to

Digitized by Google

be handed over to Lord Roberts, and great was the rush to two empty cattle trains that came in; but the officers sent over from the "Bird Cage" decided that those who had been in longest should be the first released; and, therefore, the men of the Royal Irish Fusiliers and Gloucester Regiments were directed to fill these trains, and off they went to find themselves being hustled eastwards, and our lyddite shells fall pretty adjacent when passing through Pretoria Station. Those poor fellows were afterwards released at Nooitgedacht, but not until three months later.

The following day our Cavalry were in sight of Waterval, and the Greys were soon mixed up and shaking hands heartily with the poor men, but not for long; two Boer shells landed in their enclosure, and, I heard, killed and wounded 15 men; and then a succession of shells began falling among our 4,000 unarmed men, who were forced to leg it, many of them in a deplorable state of weakness, the twelve miles into Pretoria.

We then became the Prisoners' Division under Colonel Hunt, R.A., and in a few days, those who were fit enough, were armed with Martini's and black powder cartridges, and were sent off to guard the railway at certain places. At one of these, named Honing's Spruit, poor Hobbs was killed—rather bad luck after undergoing seven months' imprisonment.

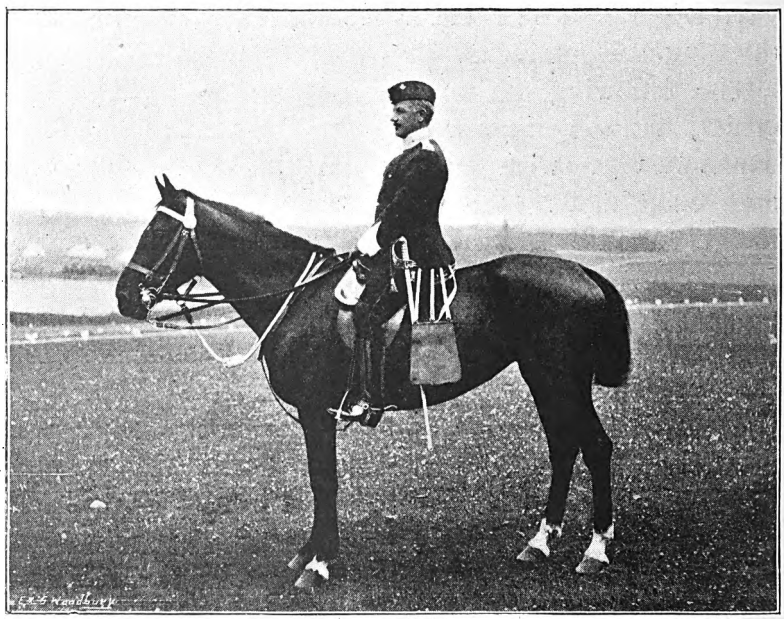
I was Provost Marshal, and therefore remained till the men had left. I now found Ian Hamilton's Division just off to Heidelberg, and he kindly allowed me to apply to leave with him, but the application was refused, so I took up the billet of Registrar, and lived in a commandeered house in Pretoria.

I was doing this work, and acting Crown Prosecutor, when an accident befel me. My cob fell in a gallop,

Digitized by Google

and I was insensible for ten days, coming to myself in a condition necessitating my shortly afterwards being invalided home.

The only other prisoner of the Oxfordshire was Bugler Adams, who on our release acted as servant to me.



LIEUT.-COLONEL F. J. EVELEGH.

Digitized by Google

WITH BOER PRISONERS TO CEYLON.

By Captain W. C. Hunter.

Having obtained permission to go out to South Africa on the express condition that I returned to India by the time my leave expired, I was compelled, about five weeks before that date, reluctantly enough, to send in an application for a passage to India. A reply came in due course, ordering me to report myself at Cape Town in ten days' time. I did so, and was informed that I had been detailed to do duty with a batch of prisoners of war proceeding to Ceylon on board the transport *Ranee.* She was lying at Simonstown and might start any day; I therefore went down by train the same afternoon, arriving there in a storm of wind and rain. I was anxious to get on board at once, but the harbour boatmen declared it was too rough to go out to the ship that evening, and absolutely refused to do so; I was therefore forced to spend the night at an hotel, hoping that the *Ranee* would not sail in the meantime.

Next morning I went on board and found that, after all, there had been no reason for my haste, as there were only 200 prisoners on the ship so far, and the number was to be made up to 600 before we could start.

The escort consisted of 6 officers, including myself, 1 civil surgeon, and 110 N.C.O.'s and men. The latter were representatives of 52 different Corps, and included 4 or 5 men from the 43rd, a Life Guardsman, several Foot Guardsmen and men belonging to the Imperial Yeomanry, various Colonial Corps, etc., rather a mixed lot altogether.

Digitized by Google

The officers told me they had already been on board a week, and were heartily sick of hanging about and receiving contradictory orders.

They had twice been round to Cape Town, and on arrival had been promptly ordered back to Simon's Bay again. "Doubling" the Cape of Good Hope in stormy weather, they declared, was not a pleasant experience, and loafing in Simon's Bay was rather worse.

The prisoners, whom they had embarked in driblets during the week, were, I think, men who had spent a considerable time in the prisoner camps at Cape Town and Simonstown; in fact, one of them, an Englishman by the way, informed me that he had been taken at Dundee or Glencoe, I forget which, at the very beginning of the war, and had been at Green Point Camp ever since.

The day after my arrival, orders came for us to go round to Cape Town again to embark 400 prisoners. We started as soon as steam was up, arriving the same evening, and the following morning went alongside the docks at Cape Town.

Presently a train came in, crowded with Boers. Their escort detrained first and formed up, lining both sides of the docks between the train and the ship. The prisoners were then got out, and came wandering along looking very bewildered, and reminding one rather of cattle being driven into pens.

These particular men had surrendered with Prinsloo, and had been brought straight down country. They were of all ages, some being quite old men who could hardly get along, loaded up with their roll of bedding and other goods, and others were quite young. In fact, our youngest prisoner was twelve years old. He and his father had wept so bitterly when it was proposed to leave the boy behind, that he was eventually allowed

Digitized by Google

to accompany us. The very old men were subsequently weeded out and kept back, and are probably still at Green Point.

The prisoners, on first arrival, presented an exceedingly ragged appearance, having been in the field, I suppose, for months. Enormous quantities of clothing and games had, however, been sent on board by "Prisoner of War Benevolent Societies" (I do not know what their correct title is), and very soon our Boers turned out looking quite respectable, and as soon as sail baths were rigged, fairly clean.

As they filed on board, the prisoners were told off into messes like soldiers on a troopship; in fact, everything was carried out during the voyage as on a troopship. The escort occupied the aft, and the Boers the forward troop deck, the soldiers not being allowed to mix with the prisoners at all.

We were informed by the Staff at Cape Town that the foreign element among the prisoners included several noted bad characters, and that we might expect some trouble during the voyage. We were also told that in the event of any serious disturbance, the sentries were to have no hesitation in firing on the prisoners. Our commanding officer, Brooke, a captain in the King's Own Yorkshire Light Infantry, issued a ships' order, warning the Boers what their fate would be in case of mutinous behaviour, and this apparently had an excellent effect, as with the exception of a few "minor offences," the behaviour of the prisoners was very good.

After the embarkation was completed, we expected to be allowed to proceed on our voyage, but much to our disgust the ship was again ordered round to Simonstown, where a government clerk of some sort came on board in order to make out elaborate nominal rolls of

Digitized by Google

the prisoners, giving their names, ages, birthplaces, the commandos to which they had belonged when taken, and their places of residence. This occupied a long time, as the genuine old Boer farmer either is or pretends to be a particularly thickheaded individual when any information is required of him.

Our constantly putting into Simon's Bay did not tend to make us popular with the officers of H.M.S. *Doris*, the flagship of the station, as, in addition to keeping the searchlight on us the whole night long, the officer of the watch had to patrol round our ship as a further precaution against the escape of any of the prisoners. Several of the latter had been noted "tunnelers" when in the Boer camps at Green Point and Simonstown. I imagine the naval officers were as thankful as we were when, on August 14th, we finally started for Ceylon.

Luckily the weather during the first week was fine, which gave everybody a chance of settling down, but even so, in spite of there being hardly any motion, some of the Boers were very seasick, and lay about the decks looking supremely miserable, which caused great amusement to those who remained fit.

The escort was divided into two Companies of 55 men each, under an officer, the prisoners being similarly divided into two batches, one officer, two British N.C.O.'s, and an interpreter being told off to each batch. At first I was in charge of one batch, but about four days after starting Brooke had a bad attack of malaria, which lasted practically the rest of the voyage, so I, being the next senior, took over the command from him.

The daily routine was as follows:—Orderly Room at 9.30 a.m., parade at 10 a.m. for the escort, and inspection of the troop and prisoners' decks by the Captain of the ship and C.O., and guard-mounting at 4.30 p.m. Roll call for the prisoners took place at

Digitized by Google

5 p.m., and they were turned down below at 8 p.m. for the night. An Orderly Officer was detailed daily, who carried out the usual duties and visited the prisoners' decks at the breakfast and dinner hours to find out if they had any complaints.

Orderly Room was rather an amusing function, owing to our very zealous acting Sergeant-Major, who insisted on manœuvring the Boers into the room as if they were soldiers, after carefully looking them up and down and taking possession of their caps. The usual offence was refusing to obey the Sergeants in charge of the prisoners' decks when they ordered the floors and tables to be scrubbed for inspection; three or four days' cells were generally awarded for this crime. Occasionally one of the foreigners and a Boer had a quarrel which they insisted on having settled in Orderly Room, and as it was seldom possible to get to the bottom of the matter, the only thing to be done was to warn both parties that if such a thing occurred again they would find themselves in the cells.

The prisoners' decks were kept wonderfully clean, principally owing to the exertions of the British Sergeants in charge, who kept the orderly men of the different messes hard at work scrubbing between the breakfast hour and inspection at 10 a.m. If the Boers had been left to themselves, I do not suppose they would have taken the trouble to clean their decks the whole voyage.

Guard-mounting was rather more of an imposing function than is usual on a troopship. The men paraded in drill order, 18 strong, and were marched off to their guard with fixed bayonets and magazines charged. When at sea, there were six sentries on duty at a time; and I imagine the Boers looked upon the formal relieving of the sentries with arms at the "port," etc., with a certain amount of contempt. "If any prisoner

Digitized by Google

tries to escape, shoot him," was one of the orders which no sentry ever omitted to give over correctly.

A number of the burghers were in a very bad state of health, suffering continually from malaria and other kinds of fever; in fact, some of them were admitted into hospital as soon as they came on board, where they spent the whole voyage. About ten days after leaving Simonstown one of them died and was buried at sea. The old burgher, who conducted the daily services, officiated at the funeral. The Captain of the ship duly ordered the engines to be stopped, when he considered it probable that the body would be sent overboard, calculating the time in accordance with the English burial service. Unfortunately the minister was a very eloquent man and began an extempore prayer after closing his book, which continued at least 20 minutes. All this time the ship was motionless, and the Captain fuming on the bridge lamenting his spoilt day's run. We buried another man a few days later, but this time the ship was not stopped till the prayer was actually ended.

There were about 50 foreigners among the prisoners, including four or five Englishmen, any number of Germans, Austrians, and French, and also a couple of Americans. It was curious to note how entirely apart the Boers and Freestaters kept themselves from these foreigners. They never seemed to associate in any way, and the foreigners appeared to find much amusement in chaffing the Boers, whilst the latter simply ignored them. The foreigners were extraordinary linguists. They spoke to each other in English, French, German and Dutch, and there was a regular scramble for the English magazines, which we gave them from time to time. We should have had a dull voyage had it not been for these men. They played all kinds of games in the afternoons, some of which were most amusing to watch, and every even-

Digitized by Google

ing, after they had been counted down, they collected together and sang till "lights out" at 8 p.m. English and French music-hall songs, German Volkslieder and airs out of operas, all seemed familiar to them, and they sang them wonderfully well. We used to sit and listen to them before dinner almost every evening, and frequently asked for some particular song, which they always seemed to know, and started at once. The only lady on board, the wife of one of the officers, on one occasion asked for "Soldiers of the Queen" and "Rule Britannia," but an English prisoner, called Glen, who took the lead in everything, answered quite seriously that none of them knew those songs.

Some of the Germans were most unsoldierly-looking people, being more like German professors than anything else; but we were informed that they were great artillerists, and one man in particular was popularly believed to have an intimate knowledge of every form of gun in use at the present time. If that was really the case, it was about time to deport him to Ceylon.

The younger Boers and Freestaters had their games in the afternoons also, which consisted of wrestling and various feats of strength. The older men sat apart, smoking, and looking surly and bored with the whole proceedings.

The real burghers were very pious, holding daily services, morning and evening; and during the rest of the day many of them might be seen with Bibles in their hands. Eventually we had to allow them the use of the forecastle deck for their devotions, as the foreigners apparently scoffed at their religion, and continued their games and singing during the services, which the older men resented deeply. As the whole 600 were on one deck, it was impossible to order the majority to remain quiet for an hour or so whilst the

Digitized by Google

few prayed, so the only thing to be done was to find another place for the services. We heard from our interpreters that the two deaths on board had seriously alarmed the Boers, and served to recall to their minds all the tales of British atrocities they had ever heard. Some of the very ignorant ones actually believed that our excellent and hardworking doctor had received a hint from a brutal government to kill off prisoners of war, as being useless and expensive articles.

We had an inspection of the Boers' kits a few days after starting, and found a large number of articles captured from the British among them. Soldiers' belts, great-coats, straps, "coats warm British," and two large mail bags, labelled London to Pretoria, were some of the things, all of which we confiscated. One man was in possession of a complete Field Artilleryman's kit.

The only time that the prisoners could really have given trouble was at night. If a few of them had combined and rushed the three sentries nearest to their quarters, the remainder could have run aft and easily overpowered the sleeping guard and seized their rifles. To avoid this, we had a strong electric light on the prisoners' part of the ship all night, so that the sentries could see any attempt at collecting together on their part, which, of course, they had orders to stop at once. As an additional precaution, our interpreters kept constantly moving about among the prisoners during the day, listening to their conversation, and breaking up any suspicious-looking groups. On the Queen of Holland's birthday several Boers and Freestaters tried to make inflammatory speeches, but were promptly stopped by the interpreters, and the offenders duly appeared in Orderly Room next morning.

When nearing the Equator, our friend Mr. Glen and his clique asked leave for Father Neptune and his Court

Digitized by Google

to board the ship and celebrate the occasion in the usual manner, by shaving and baptizing those who had never previously crossed the Line. Permission was given, and they certainly got up a very good entertainment. The ship's purser provided the regulation costumes, and a large sail-bath was prepared. Glen represented Neptune, and the part of his wife was taken by a little Frenchman. Most of the younger men took the shaving and ducking in good part, but the older ones did not appear to appreciate the joke. After about an hour or so, seeing that the relations between the burghers and foreigners were becoming rather strained, we thought it more prudent to stop the entertainment.

Everybody on board was very thankful when, on the 17th day after leaving Simonstown, we steamed into Colombo Harbour. The officers and men of the escort had nothing to complain of during the voyage in the way of accommodation, but the Boers were very crowded. It was almost impossible to thread one's way through them when they were all on deck; but after all, they could hardly expect to travel luxuriously.

The disembarking Staff Officer came off shortly after we had anchored, and informed us that the first 300 prisoners were to disembark the following morning at 4 a.m., and the remainder the morning after at the same hour. We were thus tied to the ship for three more days; but, luckily, there was no prisoners' correspondence to be waded through and censored, as there had been during the days we stayed at Cape Town and Simonstown. Some of those letters by-the-bye were rather amusing reading. We officers took over the English, French, and German ones, and letters in any other language—such as Italian, Spanish, or Russian—had to be sent to the Intelligence Department at Cape Town. Nearly all the letters I read contained some flattering

Digitized by Google

allusion to the kindness of the officers; hoping in this way, I presume, to ensure the writers having an easy time during the voyage. One of the letters I read was an exceedingly long one from a German to his ladylove, and was nearly all in poetry. It must have taken him days to compose.

Whilst we were lying in Colombo Harbour, waiting to disembark the prisoners, the sentries were doubled, and two harbour police boats patrolled round the ship night and day. This latter would appear to have been a very necessary precaution, as when the next ship carrying prisoners of war arrived, one of the prisoners, an Englishman, succeeded in evading the sentries' vigilance and jumped overboard during the night. He made for the first boat he saw, not being able to swim as far as the shore, which, unfortunately for him, turned out to be one of the police boats. He told some story about being a sailor and wishing to get on shore for the night; the police, however, had seen the whole occurrence and took him straight back to his ship. Luckily there was no excitement of that description on board the *Ranee*.

At 3.15 a.m., on September 12th, the escort fell in for the disembarkation of the first batch of 300. Four lighters were alongside, and an officer with a few men were placed in each as a guard. The prisoners were then called up on deck one by one, and passed over the side, each man's name being checked on a nominal roll as he stepped out on to the ladder. It was a pitch dark night, and we were anxious to get them on shore and handed over without losing any on the way. If by any chance a prisoner became separated from his father or brother or particular friend there was great lamentation, and we found it difficult to make him believe that he would meet his relative again on shore. A detachment of the 60th Rifles, lately arrived from South Africa, was

Digitized by Google

waiting on the landing-stage, which was lighted by flaring torches placed every few yards.

The disembarkation occupied about two hours, as the lighters had to make several journeys each; but by 6 a.m. all the prisoners were entrained and their rations for the day served out, and shortly afterwards we saw our first 300 Boers steam away from the docks with an escort of the 60th Rifles on the train, *en route* for Diyatelawa.

The disembarkation of the remainder was carried out in the same manner the following night, and I think we were all very glad and somewhat relieved to hand over our 598 prisoners (two having died at sea), and to feel that our responsibility was now ended.

Some of the prisoners seemed to be quite sorry to see the last of us, and bade us good-bye in Dutch as they went down the ladder, and thanked us for the treatment they had received. One polite Frenchman went so far as to write to one of the officers from Diyatelawa camp. After going into ecstasies over the beauty of the scenery on the way up country, he ended by saying that "if ever you find yourself in the same predicament that I have had the misfortune to be in, you may be sure that I will do my best to make your captivity as little irksome as possible, in return for your kindness during our voyage on the *Ranee*."

Digitized by Google

WITH A MOUNTED INFANTRY BATTALION IN SOUTH AFRICA.

By Captain H. L. Ruck Keene.

Rumours of war in South Africa were rife when the Regiment, having finished its Irish tour (to the regret, I fancy, of most of us), moved across to Devonport, early in September, 1899. Little did we think that the event was to come off so soon, and hardly had I settled down to a quiet life on detachment at Bull Point, when, on October 4th, matters came to a head as far as I was concerned, a War Office letter arriving on that day informing me that I had been selected for the post of Adjutant of Mounted Infantry, in the event of a Cavalry Division being sent to South Africa. This "in the event of" sounds funny to us now, but the same wise folk who thought that 30,000 odd troops would be sufficient to quell all trouble in that country, were also apparently of opinion that it was quite an off-chance whether a Cavalry Division would ever be required—and then, two Battalions of Mounted Infantry were considered, with the addition of the small number already in South Africa, enough to meet any contingencies! We learnt better afterwards, to our cost—but of this it is neither my business nor desire to speak. Anyhow, I had got my billet; just the billet I should have chosen of all others, and was the envy of the whole Regiment, for at that time there was supposed to be little, if any, chance of the 43rd being wanted. I had very little opportunity of getting the necessary kit together, for on October 8th, the 1st and 2nd Battalions of

Digitized by Google

Mounted Infantry mobilized at Aldershot; the former under Lieut.-Colonel Alderson, the latter under Lieut.-Colonel Tudway.

The 2nd Battalion, of which I was Adjutant, consisted of the Northern Company, commanded by Captain Hart, East Surrey Regiment; the Western Company under Captain Brooke, Yorkshire Light Infantry; the Scottish Company under Captain De Lisle, Durham Light Infantry; and the Eastern Company under Captain Atkins, Wiltshire Regiment. Each Company was composed of four different sections, belonging to four different Regiments, and commanded by Subalterns belonging to these Regiments; thus the Battalion represented sixteen different Regiments. In addition to the above there were two machine-gun detachments, each having two Maxims, and commanded by a Subaltern. These Maxims were worked on tripods, and the whole gear carried on pack animals—a system useful for Infantry but entirely unsuited for M. I. work, as the pack-horses were quite unable to keep up with the rest of us when we were doing rapid movements. Consequently it can be imagined that, at first, confusion reigned supreme; and I was nearly driven mad by the preparation of documents, issuing of mobilization stores, etc., etc. However, I was extremely lucky in having two Riflemen as Sergeant-Major and Quartermaster-Sergeant — both belonging to the 4th Rifle Brigade; and it would be impossible to speak too highly of the way in which they worked throughout. Mansfield Clarke, also of the Rifle Brigade, came to act as Quartermaster, but most unfortunately was laid up, with scarlet fever I think, just before we sailed, and so was unable to accompany us.

In addition to my other troubles, ponies began to arrive from Ireland in great numbers and at all times

Digitized by Google

of the day and night, and arrangements had to be made for sending for them, and then for finding accommodation; this was particularly hard lines on us, as we were not to have the benefit of them in South Africa.

Another very real grievance was that when the Battalion was complete, more than half of the men were untrained; and of those who had, at one time or another, gone through a Mounted Infantry course, a great many were Reservists, and had forgotten all about their work. This was, of course, owing to the impossible system of training Mounted Infantry, of which I have written in a former CHRONICLE.

On October 22nd, the Staff and Northern and Western Companies embarked at Tilbury, on the good ship *Orient*, which also carried the Black Watch—a right good lot of fellows—many of them, alas! to be soon mowed down at Magersfontein. We had an excellent voyage out, but I began rather badly by getting my head broken against a sky-light while playing "Rugby football" with poor Freddie Tait, the celebrated golf champion (killed at Koodoosberg, after being badly wounded at Magersfontein). The ship was most comfortable, and the officers a capital lot; unfortunately, we had to have the yellow-flag flying all the way owing to some cases of scarlet-fever on board, and so could not land at St. Vincent, where we coaled and got news of the unfortunate affair of Nicholson's Nek. Cricket, concerts, and dinners, varied by inoculation, passed the time away until at 4 p.m., on November 13th, we made Table Bay.

The next day we got alongside the quay, and it seems funny now to think what a hurry we were in to disembark, a great many of us thinking, even at that time, that we should be too late for "the fun." All that

Digitized by Google

night we were busy unloading the ship, and sleeping where and when we could. Half a Battalion of the Black Watch left for De Aar at 10 p.m., and the other half at 3 a.m. the following morning. We entrained at 8 a.m., also *en route* for De Aar, which place we reached at 8 p.m. on the following day. Here there were immense quantities of stores, guarded only by the 2nd Yorkshire Light Infantry, the Black Watch, and two old 7-pr. M.L. guns—the whole commanded by General Wauchope; subsequently this garrison was reduced, and why the Boers never made a raid on the place no one could understand. The following morning we turned out of the train at 4 a.m., in a most ghastly dust storm, and then had a very busy morning moving up stores, pitching camp, etc. In the afternoon we drew 100 country-bred ponies from the Remount Department, and had terrible work with the little beggars, which were very timid, but, contrary to our expectations, showed little, if any, vice; these ponies were divided equally between the two Companies.

Next day we were up at 3.30 a.m., and had a mounted parade, which turned out a most discouraging affair—ponies all over the place, and half the men unable to ride. In the course of the show two ponies got loose and dashed off over the veldt; I pursued them for miles, and succeeded in catching one, the other, for all I know, is still at large. Later on we were moving our camp nearer to that of the Black Watch, when the General rode up and gave us orders to be ready to entrain at 12.30 p.m. for Hanover Road, where we were to hold an important bridge over the Seacow River. General Wauchope came in the same train, and went on to Naauwpoort, which he re-occupied with half a Battalion of Black Watch and half a Battalion 2nd Berkshire Regiment, not forgetting the two ancient guns, under

Digitized by Google

an unfortunate Gunner 2nd Lieutenant. We reached our destination very late at night, and were met by Captain Ottley and Lieut. Shepherd, of the 2nd Yorkshire Light Infantry, who had been guarding (?) the bridge over the Seacow with 40 men and about half that number of horses for the last fortnight.

Here again considerable thanks were due to the unenterprising nature of the average Boer; anybody else could have annihilated this small force and blown up the bridge with a very small amount of trouble. We detrained and bivouacked close to the station, sleeping in our great-coats—our first night of real discomfort.

The following morning we were up at 4 a.m., and shifted our bivouac to a farm about a mile off, inhabited by an old Dutchman, who I believe was loyal, though we had doubts about his son. Our bivouac was quite a nice one, plenty of good water, and some shady gum-trees, under which we slept in our Wolseley "flea-bags," and were fairly comfortable; we were also able to get fresh milk and eggs at the farm, while near the station an excellent Jew, Levigne, kept a store, where one could buy varieties of useful articles.

To-day the Colonel and Ottley went out on a long reconnaissance, while I rode over to the Yorkshire camp at the bridge, and went out a long way in company with a Rimington's Tiger; we saw no Boers, but about 14 springbok, which were wonderfully tame, and I longed to have a shot at them. The weather was extremely hot all day, but at night it blew a hurricane and rained in torrents, so that we rather sighed for a tent, our valises being very poor protection against weather of this sort.

The next day was taken up by more patrolling and reconnoitring work on the part of the Colonel, Ottley and Hart, and in the afternoon the Colonel was sent for

Digitized by Google

to De Aar for a consultation, leaving me in command, being senior officer. It blew very hard again to-night, rained in torrents, and there was a tremendous thunderstorm, with most vivid flashes of lightning, while, to add to all these delights, at 12.15 a.m. a boy turned up from the station with a wire from the G.O.C. De Aar, saying that he had heard on reliable authority that 2,000 Boers with 2 guns were advancing with a view to destroy the bridge! Cheerful news this! Sent down to Ottley at the bridge, and slept very little for the remainder of the night.

In the early morning we had coffee with the Dutch family at the farm, the old man very agreeable, but unable to speak a word of English. I was pleased to notice pictures of the Queen and the Prince and Princess of Wales hanging up in his parlour.

This morning I was all ready to do a bolt, though I meant to have a shot or two first, but the 2,000 Boers fortunately did not turn up, and I sent Brooke out reconnoitring towards Colesberg. Later on I went down to the station and had a short talk with General French, who had just come round from Natal, and was on his way to Naauwpoort, and soon after this I received orders to entrain in the afternoon for Naauwpoort, our C.O. coming along with more ponies. We left poor Ottley and his subaltern behind, bitterly bemoaning their fate, and reached Naauwpoort at 7.30 p.m., in pitch darkness. General French met us on the platform, and informed us that he wanted us out on reconnaissance at 3.30 a.m. next morning; our C.O. (not unnaturally) struck, and I am afraid the General was rather disgusted with us, still more so next day when he saw our men on parade, and realised how utterly unfit they were as yet for fighting. After unloading our ponies we blundered up in the dark to the place told off to us next to the

Digitized by Google

Berkshires, who looked after us most kindly, and we slept as we were.

On Wednesday, November 22nd (the following day), we were busy unloading and getting things ship-shape, and later I went down to the General's for orders, and had an excellent lunch with him and his Staff.

At 3 a.m. the following morning Hart went out with a reconnoitring party towards Arundel, where the Boers had a position, and at 4 o'clock the Colonel went with about sixty of our men by train in the same direction, the General with twenty-five of the 5th Lancers and half a Battalion Black Watch going in the same train; about thirty N.S. Wales Lancers, under Captain Cox, preceded Hart. I was left behind in command, and at 11 a.m. we got an alarm and turned out very quick, made the best of our way to a line of kopjes about five miles out on the Colesberg railway, and there took up a position to cover the retirement of the force which had gone out. After a long wait the train returned, and later our people, they having come into action at Arundel, with the result that two men were wounded, one, Corporal Thomas, in four places. As no ambulances had been taken, the wounded had to be left out, but later a hospital train was sent out, and the Doctor found that the Boers had treated our men most kindly. He had an interview with the Boer General Grobelaar, who allowed him to bring the wounded men back, but was very indignant at being told there were only two wounded, and pointed out several other places where he had seen men fall. I should add that a Cape policeman was also shot in the leg, but pluckily rode the whole way back to Naauwpoort. Corporal Thomas was subsequently sent home, recovering rapidly.

On the 24th we got our tents and were quite comfortable; Ottley's people joined us, and were attached to us.

Digitized by Google

The following day we had another "cheap excursion" to Arundel; this time the N.S. Wales Lancers and a few 5th Lancers went on early, while about 100 of us, with Ottley's men, some police and scouts, together with Captains Lawrence and Laycock of General French's staff, went later by train, Colonel Tudway in command of the whole force. The scouts were sent out a long way and got fired on, but there were no casualties, and having sent the train home early, we had a long hack home of about fourteen miles. Extract from my diary: "Pretty useless day—hate these railway excursions." After this quite a quiet time ensued.

On the 28th the 12th Lancers, under Lord Airlie, arrived, together with a battery of R.H.A.; this day we also sent out some of our people, and Cox, with his N.S. Wales Lancers, reconnoitring, but nothing resulted.

About this time things began to look serious, as far as our ponies were concerned, no fewer than 35 being in sick lines; poor brutes, they had been brought up from getting a scanty living on the veldt, and then put to hard work, with a lumping Infantryman sitting on an uncouth "howdah," hung round like a Christmas-tree with nose-bags, shoe-cases, wallets, etc., etc. Several died of paralysis of the spinal muscles, but the great majority of strangles.

On November 29th the New Zealand Mounted Rifles arrived, a most useful-looking body of men, and excellently mounted; the Suffolk Regiment also came to-day. Another patrol under the C.O. went out next day at 3 a.m., and returned at dusk, having done nothing, men and ponies quite tired out. Got orders for a similar show on the morrow, but mercifully it was counter-ordered.

November 28th.—The C.O., with 150 of our men, was sent off to-day to Rosmead to guard the line. I was

Digitized by Google

left behind, and in the evening got orders to send 25 men and an officer at 3 a.m. the following morning to Hart's Kopjes, on the way to Colesberg, while the General and Staff, with the N.S. Wales Lancers and two Companies of the Berkshire Regiment, were to follow by train at 4 a.m. The 12th Lancers had gone out this morning, and finding the country as far as Arundel clear of Boers, bivouacked there for the night. The proposed reconnaissance in force did not, however, come off, as the 12th Lancers were recalled and despatched to Orange River.

On Monday, December 4th, the Colonel and his party returned from Rosmead, not having come into contact with any of the enemy, though scares had been frequent.

December 5th.—The whole of our force, including the New Zealand Mounted Rifles, N.S. Wales Lancers, one Battery R.H.A., two Companies 2nd Berkshire Regiment, and the Suffolk Regiment, the whole commanded by Col. Watson, went for a route-march to a place called Valschfontein, about eight miles up the Colesberg Railway. We took all our transport, loaded as if for real business, having struck camp before we started. Got back to camp very late—the poor old M.I., always having the dirty jobs to do, had to act as whippers-in; and, as the Suffolks were only just fresh out from home and were still soft, our work was no sinecure. The Carabiniers arrived to-day, and we got orders for a move to Arundel to-morrow.

At 5 a.m. the following morning we started the Regimental Transport off; one wagon per Company, and one water-cart. We paraded at 10.45, strength just 200, and marched down to the station to entrain, but had to wait till 3 p.m. before we could get away.

We detrained at a place called Hartebeestfontein,

Digitized by Google

about five miles short of Arundel, and it was already beginning to get quite dark. However, we were not allowed to water our ponies, and had to advance, Colonel Porter, of the Carabiniers directing the operations. The Carabiniers found patrols in front and on the flanks, while we advanced slowly in an enormous long line—an absurd formation for Mounted Infantry. However, we at last reached Arundel without firing a shot, while one of the Cavalry patrols succeeded in collaring Grobelaar's Adjutant, one Muller, who was out shooting springbok. He expressed himself delighted to be captured, and made a present of the buck which he had shot to Colonel Porter, accompanying the gift with a neat speech. We then bivouacked on the veldt near the station, and had to put out two officers' picquets, the M.I. having to find them, of course; just as we had got our picketing lines down, we were ordered to shift back about a mile to a bridge dynamited by the Boers, where all the transport was stuck and unable to move any further. This was a bit trying, as we had been on the move all day, and it was now about 10 p.m. However, back we had to go, and then found the supplies were not there, so we went another mile further back, and here found we had yet another half mile to go. This was too much, so we stopped where we were, and tied our ponies up to the wire railway-fence. The Sergeant-Major and I then had to blunder back over the veldt in pitch darkness to where the Carabiniers were bivouacking; I woke up Colonel Porter, and received orders to turn out at 2.45 a.m. the following morning (regardless of the fact that at that hour it would be still pitch dark) and reconnoitre kopjes in front, which were known to be occupied by the enemy. As we had to draw our supplies, I managed to beg a little delay, the hour of our starting being altered to 4 a.m., and then blundered back to our bivouac,

Digitized by Google

which I reached at 11.30 p.m., and slept where I could.

By the way, I afterwards saw to-day's operations described in an English paper as "The Taking of Arundel;" the place really consisted of one large kopje, at the base of which were two small farms. I fear that, in spite of the large type in which the account was published, there will be no clasp to my medal for this affair!

I had a poor night of it, as we were up next morning at 2.30 a.m., and going back along the line for some distance we reached the spot where the train had dumped down the supplies the night before. After drawing food and forage we went out beyond Arundel, and reconnoitred various kopjes, taking up a position on our left front, and sending Ottley with some scouts on to a further line of kopjes in front, from which he got heavily fired on and retired. I had to gallop back about 4 miles to Colonel Porter, who sent the New Zealanders up to reinforce us, and then sent us on to take the kopjes, where the Boers had been who fired at Ottley. Fortunately for us these gentlemen retired to their main position, and we occupied the line of kopjes at a place called Sannah's Dam, the New Zealanders prolonging the line to the left. We got considerably fired at by the Boers at 2,000 yards, and we returned their fire now and then, once getting some pretty shooting at one of their patrols at about 1,500 yards, causing one of them to dismount hurriedly.

The Carabiniers with General French went out to the front and both flanks, and were fired at a good deal, and shelled, but they had no casualties; though at one time, a squadron retiring on the right flank got hung up by a wire fence, and were for a bit in a decidedly hot corner, the Boer shells dropping right in among them, and it seemed marvellous that no one was hit.

Digitized by Google

Later on we made our first acquaintance with a "pom-pom," the Boers loosing off as our ponies crossed an open space on their way to water at the Dam; but they made rotten shooting, and no damage was done.

We withdrew to Arundel at 5.30 p.m., having one Company out, which also retired at dark. I was uncommonly glad to get something to eat when we got back, and was not long in going to sleep, being dog-tired.

Next morning we had ample time for a decent wash and breakfast; but at 10 had to go out to our yesterday's position, relieving the New Zealanders. We spent an uninteresting day; the Boers fired at us a good deal with no result, while we held our fire. Watching through glasses, we saw a good many wagons going and coming constantly between Colesberg and the Boer position known as Taaiboschlaagte.

On Monday, December 11th, Brooke was sent out in the afternoon with his Company as escort to two R.H.A. guns, a squadron of Carabiniers also going. A farm was shelled and one Boer killed, while seven more were supposed to be wounded. Our people fired some long-range volleys. No casualties to our side.

December 12th.—Sent Hart out with his Company in the afternoon, escorting two guns; they went out in an easterly direction after a party of Boers, who were lurking about our right flank. Shelled them and cleared them out. Casualties on our side: one Sergeant of the Carabiniers wounded and taken prisoner, two horses killed. To-day Vaalkop, an isolated hill about two miles to our left flank, was occupied by a squadron of Carabiniers and two guns, and an advanced post was established there; it was a horribly jumpy place, and, from the shape of the hill, very hard to hold; everybody hated it cordially, though it was the apple of General French's eye.

Digitized by Google

Next morning at 5 a.m. we had an alarm, and rushed up to our posts on the large kopje, known as Look-out Hill; I stayed below and saw the ponies saddled up, and then brought in close to the base of the kopje, after which I rejoined our people on the top. The Boers were making a determined attempt to get round our right flank and cut the railway between us and Naauwpoort, but they were not "slim" enough, and a very pretty fight ensued, though we had nothing to do but sit still and watch it. Our guns made most excellent practice, throwing shrapnel all over the kopjes; and, though bullets were spitting up the dust all round them, the men worked as coolly as if on parade. (I think I am right in stating that the first shell fired by R.H.A. in S. Africa was fired to-day, and that the Battery was "O.") The Boers retaliated with a "Long Tom," but the third shot from our guns silenced it for the rest of the day; they also played a pom-pom on to our guns. The Cavalry was sent right out on to the plain, and it was exciting to watch the game of "drawing fire" being played by their scouts, who sometimes got right up to a kopje before the Boers fired on them, and then had to ride away like blazes. In the evening the Boers had had enough of it, and scooted back to Taaibosch.

While they were still retreating, I took Brooke and his Company and posted them behind a small kopje close to the position vacated by the enemy, and here they had to remain all night. They relieved some of the Inniskilling Dragoons (which Regiment had joined our force a few days previously), and before coming away I had the satisfaction of seeing a Maxim, directed by Lieut. Neil Haig, bowl over a Boer who was crossing a bit of open in company with some half-dozen others—a fine shot at a range of about 900 yards.

The casualties on our side to-day were one officer of

Digitized by Google

the Inniskillings, and five men wounded—none of them seriously. That night (and many subsequent ones) we slept fully dressed, rose the next morning at 3 a.m. and saddled up; after which Colonel Tudway and I rode out to Brooke's picquet, where we found everything quiet, and the Boers had evidently cleared out. Brooke had sent an officer out with a patrol over part of the country where the Boers were yesterday; they found eight dead Boer horses and the same number wounded, and they also brought back some clothes, boots, etc., belonging to one Tynden, with a waterproof sheet stamped O.V.S. (Orange Free State), on which we were pleased to notice considerable blood-stains; besides these, the subaltern picked up some Boer newspapers, one of them, the *Bloemfontein Express*, printed half in English half in Dutch, containing an amusing account of the battles of Graspan and Belmont, describing a charge of the "Ghoorkas and Lancers." The picquet brought in one wounded Boer horse, shot through the neck; but from the fact that its mane and withers were stiff with blood, we concluded that the rider had evidently been either severely wounded or killed. Hart's Company relieved the picquet in the evening.

In the morning we received orders for the remainder of the M.I. to reinforce the post of Vaalkop; accordingly, the C.O. went out with Brooke's Company, while I was left in Camp with twelve men and twenty-seven sick ponies. At 4 p.m. there was an alarm of Boers on our right flank; the Cavalry went out and scoured the country round, but found nothing, and evidently the alarm was a false one. Hart's picquet returned in the evening, bringing four rifles taken from a farm and another Boer horse.

On the 15th December we were aroused by heavy firing in the direction of Vaalkop, and soon after Colonel

Digitized by Google

Tudway came in bringing the advanced post, consisting of Brooke's Company of our Regiment, a squadron of the 10th Hussars, and two R.H.A. guns with him. It appeared that early in the morning the Boers had brought a heavy cross-fire on the kopje from two Long Toms and a pom-pom, stampeding mules and rendering the position untenable. General Brabazon, who had arrived a few days previously, went out with the Cavalry, but nothing was done. At 4 p.m. we got an alarm, and the whole force turned out; a patrol of Inniskillings had been heavily fired on at Sannah's Dam, and poor Jackson (7th D.G.'s) was killed. Our guns shelled all the kopjes round about, but not a Boer was to be seen, and I fancy only a few of their snipers were out.

On the 17th December a Cavalry Division was formed, Colonel Porter commanding one Brigade, Colonel Fisher (10th Hussars) the other; Hart's Company told off to the former, Brooke's to the latter; consequently Colonel Tudway, I, and the staff were left as sort of "nobody's children."

December 18th.—General French went out to-day with two guns and the New Zealanders, and shelled a farm called Kraaifontein; unfortunately, it proved to be empty; but several Boers, more enterprising than usual, came down from Taaibosch, and some brisk fighting took place, in the course of which one New Zealander and two horses were killed, and several Boers knocked over.

The following day was uneventful, except that we got the news of General Buller's reverse on the Tugela, which did not tend to brighten our spirits.

Now ensued a period of comparative inactivity, by no means unacceptable; the days being varied by picquets and patrols and springbok shooting. These animals were fairly plentiful, but very hard to get at, and the

Digitized by Google

Boers were also at the same game, which made it more exciting. One of our subalterns, Geary of the Hampshire Regiment, was successful in shooting one and a steinbok, and right good they were to eat. (Poor Geary was an excellent shot; he was killed later at Taba'nchu, but not before he had accounted for fifteen Boers to his own rifle).

On Christmas Eve the New Zealanders serenaded the Camp, and sang Christmas carols; very sporting of them, and they were a charming lot to deal with always—all most gentlemanly, excellent riders, and good shots.

Christmas Day was, by tacit consent, observed as a truce by both sides; it was cruelly hot and dusty. In the afternoon there were sports and an officer's race over about five furlongs, in which I competed, but my pony was not fast enough, and Captain Kenna, V.C. (21st Lancers) won easily on an English polo-pony from a field of about twenty-five. We had excellent Christmas dinners, as also did our men, but it was very unlike the real thing.

On Boxing Day, our picquet at Sannah's Dam captured five Boer horses; and on the same day rather a smart "coup" was brought off by a subaltern of ours in charge of a Detached Post on the Naauwpoort line. Certain of the burghers were allowed, on payment of 5*l.*, to take a little leave at Christmas time, for the purpose of visiting their "vrouws" and families. The wily subaltern heard of this and made a descent on a farm, bagging four Dutchmen and hauling them away amid the execrations of the ladies and their families. Rather hard luck on the burghers, and a poor wind-up to their short Christmas holiday! Soon after this the Boers, knowing how our force had increased, and fearing to be surrounded, evacuated their position at Taaiboschlaagte and retired to Colesberg, where they established themselves in the kopjes round the town.

Digitized by Google

On the 29th Colonel Tudway left us, and I found myself in the position of Commanding Officer without, however, anybody to command; so I attached myself to Colonel Fisher's Brigade.

On December 30th, Colonel Porter's Brigade marched out to Rensburg, a place on the railway line about five miles nearer Colesberg, and a little beyond Taaibosch; here they encamped, and established several posts of observation. The next morning at 9 a.m. Colonel Fisher's Brigade followed, Brooke's Company forming the escort to the convoy. We reached Rensburg, and received orders to move on again at 4 p.m. Colonel Fisher had sent on a troop of Inniskillings with a Maxim, and seized Maeder's Farm, about nine miles west of Rensburg. The Brigade marched to Maeder's, and arrived there in the dark; we linked our ponies and lay down as we were on the veldt. I had to go round the place later with a staff officer, as we had to guide the half Battalion of the Berkshire Regiment, who had come on in wagons, in order to be fresh for next day's operations.

On the morning of January 1st, 1900, we fell in again at 1.30 a.m., self very weary after only two hours' sleep. I showed the way to the Berkshire Regiment, who passed through our lines and marched in front; of course, it was still quite dark, though a lovely starlight night. The whole Brigade then moved off in the direction of Coleskop, and blundered along a rough road. Owing to the noise made by the rattling of the chains of the machine guns of the Berkshires and ourselves, they were sent to the rear by a staff officer, and considerable confusion was caused, the Column becoming disjointed; and I think I am right in saying that some, if not all, of the Berkshires lost their bearings and marched in a line which would eventually have brought them into Colesberg, *pace* "our friends in front."

Digitized by Google

Anyhow, at 3.30 a.m., I found myself opposite a high kopje on the right of the Boer position, with Brooke and his Company, numbering about 60 men; dawn just beginning to break. For a moment confusion reigned supreme; the General could not be found, and I wondered what I ought to do. A staff officer galloped up in a violent state of excitement, and asked me if I knew where the General was, and what had become of the Berkshire, to both of which questions I could only answer "Lord knows." He then gave me an order to advance on the kopje in front, which he knew to have been unoccupied yesterday, and take up as advantageous a position on it as possible. This, thought I, with 60 men against an unknown quantity of Boers, was a "bit thick." However, there was nothing for it but to advance; so I dismounted our boys, and—ran slap into a Boer picquet. What a hullabaloo there was! "Wie is daar?" (Who's there?) they screamed, and bolted like hares; two Companies of the Berkshire suddenly turned up on our right, and were on the point of charging us; orders and counter orders flew about—"Fix bayonets," "Charge," "Retire"—and to crown everything, the high kopje began to ring with the "pip-pop," "pip-pop," of the Mauser; the burghers shooting merrily away for all they were worth, their bullets going harmlessly over our heads, and even over the heads of our horse-holders, whom I had left a long way back.

It was still quite dark, though the day was beginning to break, and this may account for my perhaps missing a burgher at 50 yards, at whom I took a pot-shot as he was bolting; I may have hit him, but at any rate he was a "strong runner," and was not "gathered." We at last got a definite order to retire; but hardly had we gone twenty yards before another order came to fix bayonets, advance, and take the hill. This was done,

Digitized by Google

and we clambered up over huge boulders, the Boers retiring before us; but we never succeeded in clearing them right off the kopje, and they always held the end nearest Colesberg, and from here fired at us at about 600 yards; while from another kopje opposite, afterwards known as Gibraltar, they had our range at about 1,200 yards.

I have always felt a little hurt at the credit of the taking of the kopje being given entirely to the Berkshire Regiment, as our boys had quite as much, if not more, to do in the business; the kopje was afterwards called McCracken's Hill, after the Major commanding this half-battalion of the Berkshire.

However, to go on with my story of the fight. While Brooke was gallantly leading his men up the kopje, my Sergeant-Major came up and told me that he could see some Boers bolting from this hill across the open to another, about 800 yards off, so I took Fargus and his machine-gun section (composed of the 2nd D. C. Light Infantry) to the corner of the kopje, where we could see about 20 Boers running over the open as fast as they could lay legs to the ground. Fargus at once opened fire, but the Maxim, with the usual cussedness of the things, could only fire single shots owing to the fuzee-spring being weak, and was therefore useless. The gun-detachment, however, blazed away and I succeeded, after three shots, in bowling a burgher over at 600 yards; I always *did* fancy myself at the "running man!" The Sergeant (Bird) also winged a man, but he carried on. As they now began to shoot at us rather unpleasantly, I withdrew the gun and party and, climbing up the kopje, found our people out of breath, but very exultant, and a certain amount of firing going on on both sides.

Our R.H.A. guns now began shelling, and drew on

Digitized by Google

themselves a very hot fire from a pom-pom, though the Boers never used their Long Tom on them, I fancy the reason being that they were also heavily engaged on the Rensburg side, where the New Zealanders and Hart's Company had seized a hill, afterwards called Porter's Hill. Meanwhile our Cavalry, who should have pushed on and seized a kopje commanding the Colesberg road (afterwards called Pink, or Suffolk Hill), through some misunderstanding of orders, remained inactive behind Coleskop, and when they did move out eventually on to the open plain, they could do nothing, and got heavily shelled. Consequently, though the papers always insisted that Colesberg was "surrounded" by us, this was never really the case, nor do I think that the Boers were ever in such straits as to consider a surrender advisable, though there can be no doubt that General French's subsequent harassing tactics did annoy them a great deal, and had a good moral effect.

Perhaps it was as well that we never did get into Colesberg, as Norval's Pont would have been a terribly hard nut to crack, and to turn the Boers out of that country must have entailed great loss of life. The fight went on all day and was very exciting; we sniped and were sniped at constantly. My people, I am thankful to say, had no casualties, but the Berkshire had several, including one officer, 2nd Lieut. West, killed; I should put the total casualties on our side to-day at under five-and-twenty.

We and the Berkshire remained on our captured end of the kopje, where I was fated to stay another seven days; there was no water, and we only had our great-coats to sleep in. The men were posted in reliefs along the top of the kopje, while we bivouacked at the base. I should also add that there were about seventy of the

Digitized by Google

Inniskilling Dragoons here under Lieut. Neil Haig, of polo fame.

Next morning we were up before dawn and got our ponies right in under the hill, where they were safe from shell-fire. A miserable day followed, no end of sniping going on on both sides, and it was rather "hairy" work going round my sentries. Porter's Brigade shelled the Boer position from the Rensburg side, and two of our guns did likewise from the bottom of Coleskop; the Boers retaliated with a pom-pom and two Long Toms, but did little damage.

It was an exciting ride to and from our kopje, as the Boers shot at anyone going over the open plain, and wasted some hundreds of rounds at the game; their favourite target was our water-carts, but our black drivers were most gallant, and made their mule-teams gallop *ventre-à-terre;* later, however, we had to stop sending for water in the daylight as two native drivers of the Berkshire got hit, though neither of them seemed to mind much. We had just enough water for drinking, but none for washing, which was very disagreeable.

In the course of the afternoon our Sergeant-Major greatly distinguished himself by taking out a volunteer stretcher-party to look for an unfortunate gunner who had been wounded the day before, and was lying at the bottom of Coleskop. The Sergeant-Major walked in front, waving a large Red Cross flag, but, in spite of this, the Boers kept up a constant rifle-fire on the party, the bullets kicking up the dust all round them. The gunner was found, still alive, and the party returned under the same shower of bullets, the Boers only ceasing to fire while the gunner was being placed inside the Berkshire ambulance, which had been sent out to meet the stretcher-party, and then, as the ambulance drove back, firing away as hard as ever. However, the gallant

Digitized by Google

party returned unscathed, amid loud cheers from our men on the hill, mingled with hearty curses for the Boers.

The following day was spent in sniping and being sniped at, shelling and being shelled. De Lisle turned up to-day, having ridden over from Hanover Road, where his Company was guarding the bridge; he had heard the firing while out on patrol, and fearful of being left out of the show, had pushed on by himself; he afterwards sent for his Company and took over command of the Battalion. Haig and his Inniskillings left us this afternoon, having a dashing gallop over the open; the Boers loosed off about twenty rounds at each man as they went singly, but failed to hit anybody. Two men were wounded on our hill to-day.

January 4th was a rather exciting day, and a decidedly unsuccessful one on the part of the Boers. At 5 a.m., just as we were getting our ponies up under the hill, a tremendous rifle-fire burst out on our left rear. The Boers had crept round in the night, surprised a picquet of the Inniskillings, killed all their horses, and then turned their attention to our convoy which had just arrived from Maeder's Farm. Our guns came into action very quickly, and shelled the line of low kopjes gained by the Boers as hard as the guns could fire, and so the fight went on for some time.

From our kopje we had a grand view of the whole show, and could see the Boer reinforcements coming up constantly over the plain, until presently I noticed several burghers making a wide détour, obviously with the intention of getting still further round our flank. To stop this, I sent Brooke off with two sections to seize a kopje in that direction and lie low for the gentlemen; they galloped off under a very hot pom-pom and rifle-fire, but fortunately got across without a casualty, and

Digitized by Google

were complimented by General Brabazon on reaching the other side. The Cavalry meanwhile were making several unsuccessful darts into the plain, trying to get in a charge, but as the Boers worked entirely singly, there was never any object for them to charge at, and they came under heavy shell and rifle-fire, suffering a good deal.

De Lisle now turned up from Rensburg, bringing with him Hart's Company, and after our guns had done a good deal more shelling and the Boers had begun to retire, finding themselves under a heavy fire from a troop of the 10th Hussars on one flank and the Suffolk Regt. (who had arrived the night previous) on the other, he made a most successful attack, took the position without loss, and captured twenty-two prisoners, a quantity of horses, and no end of ammunition and rifles.

It was exciting to watch the Boers retreating over the plain, a considerable number of them under cover of their ambulances; the Suffolks shot at them hard, while their Maxim loosed off a whole belt-full of rounds without stopping, and our guns scattered shrapnel all over them. Our cavalry again vainly tried to get at them, and I believe one party of the Inniskillings did manage to kill a few, but had great difficulty in extricating themselves, and lost several men. Our total casualties were twenty-nine killed and wounded, among the former being Major Harvey, 10th Hussars, while the Boers owned to twenty-two killed, and subsequently admitted that their casualty-list amounted to seventy odd. Altogether it was a very successful day as far as our side was concerned. Besides the Berkshire there were left now on the hill only Fargus and his gun, Clegg Hill with his section, and myself.

To-night, at about 11 p.m., we were roused by a couple of shots, and soon after a ——shire man rushed

Digitized by Google

up to me, *sans* helmet and rifle, and followed by another man in a breathless state of excitement, both yelling, "The Boers are on us!" I asked them what had become of their regiment, and they replied that they were coming down the hill with our fellows. I persuaded them to come with me, and we climbed up the kopje, only to find everything perfectly quiet, and the whole affair a false alarm. This was an unpleasant incident, but it must be remembered what a nerve-wearing time we were having; in the daytime it was like sitting in the old-fashioned mantlets when volleys were being fired with Martini-Henrys, and the splinters were flying about, and this game used to last regularly from dawn till night.

Next day was comparatively quiet, with the exception of the usual sniping and shelling by our guns. Some excitement was caused in the morning by a gentleman on the other side who had come to be known as the "Boss sniper," and had always been particularly offensive, being successfully picked off by one of our men.

This afternoon I placed Fargus with his Maxim at a corner of the kopje, and from here he could reach a road and farm much used by the Boers, and the embrasure from which they worked their pom-pom, and it used to be very amusing to watch the burghers scatter when the gun began to play.

In the evening I had great hopes of relief, a heliograph message coming from De Lisle:—"We fight tomorrow; can you join us?" I obtained permission from Major McCracken, but my hopes were not realised owing to the answering messages becoming mixed up in transmission.

Here I must remark that considerable carelessness was shown on the part of our signallers at this time; no cipher was used, and as messages were constantly being

Digitized by Google

sent by helio, flag, and lamp to and from all parts of our force, I feel sure that the Boers were able to read a great many of them and learn our movements. Whether it was by these means, or by spies, it is pretty certain that they knew all about the proposed attack by the Suffolks the following day, and made the necessary preparations to resist it. Of this dreadful disaster I had rather not speak, except to say that I watched the whole affair with a telescope, and could plainly see the Boers riding up and down quite fearlessly on the top of the hill, and their firing-line ducking down below their "schanzes" as our guns sent showers of shrapnel over them. We saw the Boer ambulance come out, the survivors of the Suffolks disarmed and led off, and later could hear the Boers singing a hymn as they buried poor Colonel Watson and his Adjutant. Eleven officers and two hundred men were killed, wounded, and missing. Our guns shelled over our heads to-day, being directed by signals on our kopje, but I doubt if they did much harm to the enemy.

To-night I again fondly hoped for relief, but again none came. At 12.15 a.m., however, to my great joy two sections arrived, and after posting them up in all matters connected with sentries, etc., I at last left the hill with Clegg Hill, leaving Fargus and his gun behind, and reached our camp, about half-a-mile further back, at about 2.30 a.m. At 4 a.m. I was up again, and rode out with the Sergeant-Major to De Lisle's kopjes, the position captured by our men on the 4th, where we found picquets of about sixty men all told. On reaching camp again I collapsed for the rest of the day, but in the evening was able to have my long-prayed-for shave, wash, and change of clothes, and managed to put in plenty of sleep. For close on eight days I had not had a wash of any sort, nor once changed a single article of

Digitized by Google

dress, besides which I had had nothing but bully beef and biscuits to live on, and uncommonly little sleep, so perhaps it was not to be wondered at that I was utterly done up at the end of it all.

In the morning I was quite fit again, and at 5.15 a.m. rode out with the Sergeant-Major to the picquets; returned to breakfast (oh, the joy of tea and Quaker Oats!), after which I did a lot of orderly-room work, which was sadly in arrears. At 12 I went out to the picquets, and remained till 7 p.m., when I was relieved by Brooke.

Our camp here (known as Kloof Camp) would have been by no means an unpleasant one but for two things —one being the sad scarcity of water, and the other the constant dropping of Boer bullets in the lines; we had several horses shot in this manner, and one man while washing. There were here three Companies of ourselves and a machine-gun, half a Battalion of the Essex Regiment, under Colonel (afterwards Brigadier-General) Stephenson, a Company of the Berkshire, and a few details.

On January 10th, a field-gun (15-pr.) was hauled up to the top of Coleskop by 180 of the Essex Regiment—a grand feat; later, another gun was also got up, and the Boers were fairly astonished, such a feat having been regarded by them as an utter impossibility.

Next day De Lisle went out with six sections, with Hart and Brooke, to a rebel farm belonging to one Du Plessis, situated at the end of a long ridge, through which ran the road to Colesberg wagon-bridge, and at the far end of which the Boers had a position at a place called Rietfontein. Under cover of their men, De Lisle and Hart (both Staff College men) made some most useful sketches which proved the maps served out to us to be hopelessly wrong! The party returned at 1 p.m.

Digitized by Google

all safe and sound. Sniping and shelling continued all day and every day.

On the 13th De Lisle rode over to Rensburg for a "Council of War." At 4 in the afternoon I received a wire from him to have 240 M.I. ready to move out at 6.30 p.m. This I arranged, and we marched off at that hour to Windmill Camp, a place about two miles behind Coleskop, where there was a well and a pump, and a squadron of Inniskilling Dragoons. Here we were joined by two R.H.A. guns, a mounted section of Royal Engineers, half a Squadron Inniskillings, half a Squadron 10th Hussars, and two Companies of the Yorkshire Regiment; the whole force commanded by Major Allenby, Inniskillings, De Lisle being staff officer, and running the whole show. The idea was that we should go round the back of the Boer position at Rietfontein, and, if possible, blow up Colesberg wagon-road bridge. We left Windmill Camp at 8 p.m., and after a nine-mile march in the dark, reached Du Plessis' farm, and bivouacked in a stubble-field, the Yorkshire Regiment finding the outposts; we arrived at our bivouac at 11.30 p.m.

On the 14th we were up at 3 a.m., and, leaving the Yorkshire Regiment behind to guard the pass, moved off at 4 a.m. A long and very "hairy" march then ensued; at one place we had to go through a narrow pass where ten men could have stopped a Brigade, finally emerging on to a flat and open plain beyond; a Company from our lot was left behind here to hold the pass and cover our retirement. At a farm a little further on we halted, watered and fed, and had breakfast, and then marched on for miles in broiling heat. After some time we met a native shepherd, who told us that some way on there was a Boer laager, the inhabitants of which were chiefly women. We found the place—a nice-look-

Digitized by Google

ing farm—and after surrounding it, carefully advanced and captured four Boers. The place was crowded with women, and there was a quantity of wagons; a wounded Boer was also found in an outhouse. Leaving an escort with the prisoners, we pushed on to within about two miles of the wagon-bridge.

As we had marched a very long way, and the horses and ponies were very tired, it was decided not to attempt to blow the bridge up, and so, after firing about ten shells in that direction (drawing the fire of a pom-pom from a kopje a long way in front) we "up-sticks and hooked it" as fast as we could, taking our prisoners and their Cape-cart and a pair of ponies with us. This Cape-cart and ponies were afterwards given to us by General French, and were of the greatest use to us. The Boers were now coming down from their position like bees out of a hive, and Hart's Company and Brooke's were sent out to our left flank; about 600 Boers made a dash to cut us off, but Brooke raced to a hill with a Maxim and twelve men, blazed away and frightened them off. We got through the dangerous path safely, and at last reached Du Plessis' farm, all dog-tired, and my two ponies both ridden to a stand-still; here the force bivouacked again. To-day's affair, in the opinion of most of us was a very risky undertaking, and hardly worth the candle.

Next morning we were up at 5, and leaving our bivouac at 6.30 marched back to Kloof Camp without being fired on. Our yesterday's casualties were two ponies mysteriously shot, and three dead of exhaustion.

On the 17th we sent out a foraging party to Du Plessis' Farm—a risky business; they went out at 8.30 p.m., and returned next day all safe, and bringing back a splendid lot of wheat and barley, though not much oat-hay. The wheat and barley were afterwards sold to the

Digitized by Google

Commissariat, and the result—25*l.*—was placed to the credit of our C.O.'s fund—a very useful little haul.

This morning I climbed up Coleskop, an awful grind, which took fully 25 minutes; in return for the contents of my water-bottle, two shots were fired at a Boer Cape-cart, the shell burst a little too high, but it was most amusing to see the burghers scoot for all they were worth. A grand view of the surrounding country could be obtained from here, and one could see all the Boer laagers and positions most clearly.

January 18th our two 5-inch howitzers arrived, and most of us went out to see them shell Pink Hill; the effects of the lyddite bursting was grand; huge boulders (frequently described by our men as parts of Boers) being hurled into the air; our Coleskop guns also fired like blazes; so altogether the burghers must have had a poor day of it. As a result of this, a vast "trek" from Colesberg began next morning before dawn and continued till 11; we supposed the wives and families were clearing out, one or two of the lyddite shells having burst in the streets of the town. On the 23rd, De Lisle rode into Rensburg for a Council of War—a sure forerunner of an approaching fight.

January 24th.—De Lisle returned this morning, and at 12 we all marched out, the Essex Regiment relieving our picquets. We marched to a farm belonging to one Hobkirk, a good old Scotchman; and here were joined by the Wiltshire Regiment, four Companies Essex Regiment, and two Companies, Yorkshire Regiment. General Brabazon, with the Cavalry and a Battery R.H.A. went to a farm called Ketelfontein, about five miles further on. Our bivouac at the farm was a very nice one, and we were able to get some fresh milk and a chicken or two; at night we slept in Hobkirk's coach-house and were very comfortable; the farm was

Digitized by Google

about seven miles from Kloof Camp, at the extreme end of the Rietfontein ridge and on the way to Du Plessis' Farm.

Next morning we started at 6.45 a.m., and De Lisle being Staff Officer, I was in command of the M.I. We first marched in a N.E. direction, my object being to collect our picquets; Hart's and Brooke's Companies having been posted out over night, and then to join the Cavalry Brigade. However, on our way there, a Staff Officer rode up with orders to occupy a long, flat hill in front of us, which I did successfully with the Scottish Company, Hart and Brooke joining us there. It appeared that the Wiltshire Regiment was to have been on this hill by 7 a.m., but they waited behind at the pass through which I had come for their water-cart, and their non-arrival at the appointed time rather upset the show. We held the hill and fired long-range volleys at 2,200 yards at the Boers, who had a laager and a large convoy behind a conical-shaped hill, and were also lining part of the high ridge behind.

At 9 the Wiltshire at last arrived, quite done-up from their march, the Regiment being then only just out from home, and consequently soft; we retired and joined the Cavalry Brigade down below. Four R.H.A. guns shelled the Boers all day, while two 15-prs. did likewise from the other side of the ridge; we skirmished about all over the country, finding Boers in unexpected places, and once getting into rather a hot corner. Hearing heavy firing going on, we galloped back quickly to our original hill, and found that General French, who had arrived in the course of the afternoon, had sent the Wiltshire across the flat ground at the bottom, with orders not to get within less than 500 yards of the Boer position, while the Yorkshire Regiment attacked on the flank along the high ridge.

Digitized by Google

Had the attack been pushed home, I believe the Boers would have been ousted, but for some reason—possibly on account of the lateness of the hour, the order to retire was given. The Wiltshire lost about twenty men killed, wounded, and missing. The Boers had unmasked two guns, and shelled our Cavalry and guns a good deal, but, I fancy, with very little result. The whole of our force now retired, the Boers firing a *feu-de-joie* as we did so.

I went back with the led horses of one of our Companies which had been told off to cover the retirement, and waited at a pass called Bastard's Nek, where the main road from Colesberg to the Wagon-Bridge passed through, and here had to wait for the whole of our force to pass. We then marched back to Kloof Camp, leaving one section and a Maxim at Hobkirk's Farm, and on reaching Camp found our new C.O., Colonel Martyr, of Uganda fame, arrived. On the whole, to-day's operations can hardly be called successful, and I have no doubt the Boer newspapers described the affair as a "Crushing British Defeat."

The following day the Colonel and I, with the Western and Scottish Companies, went to Hobkirk's Farm, where we bivouacked and made ourselves very comfortable; Hart was left behind with his Company at Kloof Camp. Two Companies of the Wiltshire were also at Hobkirk's. The C.O. and I rode round in the evening and saw to the posting of our picquets, one post being established at Bastard's Nek.

On the 31st we left Hobkirk's Farm (with much regret) and marched to Windmill Camp, where we encamped, relieving some Inniskillings. The Boers about this time began to be very cheeky, and besides sniping into Kloof Camp, they also managed to reach Coleskop with a Long Tom and a pom-pom; no harm was done,

Digitized by Google

however, and our two field-guns still remained on the top. De Lisle left us to-day, having been appointed to command the 6th M.I. Regiment.

On February 3rd, we received orders to move next day to Rensburg *en route* for Orange River; "jumps" abounded considerably, and poor old Hobkirk brought over his wife and daughter and camped with us.

The following day we were relieved by half a Squadron of Inniskillings, and marched to Rensburg in the afternoon; found very few troops here, and a Boer attack expected hourly. We rather felt as if it were high time to be off, as the Boers knew all about the withdrawing of such a large portion of our force, and were getting uncommonly enterprising; in fact, it was very shortly after our departure that they compelled the remaining force, under General Clements, to retire hurriedly back to Arundel, suffering considerable loss in doing so; they brought a Long Tom up to Bastard's Nek, and from here shelled Windmill Camp—poor Hobkirk and his family had to flee under heavy fire, while the Boers looted his farm and bagged over 1,000 sheep, besides all the cattle and horses, while the small force supposed to be guarding the farm barely escaped annihilation, and two Companies of the Wiltshire were collared at Kloof Camp. This retirement *may* have been part of the Plan of Campaign, as was stated in the papers, but I have my doubts.

On February 6th, we started in two trains at about 10 a.m. on our way to Orange River, which place we reached at 6 a.m. the following morning. Here there were lots of troops of all kinds, and a Mounted Infantry Division in the process of formation, commanded by Colonel Hannay (afterwards killed on the way to Paardeberg).

The new Mounted Infantry Regiments were then in

Digitized by Google

a terrible state of unpreparedness; very few of their men, and barely half their officers, had ever been trained in M.I. work; in fact, the method of the authorities appeared to be to give a man a pair of putties and a pony and then say to him, "Now you're a Mounted Infantry man." Even this was not done in the case of the Gordon Highland Section, who, poor fellows, had to start in khaki trousers—or trews, as I suppose they would call them. We encamped on a hill well out of the ghastly dust and near the river; and here we found Atkins' Company, and for the first time since leaving Aldershot the Battalion (or Regiment, as it was now called), was complete.

In the evening we all went down to the river and bathed; though the water was warm and very dirty, it was delightful to be able to get a wet all over. I find in my diary the entry—"Slept in pyjamas"—a luxury which I had been unable to enjoy for very many nights.

On the 9th we received orders to move in the evening for a general advance into the Free State, our force being the Carabiniers, New Zealand Mounted Rifles, Rimington's Guides, Kitchener's Horse, and about five Regiments of Mounted Infantry. We paraded at 3.15 p.m., and marched down to the Orange River Bridge; here there was indescribable chaos, owing to all the transport being hopelessly stuck. Orders came that we were to go back and wait for 24 hours; then that we were to go on and bivouac with the baggage on the other side of the river. At last we got over, and having made all our arrangements, settled down for the night. Hardly, however, had we got our lines laid down when another order arrived to go on at once; but as most of our fellows had gone down to the river to bathe it was some time before we could get under weigh again, and

Digitized by Google

it was in pitch darkness that we did at last move off. The heat and dust were terrible, but we pushed on as fast as we could, and eventually caught up Colonel Porter and the Carabiniers. After going about six miles we all halted for about three-quarters-of-an-hour, and then blundered on again; lost the rest of the force, and at last reached Ramah, where the whole force should have bivouacked, but the 2nd M.I. were the only people who managed to reach the place this night. We lay down and slept anyhow and anywhere; it was 2 a.m. Altogether this was a very unpropitious start for our advance into the Free State.

At 5 a.m. next morning we were up again, and later the rest of the Column turned up; we were also joined here by two Squadrons of the 14th Hussars and some Queensland M.I. from Zoutpan's Drift. Thanks to our transport having all come to grief, we had an unexpected day's rest, which was by no means unwelcome, as the heat now had become terrible.

On February 11th we were up before dawn, and paraded in pitch darkness. The confusion was awful; we could get no orders and nobody apparently had any idea where to go; we eventually moved off and blindly followed some of the other M.I. Regiments, passing over a glorious collection of articles dropped by them, such as picketing-pegs, head-ropes, nose-bags, etc., which we longed to pick up, but had no time to do so. A commando of Boers, whose strength was estimated variously as 200 and 2,000, had taken up a position on the only respectably-sized kopje within miles of us; it had been deemed necessary to stir these people up, and for this purpose De Lisle (now Colonel) with his M.I., some Colonials and some 14th Hussars, had started out earlier than the rest of the Column to work round their flank, and, if possible, turn them out. After a lot of aimless

Digitized by Google

wandering about on our part, during which we saw huge herds of springbok, the order came for us to send a Company up to the kopje, so Atkins was despatched with his Company.

In the meantime De Lisle's lot had become seriously involved, and though he "commandeered" some of Henry's M.I. to help, matters looked very ugly for him. The Boers had unmasked two guns and heavily shelled the 14th Hussars' horses; our force had not a single gun to reply (neither had we a single ambulance with the Column). Atkins' Company fired long-range volleys whenever they could see anything to fire at, which was not often, and eventually received the order to withdraw, leaving De Lisle to extricate himself as best he could, which he did under cover of darkness, with a casualty list of about 40 killed, wounded, and missing.

This affair, though by no means a success, was at any rate useful in drawing the Boers' attention off our long line of transport, which was able to pass without molestation; but I think I am not far wrong in surmising that it was this same commando of Boers who followed us up, and afterwards made such a haul by capturing the huge convoy belonging to Lord Roberts' force.

On the way to our next bivouac we halted at a pass to water, and here the Boers, with a little enterprise, could have made a fine bag. The heat had been grilling all day, and horses and men were mad with thirst; the former were beyond control, and many of them, rushing into the pass, were hopelessly bogged, while a deep ditch, over which we had to jump to get back on to the sound plain, added to the confusion.

Several other M.I. Regiments and Kitchener's Horse came crowding in, and if the Boers could have brought

Digitized by Google

a gun to bear on the struggling mass from the kopje we had just left, the results to our Column must have been disastrous. After a long and terribly hot march we reached our next bivouac, Roodepoort, very late at night; De Lisle's people arrived at about midnight.

I went to headquarters for orders at 5 a.m. next morning, and found everybody rather down in the mouth about yesterday's business. I had been very seedy on and off now for three weeks, and to-day was so bad that I drove in our Cape-cart with our mess-cook; it was a dreary business passing dead and dying horses all over the place, and the heat was terrible.

We reached Ramdam in the dark, and here found lots of troops, Lords Roberts and Kitchener, and the 6th Division, in which were the 43rd; I longed to see them again, but was so bad that I collapsed on getting out of the cart, and was quite done for. Another fellow of ours, Haire-Forster, who had had one of our Machine-gun Detachments, also went sick to day with what turned out afterwards to be enteric.

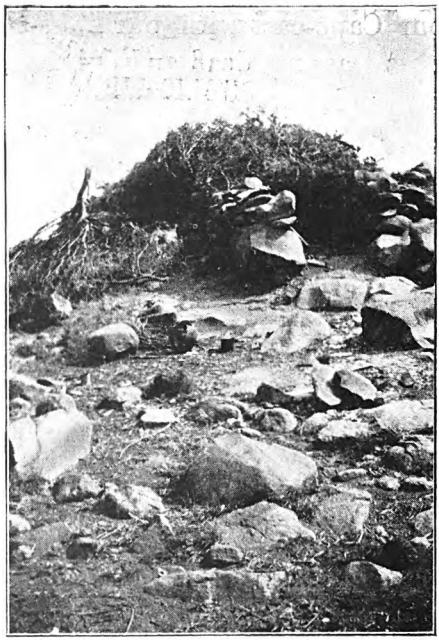
The following morning the troops all moved off at 4 a.m., and Haire-Forster and I were left to our own resources; we fortunately secured a buck-wagon and team of mules, and in this were carried over to an old farmhouse, in which there were quantities of sick from all sorts of troops, including several officers, and, luckily for us, the P.M.O. who commandeered the buck-wagon and team for our use. In this farmhouse we spent a most wretched day, sleeping on the bare mud floor, and without any hospital arrangements, and with very little food.

On February 14th, after a miserable night, Forster and I, with about seven other sick and the P.M.O., started at 4 a.m. in the buck-wagon, and had a ghastly jolting ride of ten miles across country to Enslin, where, to

Digitized by Google

my joy, I met Evelegh just preparing for the unfortunate march which eventually landed him a prisoner at Pretoria. That afternoon I reached Orange River, and after a horrible night in a crowded ward, with no clothes on my bed and nothing to eat, was sent off next morning *en route* for Wynberg.

At Cape Town I stayed till March 6th, and then, feeling quite fit, I was discharged from the hospital



Boer Shelter at Magersfontein.

and started north again, travelling with the Hampshire Yeomanry.

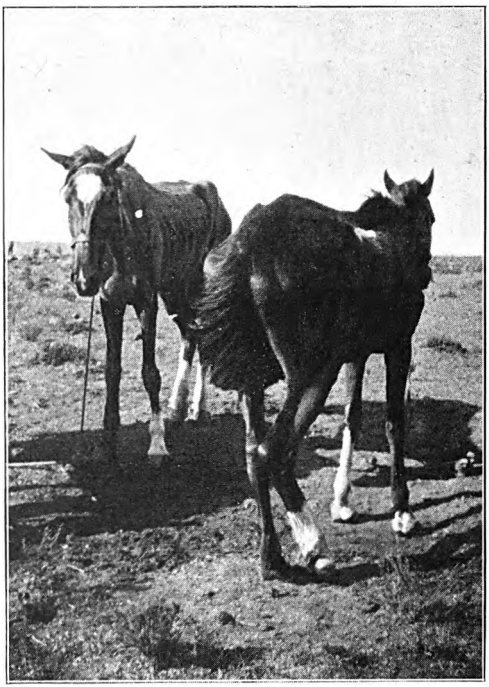
On the 9th, after having a look at Magersfontein on the way, I reached Kimberley, and was fated to remain there till the 17th, as all the convoys had been stopped going across country to Lord Roberts' force. It was pretty sickening work to have to stay and hear

Digitized by Google

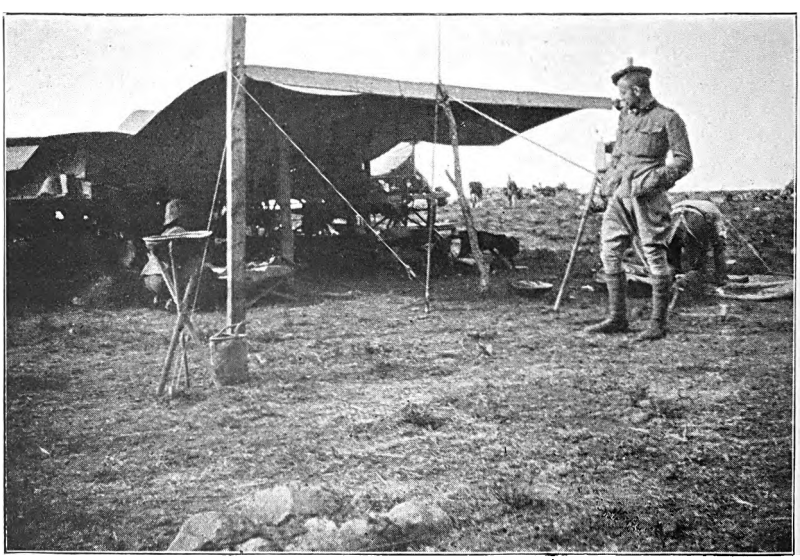
THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS
R

Digitized by Google



CONDITION OF THE HORSES ON ARRIVAL AT BLOEMFONTEIN.



M.I. OFFICERS' MESS, BLOEMFONTEIN.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

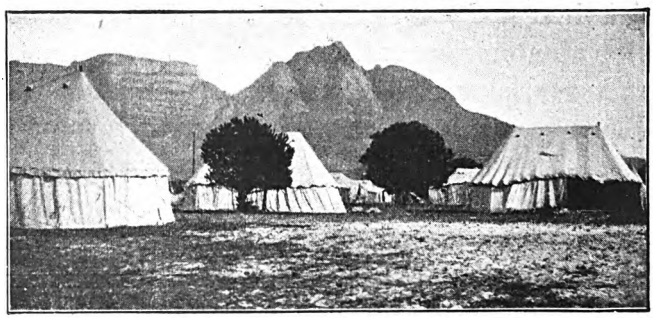
all about the successful march to Bloemfontein without being able to take any part in it, and I felt fairly miserable at missing such a lot.

On the 17th I started from Kimberley, and reached Bloemfontein at 6 a.m. on the 21st. Here I was rejoiced at finding the 43rd; it was good to see one's old pals again after such a long separation, but very sad to note the gaps in the Regiment caused by Klip Kraal, Paardeberg, and disease. The next day I rejoined my Mounted Infantry at a place called Waterval, some eight miles from the town. Here, though very seedy again, I had a quiet time, and even went so far as to buy an old gun in Bloemfontein for 12*l*. 10*s*., with which I shot quail, hares, koran, plover, etc., and varied this with fishing in the Bloemspruit, in which we used to catch some capital yellow fish and "berber," which made excellent additions to our larder. I found our men showing every sign of hard work, and their clothing in rags, but all pretty fit, and our casualties had been wonderfully few. Of the officers, poor young Courtenay had been killed at Paardeberg, and Hart slightly wounded; while among the men the total casualties did not exceed a dozen. What few ponies we had left were nothing but skin and bone, and dreadful to look at. I also found a new C.O., Brevet-Major Dobell, he making the fifth C.O. the Battalion had had since leaving home. I was not destined to see much more of the Regiment, as I became very ill again, and on the 29th was sent to hospital at Bloemfontein, from which place I was sent down to Cape Town on April 1st, and subsequently invalided home for six months by a Medical Board.

So end my experiences of the first part of the Boer war, and I hope I have not been too garrulous in "fighting my battles o'er again;" it was hard luck for me, having gone through most of the dirty work at

Digitized by Google

the beginning of the campaign, to miss the real successes which now followed, and the brilliant march to Pretoria; but when I think of the numbers of old friends who have fallen, I can only consider myself fortunate in having got out of the country with a whole skin.



RONDEBOSCH HOSPITAL, NEAR CAPE TOWN.

Digitized by Google

ITINERARY OF THE 1ST OXFORDSHIRE LIGHT INFANTRY IN SOUTH AFRICA DURING 1900.

Date.	Place.	Distance in Miles.	—
	CAPE TOWN to—		
January 16th	Naauwport	570	By rail.
„ 25th	Thebus	130	„
February 1st	Modder River	240	„
„ 10th	Enslin	22	„
„ 12th	Ramdam	11	March.
„ 13th	Waterval Drift	10	„
„ 14th	Wegdrai and Klip Drift	27	„
„ 16th	Brandvallei	11	„
„ 17th	Paardeberg	5	„
„ 18th	Boer Laager	2	„
„ 19th	Kitchener's Kop and back	6	„
March 1st	Osfontein	4	„
„ 7th	Poplar Grove	22	„
„ 8th	Roodepoort	7	„
„ 10th	Driefontein	10	„
„ 11th	Kaals Spruit	14	
„ 12th	Venter's Vallei	13	„
„ 13th	Brand Kop	14	„
„ 14th	Bloemfontein	6	„
	BLOEMFONTEIN to—		
„ 31st	Roodeval	12	„
April 1st	Mokesberg	9	„
„ 2nd	Springfield	17	„
„ 3rd	Bloemfontein	10	„
„ 4th	Tempey Farm and back	6	„
June 7th	Kroonstad	175	By rail.
„ 9th	America Siding and back	20	„
„ 14th	Ventersberg Road, &c.	25	„
„ 15th	Riet Spruit and back	15	„
„ 16th	Kroonstad	20	„
August 1st	Doorn Spruit	10	March.
„ 2nd	Belmont	9	„
„ 3rd	Boschkopjes	8	„
„ 4th	Rhebokfontein	11	„
„ 7th	Doornhoek	12	„
„ 8th	Rietzburg	8	„
„ 9th	Venterskroon	14	„
„ 10th	Rensburg Drift	7	„
„ 11th	Across the Vaal and back	4	„
„ 13th	Vredefort	7	„
„ 14th	Vlackfontein	14	„
„ 15th	Scandinavia	10	„
„ 20th	Kerr's Drift	16	„
„ 21st	Wet Kop	14	„
„ 22nd	Gansvlei	10	„
„ 23rd	Kopjes Station	12	„
„ 27th	Vredefort Station	9	„
„ 28th	Shepstone's Farm	10	„
„ 29th	Vredefort Station (and *détour*)	13	„
„ 31st	Springbokvlaagte	8	„
September 2nd	Gansvlei	16	„
„ 3rd	Kristal Kopje	5	„
„ 4th	Roodeval Vlei	6	„
„ 5th	Rhenoster Kop	5	„
„ 6th	Driekopjes	16	„
„ 7th	Blesbokvlaagte	8	„
„ 8th	Tweekuil	15	„
	Carried forward	1,710	

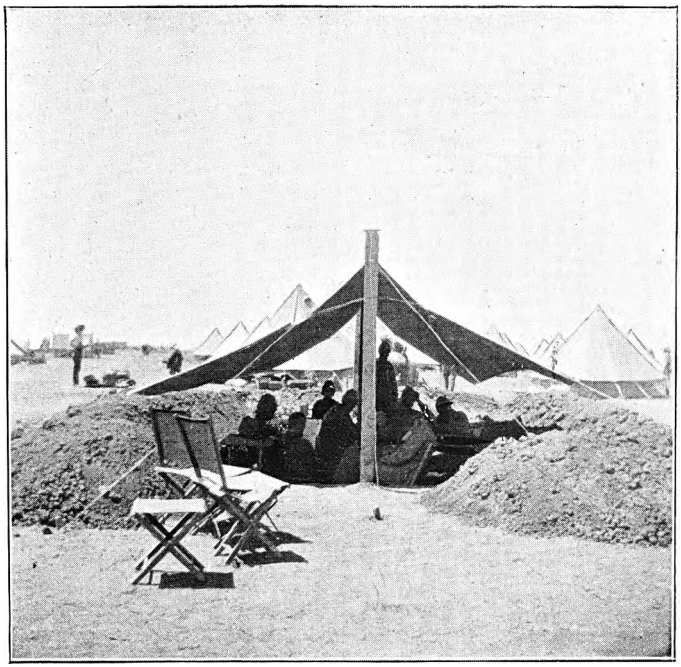
Digitized by Google

Date.	Place.	Distance in Miles.	—
	Brought forward - -	1,710	
	BLOEMFONTEIN to—		
September 9th -	Rhenoster Kop - - - - -	13	March.
„ 10th -	Honing Spruit - - - - -	18	„
„ 11th -	Boschpoort - - - - -	9	„
„ 12th -	Paardekraal - - - - -	11	„
„ 13th -	Hout Kop - - - - - -	15	„
„ 15th -	Welgevenden - - - - -	6	„
„ 16th -	Kroonstad - - - - -	9	„
„ 17th -	Ranjeslaagte - - - - -	15	„
„ 18th -	Blaauwbosch Bank - - - -	10	„
„ 21st -	Kroonstad - - - - -	25	„
„ 23rd -	Hout Kop - - - - - -	15	„
„ 24th -	Paardekraal - - - - -	15	„
„ 25th -	Vaalkrans - - - - - -	14	„
„ 26th -	Leeuwfontein - - - - -	5	„
„ 27th -	Uitkijk - - - - - -	15	„
October 2nd -	Hartebeestefontein - - - -	15	„
„ 3rd -	Heilbron - - - - - -	3	„
	Total miles - -	1,923	By Rail, 1,217; by road, 706 miles.

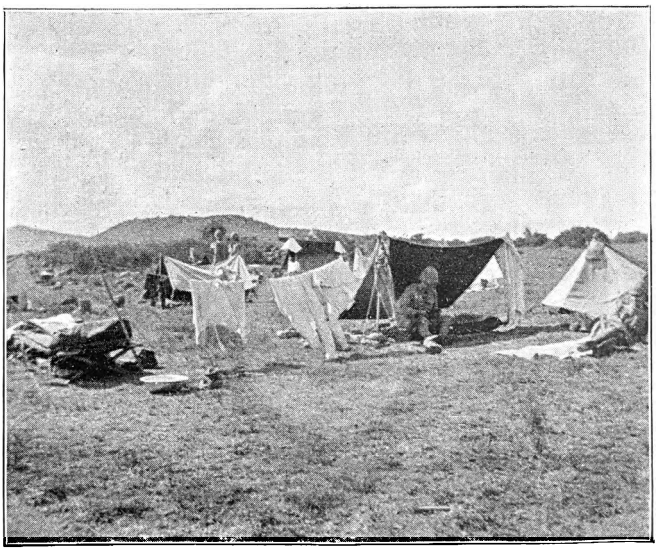
Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google



OFFICERS' MESS.



SHELTERS.

Digitized by Google

R FOUNDATIONS
L

Digitized by Google

OFFICERS OF THE REGIMENT WHO SERVED IN SOUTH AFRICA IN 1900.

NAMES.	REMARKS.
Lieut.-Col. Hon. A. E. Dalzell	Commanding 1st Battalion.
Lieut.-Col. F. J. Evelegh	Commanding M. I. Detachments; in charge of convoy; prisoner of war; civil employment, Pretoria. Invalided.
Major R. W. Porter	2nd in Command 1st Battalion.
Major J. Hanbury-Williams, C.M.G.	Staff.
Major G. F. Mockler	With 1st Battalion.
Major C. R. Day	With 1st Battalion. Died of wounds received at Paardeberg.
Major R. Fanshawe (2nd Batt.)	Staff, Special Service; severely wounded; recovered and continued to serve in S. Africa with M. I.
Capt. F. G. L. Lamotte	With 1st Battalion.
Capt. E. A. E. Lethbridge	Do.
Capt. E. M. Childers (2nd Batt.)	Attached 1st Battalion.
Capt. G. N. Colvile	Commanding M. I. Company. Severely wounded at Bothaville; recovered and continued to serve in S. Africa.
Capt. H. L. Ruck Keene	Adjutant of M. I. Battalion; invalided.
Capt. C. H. Cobb	Adjutant, 1st Battalion.
Capt. R. E. Watt	With 1st Battalion; wounded at Paardeberg; recovered and continued to serve in S. Africa.
Capt. F. J. Henley	With 1st Battalion, and A.D.C. to Sir A. Milner.
Capt. W. C. Hunter (2nd Batt.)	Staff; Special Service; escorted Boer prisoners to Ceylon.
Capt. K. R. Hamilton (2nd Batt.)	Attached 1st Battalion, and Adjt. M. I. Bn.; severely wounded; recovered, and continued to serve in S. Africa.
Capt. L. F. Scott	Special Service, and with 1st Battalion.
Lieut. S. F. Hammick	With 1st Battalion; wounded at Paardeberg.
Lieut. A. R. Bright	In charge of Maxim, Durham Light Infantry; with 1st Battalion; killed at Paardeberg.
Lieut. F. H. Stapleton	In charge of Maxim of 1st Battalion; severely wounded at Klip Kraal; recovered; Staff, Intelligence Department.
Lieut. C. E. Forrest	With M. I. Company; wounded at Elandsfontein. Invalided.
Lieut. J. A. Ballard	With 1st Battalion.
Lieut. Hon. G. W. F. S. Foljambe	Do.
Lieut. C. F. Henley	Do.
Lieut. A. G. Bayley	Do.
Lieut. H. L. Wood	Do.; invalided.
Lieut. J. F. C. Fuller	Do.; invalided; returned to S. Africa.
2nd Lieut. V. A. Ball-Acton	Do.; killed at Paardeberg.
2nd Lieut. G. A. Sullivan	Do.
2nd Lieut. R. R. M. Brooke	With M. I. Company.
2nd Lieut. H. F. Ward	With 1st Battalion.
2nd Lieut. R. V. Simpson	Do.
2nd Lieut. E. H. Kirkpatrick	Do.; invalided.
2nd Lieut. R. M. Logan	Do.
2nd Lieut. S. G. R. White	Do.; invalided.
2nd Lieut. F. J. Scott-Murray	Do.
2nd Lieut. C. G. Higgins	Do.
Lieut. and Qr.-Master W. Ross	Do.
Officers of Militia attached to the 1st Battalion in South Africa:—	
Capt. G. F. Paske (3rd Batt.)	Invalided.
Lieut. S. R. Christie-Miller (3rd Batt.)	
2nd Lieut. J. A. Pollock (3rd Batt. R. W. Surrey Regt.).	
Officers of Volunteers attached (with Volunteer Company) to the 1st Battalion in South Africa:—	
Capt. M. F. Lathy (University Volunteers).	
Lieut. L. C. Hawkins (1st Bucks Volunteers).	
Lieut. C. A. Barron (1st Bucks Volunteers).	

Digitized by Google

STATE OF THE 1ST BATTALION, 1ST JANUARY, 1900.

Distribution.	Officers.	Warrant Officers.	N.C.O.'s and Men.	Remarks.
1st Battalion on passage to South Africa	21	1	637	On SS. *Gaika.*
M. I. Company, awaiting embarkation	4	—	132	—
Already employed in South Africa -	5	—	2	—
Depôt (Oxford) and Details (Ireland) -	2	1	396	—
Total - - -	32	2	1167	

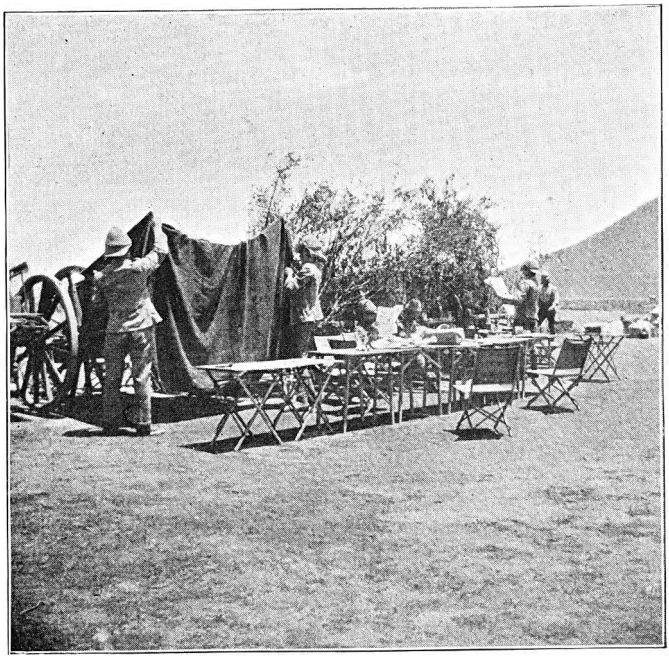
THE 1ST CLASS ARMY RESERVE, 1900.

Strength of D Section on 1st January - - -	124
Strength of other Sections on 1st January - -	49
Total - - -	173
Rejoined the Colours during 1900 - - -	141
Failed to report - - - - - -	1
Rejected on medical grounds - - - -	31
Total - - -	173

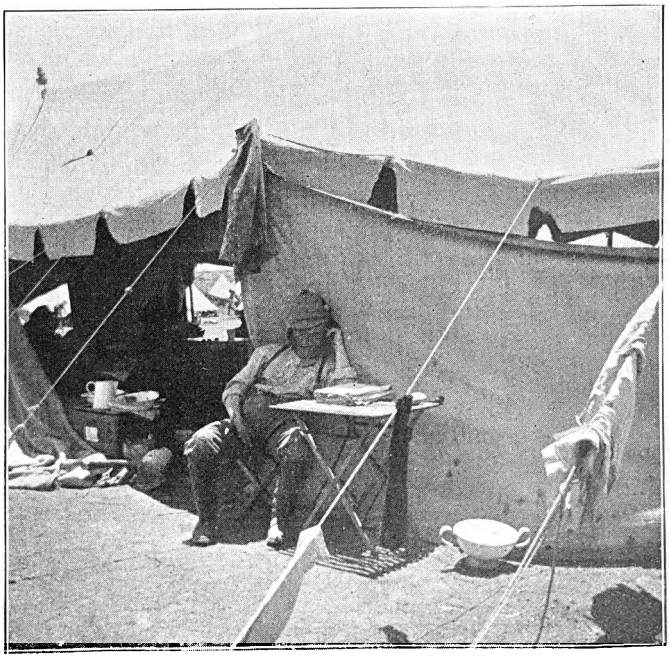
Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google



FOR THE OFFICERS' DINNER.



THE MESS WAITER'S SIESTA.

Digitized by Google

THE
PUB[illegible]RY
ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS

Digitized by Google

STATEMENT SHOWING HOW THE STRENGTH OF THE 1ST BATTALION IN SOUTH AFRICA WAS KEPT UP DURING 1900.

(*Exclusive of the M.I. and Volunteer Companies.*)

INCREASE.

—	Officers.	N.C.O.'s and Men.
Strength of the Battalion on landing in South Africa -	23	638
Draft of 5th February - - - - - - -	5	300
Draft of 19th March - - - - - - - -	2	100
Draft of 29th April - - - - - - - -	1	100
Draft of 28th June - - - - - - - -	2	70
Draft of 21st September - - - - - - -	—	142
Total landed in South Africa - -	33	1350

DECREASE.

—	Officers.	N.C.O.'s and Men.
Deaths from all causes - - - - - - -	3	89
Invalided to England - - - - - - -	6	261
Sent home prisoner - - - - - - - -	—	1
Time expired - - - - - - - - -	—	14
Promoted to Commissions - - - - - - -	—	2
Transferred to the Staff - - - - - - -	3	—
Total decrease - - -	12	367

Digitized by Google

PARTICULARS OF DRAFTS SENT TO THE 1st BATTALION IN SOUTH AFRICA IN 1900.

5th February.—Captain E. M. Childers (2nd Battalion), Captain G. F. Paske (3rd Battalion), Lieuts. Christie-Miller and R. M. Logan (3rd Battalion), Lieut. S. G. R. White (4th Battalion), 85 Details, 43 Section D Reserve, 59 Militia Reserve (4th Battalion), and 113 3rd Battalion.

19th March.—2nd Lieuts. H. F. Ward and R. V. Simpson, 62 Details, 12 Militia Reserve (3rd Battalion), and 26 Militia Reserve (4th Battalion).

29th April.—2nd Lieut. Kirkpatrick, 30 Details, and 70 Transfers from 7th Battalion Rifle Brigade.

28th June.—2nd Lieuts. Scott-Murray and Higgins, 30 Details, 15 3rd Battalion, and 25 Transfers from the Border Regiment.

21st September.—101 Details and 41 3rd Battalion.

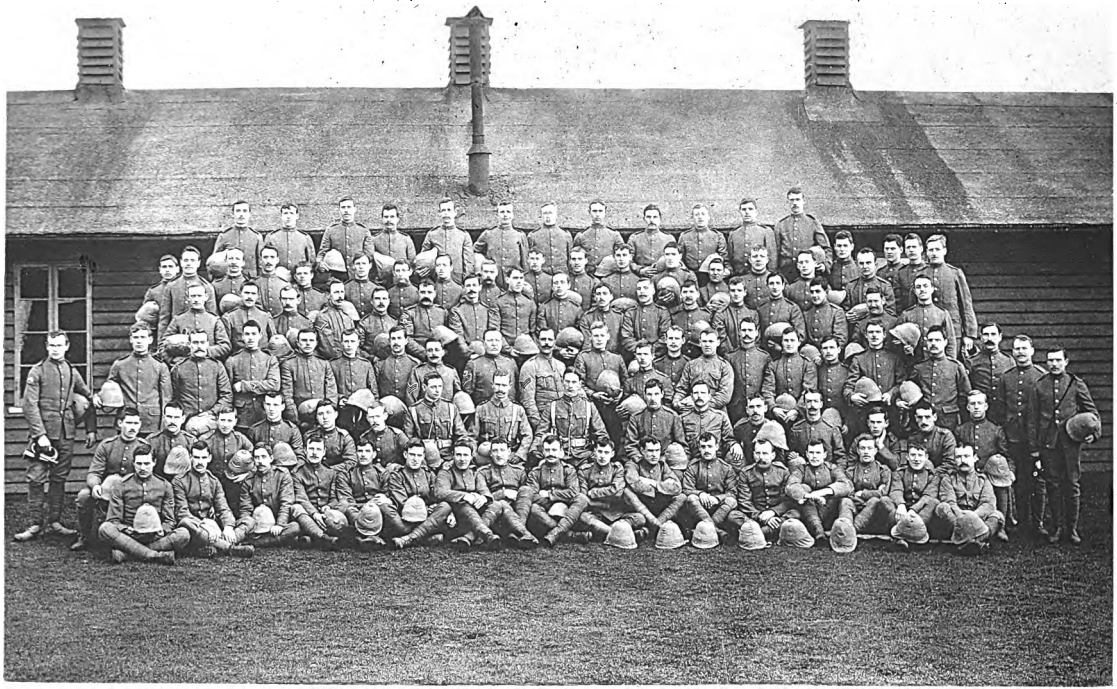
THE VOLUNTEER COMPANY.

This Company left England on the 10th March to join the 1st Battalion in South Africa, and consisted of—Captain M. F. Lathy (1st Oxford University), Lieuts. L. C. Hawkins and C. A. Barron (1st Bucks). and 111 N.C.O.'s and men. During the year two men died of disease and seven men were invalided home, their places being supplied by others sent out from England. Strength of the Company in South Africa on 31st December 1900, three officers and 106 N.C.O.'s and men.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google



[*Woodbury Gravure.*

THE VOLUNTEER COMPANY, OXFORDSHIRE LIGHT INFANTRY.

BEFORE EMBARKATION FOR SOUTH AFRICA, 1900.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

SERVICES AND AGES OF THE N.C.O.'s AND MEN OF THE 1ST BATTALION.

On the 1st December 1900, the strength of the 1st Battalion in South Africa[1] was 1,308 N.C.O.'s and men, viz.:—Regulars and Army Reservists, 886; Militia Reservists and Volunteers, 422.

—	Years of Service.			Years of Age.	
	Under 5.	Over 5.	Over 10.	Between 20 and 24.	Over 24.
Regulars and Army Reservists -	350	197	339	348	538
Militia Reservists - - -	—	—	—	132	185
Volunteers - - - - -	—	—	—	61	44
Total - -	—	—	—	541	767

[1] Including M.I. and Volunteer Companies.

Digitized by Google

CASUALTIES IN SOUTH AFRICA, 1900.

1st Oxfordshire Light Infantry.

I.—KILLED AND DIED OF DISEASE.

Regimental Number.	Rank.	Name.	Date of Death.	Place of Death.	Remarks.
		Killed in Action.			
—	Lieut.	A. R. Bright	18-2-00	Paardeberg.	
—	2nd Lieut.	V. A. Ball-Acton	"	"	
4240	L.-Sergeant	M. Meggs	16-2-00	Klip Kraal.	
5686	L.-Corporal	W. Coleman	"	"	
3743	Private	A. Davis	"	"	
785	"	C. Woodley	"	"	
4791	"	J. Quelch	"	"	
3719	"	J. Comber	"	"	
3027	"	T. A. Cripps	"	"	
1460	"	J. Steward	"	"	
5878	"	C. Cripps	"	"	
5455	L.-Corporal	J. Batstone	18-2-00	Paardeberg.	
3301	Private	J. Goldswain	"	"	
3538	"	F. Yerby	"	"	
5939	"	W. Rudge	"	"	
2994	"	R. Page	"	"	
5634	"	G. Browning	6-6-00	Pretoria.	
5445	"	P. Lawrence	26-7-00	Welegund.	
3934	"	W. Baker	1-12-00	Gottenburg.	
		Died of Wounds Received in Action.			
—	Major	C. R. Day	21-2-00	Paardeberg.	Wounded, 18-2-00.
3529	Private	G. Crouch	16-2-00	Klip Kraal.	
3205	"	J. Broom	17-2-00	Klip Drift.	
3360	"	C. Floyd	"	"	
3561	"	W. Ward	21-2-00	Paardeberg.	Wounded, 18-2-00.
5540	"	A. J. Say	18-3-00	De Aar.	
5661	"	H. Boomer	16-6-00	Johannesburg.	Wounded, 29-5-00, at Elandsfontein.
		Died of Disease.			
2903	Corporal	H. Ward	27-1-00	Cape Town.	
4471	Private	T. Wade	13-3-00	Wynberg.	Dysentery.
3414	"	F. Cook	17-3-00	Bloemfontein.	"
3469	"	W. Quarterman	"	"	"
4629	"	F. Rickson	23-3-00	Not stated.	Enteric.
2963	"	W. Sawbridge	24-3-00	Kimberley.	Dysentery.
3351	"	F. Horwood	27-3-00	Bloemfontein.	Enteric.
2939	"	H. Bateman	30-3-00	"	"
3499	"	C. Warner	"	Cape Town.	Tetanus.
3380	"	H. Buck	1-4-00	Rondesboch.	Typhlitis.
2645	Sergeant	C. Clarke	4-4-00	Bloemfontein.	Enteric.
5604	Private	G. Townsend	6-4-00	Naauwpoort.	"
2916	L.-Corporal	F. Rymell	10-4-00	Bloemfontein.	Dysentery.
5142	Bugler	H. Wyld	11-4-00	Wynberg.	"
4329	"	R. Lester	13-4-00	Cape Town.	Enteric.
2137	Private	F. Coleman	18-4-00	Woodstock.	
4246	L.-Corporal	P. Mason	24-4-00	Bloemfontein.	"
3631	Private	E. Hunt	"	"	"
7303	"	J. Gould	29-4-00	Sterkstroom.	Dysentery.
3603	"	W. Lidgley	7-5-00	Bloemfontein.	Enteric.
5918	"	J. Churm	10-5-00	"	"
3230	"	R. Wilson	14-5-00	"	Dysentery.
5388	Corporal	A. Whale	12-5-00	"	Enteric.
3951	Private	A. Huckins	19-5-00	Springfontein.	"
2369	"	G. King	20-5-00	Bloemfontein.	"
3828	"	A. Edwards	21-5-00	"	"
4452	"	J. Beckley	"	"	"
5697	"	F. Penny	25-5-00	"	"
2455	"	B. Edwards	23-5-00	"	"

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

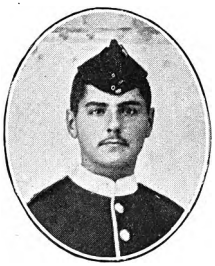
SERGEANT M. MEGGS.
Killed at Klip Kraal.

SERGEANT F. C. WALKER.
Severely wounded at Klip Kraal.

CORPORAL J. GRANT.
Died of Enteric.

PRIVATE W. BAKER.
Killed at Gottenburg.

PRIVATE G. FLECKNER.
Wounded at Kroonstad.



LANCE-CORPORAL J. BATSTONE.
Killed at Paardeberg.

PRIVATE JONES.
Wounded.

CASUALTIES IN SOUTH AFRICA, 1900.

Digitized by Google

ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS
R L

Digitized by Google

Regimental Number.	Rank.	Name.	Date of Death.	Place of Death.	Remarks.
3240	Private	H. Smith	2-6-00	Bloemfontein.	Enteric.
5464	"	W. Wakefield	5-6-00	"	"
3136	"	J. Warner	7-6-00	"	"
3782	"	J. Devoisey	6-6-00	"	"
1494	"	T. Baker	9-6-00	"	"
2155	"	H. Inder	11-6-00	Kroonstad.	Pneumonia.
4610	"	G. Archer	14-6-00	Bloemfontein.	Enteric.
2129	Col.-Sergeant	T. Turnbull	16-6-00	"	"
3701	Private	W. Heydon	18-6-00	"	"
2781	"	W. Barton	19-6-00	"	"
4195	Sergeant	J. Larden	"	"	"
83	L.-Corporal	W. Boon	20-6-00	"	"
6284	Private	G. Jones	21-6-00	Kroonstad.	Pneumonia.
5976	"	A. Stonton	27-6-00	Germeston.	Enteric.
1857	"	T. Harwood	2-7-00	Springfontein.	"
4371	"	J. Simmonds	30-6-00	Kroonstad.	"
3190	"	A. Brown	6-7-00	"	"
3036	"	C. Burgess	3-7-00	Wynberg.	Pericarditis.
7233	"	C. Hobbs	4-7-00	Kroonstad.	Enteric.
5497	"	H. Ockleford	5-7-00	Norval's Pont.	"
2834	"	W. Brooks	10-7-00	Bloemfontein.	"
3423	"	A. Macefield	18-7-00	Kroonstad.	"
5736	"	H. Horton	22-7-00	"	"
1966	Sergeant	W. Dudley	24-7-00	"	"
2485	"	T. Hearn	13-8-00	"	Pneumonia.
4427	Private	A. Hockins	31-8-00	"	Enteric.
3497	"	J. Chitty	18-9-00	"	Pneumonia.
3117	"	J. Faulkner	23-9-00	"	Enteric.
5989	"	A. Wilks	2-11-00	Bloemfontein.	Pneumonia.
3982	Corporal	G. Grove	25-9-00	Kroonstad.	Meningitis.
4098	Private	J. Cole	21-11-00	Heilbron.	Enteric.
5997	"	T. Merry	18-12-00	"	"
6069	L.-Corporal	F. Stopp	10-12-00	"	"
3645	Corporal	J. Grant	17-12-00	Norval's Pont.	"
3745	Private	T. Morris	26-12-00	Kroonstad.	"
		ACCIDENTAL DEATHS.			
4747	Private	S. Turner	5-2-00	Modder River.	Drowned.
5357	"	E. Trinder	27-3-00	Norval's Pont.	Gun-shot.

II.—WOUNDED.

Regimental Number.	Rank.	Name.	Particulars of Wound.			Remarks.
			Date.	Place.	Degree.	
	Lieut.	F. H. Stapleton	16-2-00	Klip Kraal	Severely	Returned to duty in S. Africa.
	Capt.	R. E. Watt	18-2-00	Paardeberg	Slightly	"
	Lieut.	S. F. Hammick	18-2-00	"	"	"
	Capt.	R. Fanshawe	Not reported.			
	"	K. R. Hamilton				
	Lieut.	C. E. Forrest	"	Elandsfontein	Severely	Invalided home.
	Capt.	G. N. Colvile	5-11-00	Bothaville	"	Returned to duty in S. Africa.
5983	L.-Cor.	R. Caudrey	16-2-00	Klip Kraal	Degree of wounds not reported.	
3909	Serg.	F. C. Walker	"	"		
3261	Pte.	J. Dickenson	"	"		
3539	"	J. Gilder	"	"		
3493	"	J. Piddington	"	"		
5414	Bugler	C. Cooke	"	"		
3177	Cor.	F. R. James	"	"		
5426	L.-Cor.	G. A. Parmeter	"	"		
3484	Pte.	A. Mundy	"	"		
3089	"	W. Gibbard	"	"		
3233	"	H. Taylor	"	"		

Digitized by Google

Regimental Number.	Rank.	Name.	Particulars of wound.			Remarks.
			Date.	Place.	Degree.	
2997	Serg.	W. Barker	18-2-00	Paardeberg	Severely.	
3425	L.-Cor.	A. Harrison	"	"	"	
5637	Pte.	T. H. Payne	"	"	"	
2001	C.-Serg.	C. Baldwin	"	"	"	
5504	Pte.	T. Payne	"	"	"	
2611	"	E. Lovick	"	"	"	
3582	"	E. Stratford	"	"	"	
4511	"	E. Whitbread	"	"	"	Dischgd. 6-11-00.
5573	Serg.	F. Colquhoun	"	"	"	Promoted 2nd Lt. Leicestershire Regiment.
257	"	E. Ludlow	"	"	Slightly.	
5921	Pte.	F. Watkins	"	"	"	
2923	"	A. Manders	"	"	"	
3441	"	C. Ridgley	"	"	"	
5591	"	H. Jones	"	"	"	
5471	"	E. Hazell	"	"	"	
5528	"	F. Golds	"	"	"	
2010	Serg.	W. Parry	"	"	"	
3329	Pte.	T. R. Harwood	"	"	"	
3523	"	E. W. Hambridge	"	"	"	
3046	"	A. Darrington	"	"	"	
5932	"	W. Harman	"	"	Severely.	
5351	Bugler	T. Williams	"	"	"	
2130	Pte.	G. Lingwood	"	"	"	
3398	"	C. H. Vernall	"	"	"	
3300	"	F. Gardiner	"	"	"	
5908	"	J. Monks	"	"	"	
5010	"	E. Birch	"	"	"	
3363	L.-Cor.	R. Henessy	"	"	"	
4151	Serg.	A. J. Dunn	"	"	"	Dischgd. 14-11-00.
4336	Pte.	R. G. Cox.	"	"	Dangerously.	
3671	"	W. Lewis	16-2-00	Klip Kraal	"	
3641	"	J. Kearley	"	"	"	Dischgd. 30-11-00.
5740	"	G. Bridger	"	"	Severely.	
2954	"	W. Grace	"	"	"	
3396	"	F. Crawford	"	"	"	Dischgd. 30-11-00.
3352	"	A. Reeves	"	"	"	
2619	"	T. Boyce	"	"	"	
1245	"	C. Cox	"	"	"	
1088	"	G. Snook	"	"	"	
3372	"	W. Lundie	"	"	"	
3251	"	F. North	"	"	"	
5514	"	C. Cook	"	"	"	
3505	Cor.	S. J. Papfield	"	"	"	
3026	Serg.	J. Turner	"	"	Slightly.	
3348	L.-Cor.	C. Grace	"	"	"	
3232	Pte.	A. Charman	"	"	"	
2930	"	W. Bansley	"	"	"	
3518	"	A. Davis	"	"	"	
3649	"	W. Postle	"	"	"	
3051	"	J. Cox	"	"	"	
3910	"	G. Cripps	"	"	"	
5930	"	A. Emery	"	"	"	
3130	"	W. Folland	"	"	"	
5898	"	C. Valentine	"	"	"	
3516	"	A. Rawlings	"	"	"	
3636	"	F. Harris	"	"	"	
2225	"	F. Barnes	"	"	"	
3589	"	H. Selwood	19-2-00	Not stated	Not stated.	
3134	"	T. Mayne	"	"	"	
2096	Serg.	G. Watson	10-5-00	Kroonstad	Severely	Dischgd. 14-11-00.
2410	L.-Cor.	E. Yates	"	"	Slightly.	
4846	Pte.	G. Fleckner	"	"	"	
5615	"	J. Webb	19-7-00	Bethlehem	Not stated.	
4634	"	W. H. Green	1-12-00	Gottenburg	Severely.	
5932	"	W. Sherman	"	"	Not stated.	
6195	"	T. Mackin	"	"	"	
6107	"	R. Jones	"	"	"	
3646	"	A. Sabatini	26-7-00	Welegund	Slightly.	

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

COLOUR-SERGEANT C. BALDWIN.

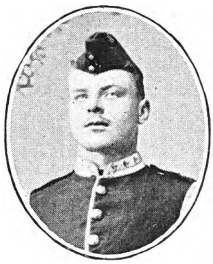
SERGEANT W. PARRY.

Severely wounded at Paardeberg.

BUGLER T. WILLIAMS.

PRIVATE J. MONKS.

Severely wounded at Paardeberg.



PRIVATE T. H. PAYNE.

PRIVATE H. BOOMER.

Killed at Elandsfontein.

PRIVATE J. STEWARD.

Killed at Kiip Kraal.

KILLED AND WOUNDED IN SOUTH AFRICA, 1900.

Digitized by Google

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY
ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS
L

Digitized by Google

2ND BATTALION, 1ST JANUARY 1900.

ROLL OF OFFICERS.

Lieut.-Colonel.

F. H. Plowden (Brevet-Colonel).

Majors.

R. Eccles (Second-in-Command).
P. T. Clark.

Captains.

E. D. White.
C. Parr.[1]
C. C. Pearson.
W. C. Hunter.
J. D. W. Davy.
E. M. Childers.[2]
H. F. Darell-Brown.
K. R. Hamilton.[3]

Lieutenants.

W. Marriott-Dodington.[2]
R. E. Salkeld.
E. R. Clayton.
C. H. Frith.
O. R. L. Hampden.
L. J. Carter.
C. O. Chichester.
C. A. Cardwell.
L. E. S. Ward.
H. C. Nisbet.
H. R. M. Brooke.

2nd Lieutenants.

R. D. Keyworth.
C. J. Mitchell.
J. T. Weatherby.
R. L. Ovey.

Adjutant.

Lieut. R. M. Feilden.

---

[1] Depôt, Oxford.
[2] Leave England.
[3] With 1*st Battalion en route* to South Africa.

Digitized by Google

Acting Paymaster.

Lieut. R. E. Salkeld.

Quartermaster.

Lieut. T. King.

Officers extra-regimentally employed.

Captain D. J. Barton, Adjutant, 2nd Volunteer Battalion.
Captain R. Fanshawe, Special Service, South Africa.
Captain H. R. Davies, Special Service, China.
Captain and Brevet-Major E. A. Stanton, Egyptian Army.
Captain G. S. F. Napier, Intelligence Department, Simla.
Lieut. P. B. Osborn, D.S.O., Uganda.
Lieut. C. H. Richards, temporary half-pay.
2nd Lieut. A. Nicklin, Egyptian Army.

Warrant-Officers and Staff-Sergeants.

Sergeant-Major A. Fergusson.
Bandmaster J. Bradley.
Quartermaster-Sergeant Posselwhite.
Orderly Room Sergeant A. Hunt (Colour-Sergeant).
Sergeant-Bugler Vanner.
Sergeant-Master-Tailor. (*Vacant.*)
Armourer-Sergeant Antrobus.

Digitized by Google

STATE OF THE SECOND BATTALION,

1st January 1900.

Distribution.	Lt.-Colonel.	Majors.	Captains.	Lieutenants.	Adjutant.	Qr. Master.	Paymaster.	Warrant Officers.	Staff Sergeants.	Sergeants.	Lce.-Sergts.	Corporals.	Buglers.	Privates.
Present:—														
On Parade	1	2	2	4	1	—	1	1	—	23	8	18	10	542
Band, Acting Band and Buglers	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	1	—	1	2	—	—	57
Signallers	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	1	1	—	—	8
Pioneers	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	1	—	—	—	8
Absent:—														
Sick	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	1	—	72
Convalescent	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	1	18
At drill	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
On Garrison and Regimental duty (including guards)	—	—	—	—	—	1	—	—	3	3	4	—	—	70
On Leave	—	—	2	2	—	—	—	—	—	4	—	—	—	1
On Command	—	—	—	2	—	—	—	—	—	3	1	1	3	62
Detachment at Fort	—	—	1	1	—	—	—	—	—	5	4	—	2	123
Prisoners	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
At Musketry	—	—	1	5	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	13
Staff	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	—
Total	1	2	6	14	1	1	1	2	3	41	20	20	16	974

COMPANIES OF THE BATTALION.

1st January 1900.

Commander.	Letter.	Subalterns.	Colour-Sergeants.
Captain Pearson	A	Lieut. L. E. S. Ward	Hone.
Captain Darell-Brown	B	Lieuts. Salkeld and Frith	J. Smith.
Captain White	C	Lieut. H. R. M. Brooke and 2nd Lieut. Mitchell	Warnock.
Captain Hunter	D	Lieuts. Hampden and Nisbet	Lockwood.
Captain Childers	E	Lieut. Chichester and 2nd Lieut. Ovey	Roberts.
Captain Hamilton	F	Lieut. Carter and 2nd Lieut. Weatherby	W. Smith.
Major P. T. Clark	G	Lieut. Marriott-Dodington and 2nd Lieut. Keyworth	Linnegar.
Captain Davy	H	Lieuts. Clayton and Cardwell	Havery.

Digitized by Google

RECORD OF THE 2ND BATTALION FOR 1900.

1*st January*.—The Battalion, under the command of Bt.-Colonel F. H. Plowden, was quartered at Ferozepore, India.

6*th January*.—The Battalion moved into camp for manœuvres; strength, 14 officers, 592 N.C.O's and men.

8*th January*.—Lieut. R. E. Salkeld passed an Acting-Paymaster's course at Rawalpindi.

11*th January*.—Captain Davy joined the Battalion from the Regimental Depôt, and took over command of letter "H" Company.

14*th January*.—Lieut. L. J. Carter proceeded to Khar, to take up the appointment of Transport Officer, Malakand Force.

21*st January*.—Lieut. Cardwell and four men returned from a Transport Course at Meean Meer.

22*nd January*.—A party, consisting of Sergeants Stanhope and Vanner and 19 invalids, under the command of Lieut. Nisbet, proceeded to Deolali, *en route* to England.

29*th January*.—The Battalion was inspected by Colonel Dening, D.S.O., Colonel-on-the-Staff, Ferozepore, in outpost duty.

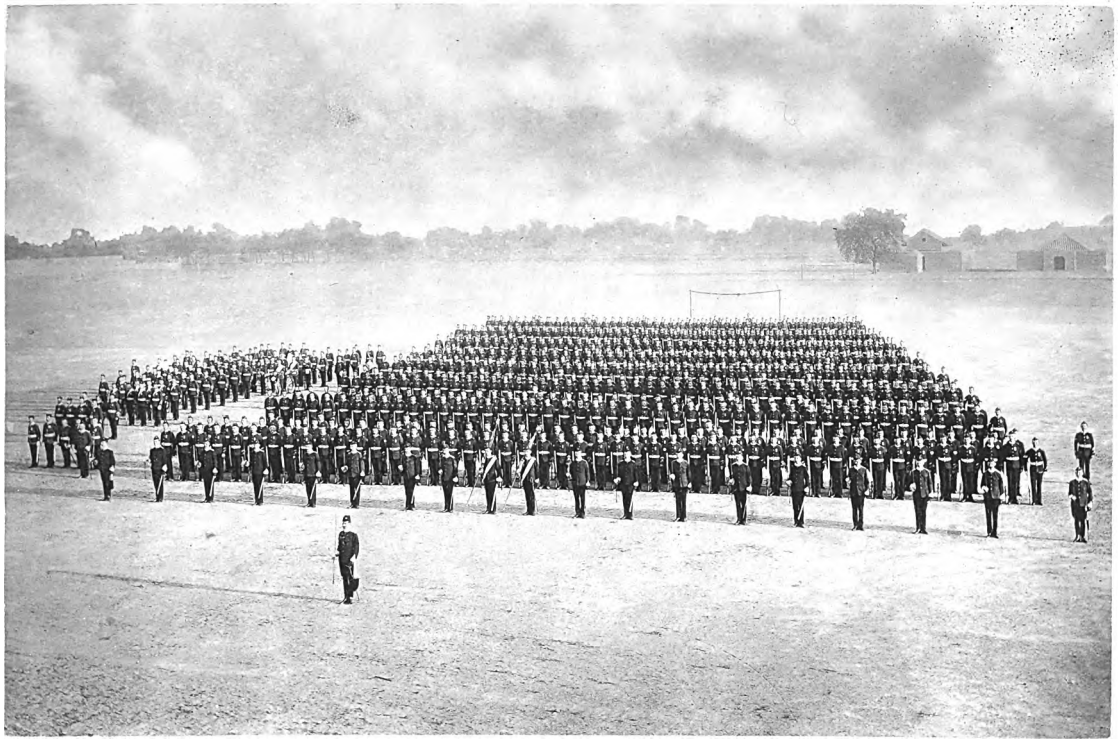
9*th and* 10*th February*.—Inspection by Colonel Dening, D.S.O. Present on parade, 21 Officers, two Warrant Officers, two Staff Sergeants, 866 N.C.O.'s and men; total, 891.

13*th February*.—Colonel Plowden proceeded to Khairabad, to take command of the 2nd Brigade, in the Peshawar manœuvres, Lieut. Chichester accompanying him as Orderly Officer.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google



[*Woodbury Gravure.*

2ND BATTALION ON PARADE AT FEROZEPORE,

900 strong, 21st March, 1900.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

19*th February.*—2nd Lieuts. Keyworth, Weatherby, and Mitchell passed "A" and "B" for promotion.

6*th March.*—Lieut. Marriott-Dodington rejoined Head-quarters from General Leave in England, and took up his duties as Adjutant.

The following was published in Battalion Orders by Colonel F. H. Plowden, commanding:—

"The Commanding Officer wishes to place on record his appreciation of the valuable services, both in the field and in cantonments, rendered by Lieut. R. M. Feilden, during his term of office as Adjutant, and to thank him for the zeal, tact, and ability he has always displayed in carrying out his duties."

Captain Hunter proceeded to England on 6 months leave *on very urgent private affairs.*

13*th March.*—Captain Darell-Brown rejoined from leave in England.

23*rd March.*—Intimation received that Captain K. R. Hamilton has been posted to the 2*nd Battalion* on promotion.

Colonel Plowden proceeded on 90 days privilege leave, Major Eccles assuming command of the Battalion.

1*st April.*—2nd Lieut. H. C. Norman posted to the 2*nd Battalion* on appointment.

2*nd April.*—Lieut. Clayton, accompanying parties to Dalhousie, proceeded to Pathankote, to complete his Transport Course.

Colonel Plowden returned from leave, and left to take up the appointment of Officiating A.A.G. Bengal Command.

10*th April.*—2nd Lieut. Ovey, having been bitten by a mad dog, proceeded on leave to Paris, to be treated at the Pasteur Institute.

12*th April.*—2nd Lieuts. Thorne and Shaw posted to the 2*nd Battalion* on first appointment.

Digitized by Google

The wing, band, and convalescents (strength 484 N.C.O.'s and men) for Dalhousie, left for Mankote Camp. Officers accompanying the wing, Captains White and Davy, Lieuts. Chichester and Cardwell, and 2nd Lieut. Weatherby; Officers with convalescents, Lieut. H. R. M. Brooke, and 2nd Lieut. Mitchell.

15*th April.*—Lieut. Nisbet and 2nd Lieut. Keyworth proceeded on two months' *general leave* to Camba.

24*th April.*—The under-mentioned Officers joined the Battalion, and were posted as follows:—2nd Lieut. A. C. Norman, to Captain Pearson's Company; 2nd Lieut. A. D. Thorne, to Captain Darell-Brown's Company; 2nd Lieut. B. H. Shaw to Major P. T. Clark's Company.

25*th April.*—Lieut. and Adjutant W. Marriott-Dodington, Colour-Sergeants Smith and Harvey, left to attend the 1st Course of Musketry at Changla Gali.

Sergeant Cooper proceeded to Khar, Malakand, on appointment as Transport Sergeant.

27*th April.*—Lieut. Feilden returned from 60 days' *privilege leave*, and took up the duties of Acting Adjutant, during the absence of Lieut. and Adjutant Marriott-Dodington.

8*th May.*—Captain C. C. Pearson passed in "A" and "B" for promotion.

16*th May.*—Colour-Sergeant Hone proceeded to Mysore, to take up the officiating appointment of 1st Class Instructor to the Coorg and Mysore Rifle Volunteers.

Sergeant Lindop appointed Acting Pay-Sergeant to letter "A" Company, during the absence of Colour-Sergeant Hone.

25*th May.*—Intimation received (W.O. letter 112/43/571, dated 27/4/00) that Captain Marriott-Dodington and Lieut. Richards are posted to the 2*nd Battalion*

Digitized by Google

on promotion and on restoration from half-pay respectively.

15*th June.*—Lieut. Hampden proceeded on two months' *general leave* to Kashmir.

18*th June.*—Annual Waterloo Day Sports.

20*th June.*—Captain Darell-Brown proceeded on one month's leave to Kashmir.

4*th July.*—Sergeant Goodman ordered to proceed to China with the Coolie Corps.

12*th July.*—Captain and Adjutant Marriott-Dodington rejoined from a Course of Musketry at Changla Gali.

23*rd July.*—Captain Darell-Brown rejoined from one month's general leave in Kashmir.

24*th July.*—2nd Lieuts. Norman and Shaw left for Dalhousie, for duty with the convalescents and wing respectively.

26*th July.*—Lieut. Frith proceeded on two months' general leave to Kashmir.

27*th July.*—2nd Lieut. Thorne returned to headquarters from Dalhousie.

29*th July.*—2nd Lieut. Mitchell returned to headquarters from Dalhousie.

1*st August.*—Lieut. Salkeld left for Dalhousie to attend a Garrison Class.

3*rd August.*—Colour-Sergeant Warnock ordered to China with Native Field Hospital.

10*th August.*—Sergeant Jefferies and Privates Hions and Fox ordered to China with Field Hospitals.

14*th August.*—Lieut. Hampden returned from two months' general leave in Kashmir.

22*nd August.*—Lieut. L. E. S. Ward left for Kasauli to attend a Signalling Class.

27*th August.*—Captain and Adjutant Marriott-Dodington awarded an Officer's Extra Certificate at the

Digitized by Google

Changla Gali School of Musketry, and Colour-Sergeants Smith and Harvey N.C.O.'s Certificate. (G.O.C.C. $\frac{542}{1900}$).

30*th August*.—Captain Feilden and Lieut. Clayton proceeded on six weeks' general leave to Mussoorie.

22*nd September*.—Captain Hunter returned from leave and Special Service in South Africa.

24*th September*.—Lieut. Clayton qualified in Transport Departmental examination (P.C.O. $\frac{742}{1900}$).

29*th September*.—Farewell order by Colonel F. H. Plowden published:—

In bidding farewell to the Regiment which I have had the honour to command, I wish to express my sincere thanks to the officers, N.C.O.'s, and men, whose willing co-operation and ready obedience has rendered my command an easy, pleasant, and honourable task. The uniform good behaviour of the men, the high sense of duty of the N.C.O.'s, and the zeal and ability of the officers have gained for the Regiment a reputation which, I feel sure, will endure long after I am forgotten.

To have commanded such a Regiment is an honour I shall look back upon with pride during the remainder of my life, and its good name will ever be as dear to me as my own.

I bid good-bye to all, and hope it may be my good fortune to meet you again before the Regiment leaves India.

F. H. PLOWDEN, Colonel,
2nd Oxfordshire Light Infantry.

Belgaum, 21st September, 1900.

17*th October*.—Notification received that 2nd Lieut. H. M. Dillon has been posted to the *2nd Battalion*.

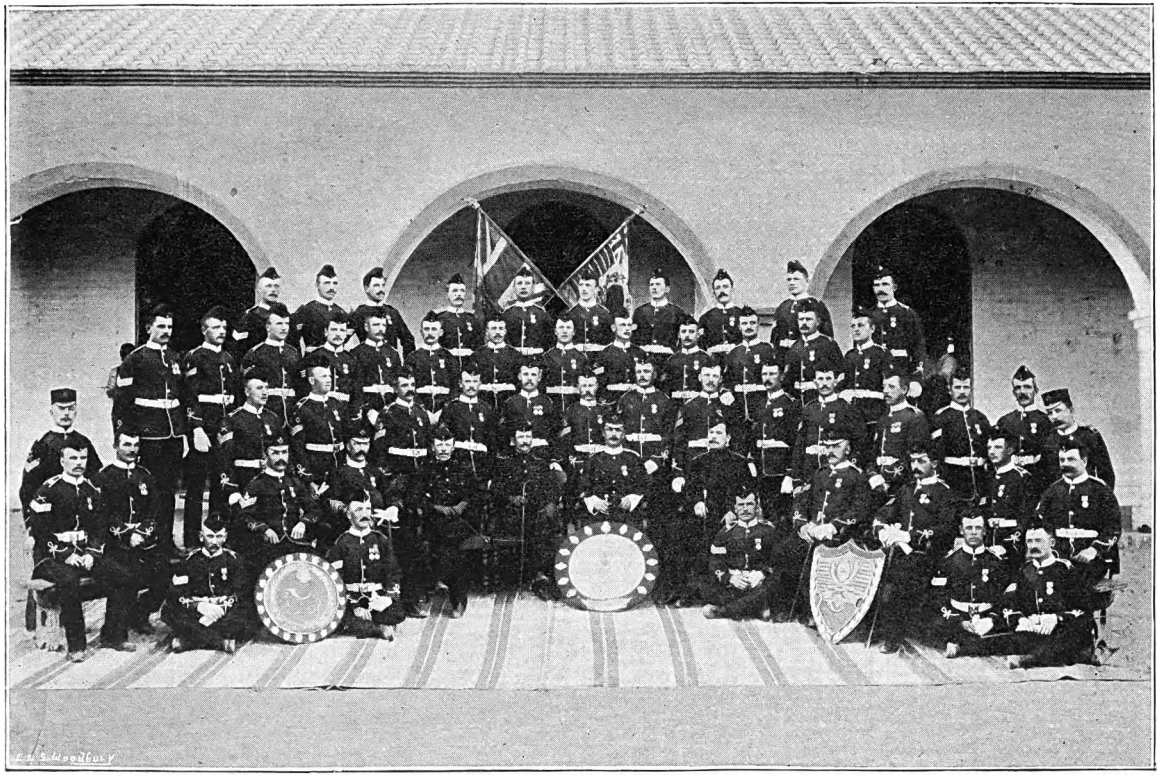
21*st October*.—The Band and convalescents under 2nd Lieut. Shaw arrived from Dalhousie.

23*rd October*.—Lieut. Hampden proceeded to Dalhousie to act as Provost-Marshal to "A" Force, Hill Manœuvres.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google



STAFF AND SERGEANTS, 2ND BATTALION, 1900.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

27*th October.*—The wing at Dalhousie commenced operations in the Dalhousie Hill Manœuvres.

28*th October.*—Captains Darell-Brown and Feilden proceeded to Dalhousie as Assistant-Umpires.

1*st November.*—Notification received that Lieut.-Colonel R. Eccles has been posted to the 2*nd Battalion* on promotion.

5*th November.*—Notification received that Major R. W. Porter has been posted to the 2*nd Battalion* as 2nd in Command.

13*th November.*—79 weakly men, under Lieut. Nisbet, forwarded to Karachi for change of air. The wing (10 officers and 383 rank and file), arrived from Dalhousie.

19*th November.*—Colonel Muir, C.I.E., commanding the Station, presented the Medal for Long Service and Good Conduct to Sergeant Gaskin, after church parade.

2*nd December.*—The wing (A, B, D, and G Companies) which had been quartered at Ferozepore during the hot weather, and which had suffered severely from fever, proceeded to Karachi for change of air; strength, eight officers and 313 rank and file.

7*th December.*—Intimation received from the War Office that Major P. T. Clark has been selected for the appointment of 2nd in Command of the 2*nd Battalion*, *vice* Major R. Eccles, promoted, and that Major R. W. Porter has been appointed to 2nd in Command of the 1*st Battalion* in South Africa.

9*th December.*—Lieut. Frith proceeded to Mian Mir to attend a Transport Class.

13*th December.*—Three N.C.O.'s proceeded to Mian Mir to attend a Transport Class.

24*th December.*—Notification received that Captain E. D. White has been appointed Adjutant, 2nd Volunteer Battalion.

Digitized by Google

Sergeant Mason and Colour-Sergeant Lockwood passed 1st and 2nd respectively in the N.C.O.'s course at the School of Musketry, Changla Gali.

26*th December*.—Lieut. Salkeld passed in C, D, and G, for promotion to the rank of Captain.

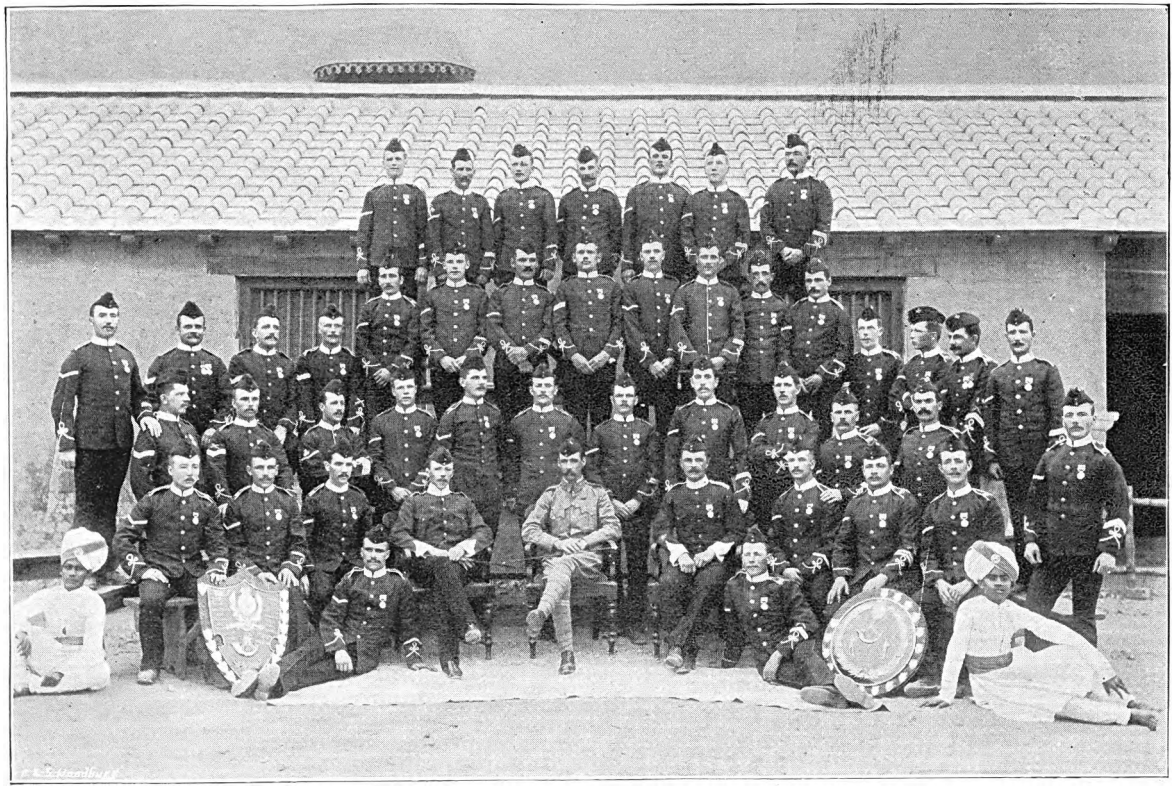
29*th December*.—Captain Hunter appointed Station Staff Officer, Ranikhet.

31*st December*.—Lieut. Salkeld appointed to the East African Rifles.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google



LANCE-CORPORALS, 2ND BATTALION, 1900.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

DALHOUSIE HILL MANŒUVRES.

OCTOBER-NOVEMBER, 1900.

THE following brief account of the manœuvres, in which a wing of the *2nd Battalion* took part this autumn, is interesting as showing how, in India, peace manœuvres are made to resemble, as nearly as possible, actual warfare :—

GENERAL IDEA.

Dalhousie is besieged by a hostile force (civilised) from Chamba, and expects relief from the south.

SPECIAL IDEA, "A" FORCE (SOUTHERN).

"A" Force is proceeding to the relief of Dalhousie. On arrival at Dalhousie, on the 29th October, the officer commanding receives information that the Dalhousie garrison cannot hold out beyond the 3rd November, and also that a covering force has been detached by the enemy to oppose his advance.

SPECIAL IDEA, "B" FORCE (NORTHERN).

"B" Force forms part of the Chamba Force besieging Dalhousie, and has been detached to Bakloh, to prevent any relief being afforded to the Dalhousie garrison. It is understood that the garrison cannot hold out beyond the 3rd November.

DIARY.

October 27th.—Wing—strength, 9 officers and 374 rank and file—marched to Naini Khud from Mankote Camp. Baggage by the cart-road, troops *viâ* Katalag. Major Clark remained to act as umpire to "B" Force. Officers with the wing :—Captain E. D. White (commanding), Captain Davy, Captain Carter, Lieuts. Chichester, H. Brooke, Weatherby, and Norman. Transport Officer, Lieut. Cardwell ; Acting-Adjutant, Lieut. Salkeld.

October 28th.—Marched from Naini Khud to Dunera, 10 miles.

October 29th.—Marched from Dunera to Nurpur, *viâ* Old Dunera and the Chakki River, about 13 miles. Crossed the Chakki by a temporary bridge. Camped for the night on a plateau above the stream on the east of the town. "A" Force was divided as follows :—

No. 1 COLUMN.—Wing, Oxfordshire Light Infantry, 2 Companies East Lancashire, 2nd Battalion 1st Gurkhas, 3 Companies 1st Battalion 1st Gurkhas, Gurkha Scouts, 33rd Punjab Infantry Scouts.

Digitized by Google

Kits were restricted to 15 lbs., and consisted of 2 blankets, 1 shirt, 1 pair socks, 1 towel, 1 tin dubbin, and 1 piece of soap. No tents were allowed, except 1 hospital tent. 200 rounds of blank ammunition per man were carried—50 rounds in the pouches, 100 rounds in the 1st Reserve, 50 rounds in the 2nd Reserve. All heavy kits were packed in the blanket bags and stored at the Guard Room this evening. Ball ammunition was handed over to the Gurkha Guard. Column ordered to march at 6 a.m., leaving all tents standing. 16 men, under 2nd Lieut. Norman, to be left in charge of the kits. The Column was in possession of mule transport.

No. 2 COLUMN.—3 Companies Inniskilling Fusiliers, Bedfordshire Regiment Scouts, and certain native troops as scouts. With tents, field hospital, tongas, etc., to march at 9 a.m.

No.3 COLUMN.—3 Companies Gurkhas, 1 Company 23rd Pioneers, Gurkha Scouts. Lightly equipped, to march at 4 a.m. 40th Pathan Scouts, with coolie transport, to march at 4 a.m.

October 30th.—No. 1 Column marched two and a half miles towards the north-east; then bivouacked in the bed of a stream. Oxfordshire wing found three picquets of one section each for half the day, and a fatigue party of 40 men built a road out of camp, as the entrance and exit were very difficult. Baggage taken:—"A" Baggage (accompanying units), 1st Reserve ammunition, Pakal mules, intrenching tools, cooking pots, signalling stores, and medical mule. "B" Baggage (in rear of the Column, in order of march of units, with ammunition massed at the head), 2nd Reserve ammunition, staff baggage, kits (by units), officer's baggage, commissariat, spare animals. Baggage guards, two men per Company, except when otherwise ordered.

October 31st.—Column marched at 3 a.m. in a northerly direction about five miles, then turned sharply to the west, and bivouacked in a small valley among fir trees. Bivouac restricted and small. Only three cooking-places allowed, viz., 1 for Europeans, 1 for native troops, and 1 for native followers.

November 1st.—Oxfordshire Wing found four section-picquets, one post observing the bridge over the Chakki. Marched at 5.30 p.m., the Column being preceded by a working party of 2 Companies Oxfordshire, 2 Companies Gurkhas, half Company 23rd Pioneers, with a covering party of scouts. The route lay in a westerly direction towards the Chakki, mostly along the bed of a stream, which had to be constantly forded. A great extent of road had to be made entirely, and nearly all the remainder of the road had to be improved. The Chakki was crossed about midnight, and the force bivouacked on the right bank.

Digitized by Google

November 2nd.—March resumed at 5 a.m. towards the north, by an old paved Sikh road for about three miles, when the road was left and a track followed for about two and a half miles. The force bivouacked in order of march on the track at about 9.30 a.m., the Oxfordshire wing finding two picquets of one group sentry each.

At 5.30 p.m. the march was continued along the track until the Pathankote Dalhousie cart road was reached, about half way between Dhar and Dunera. The Column then followed the cart road, and reached Dunera about 11.30 p.m., when it bivouacked. The detachment East Lincolnshire Regiment moved off along the old road to assist No. 2 Column in the passage of the Chakki.

November 3rd.—All Columns converged in an attack on Bakloh. It was reported that half the Bakloh garrison had moved out to oppose No. 3 Column. The heavy baggage from Nurpur had yesterday reached the left bank of the Chakki, with orders to cross the river to-day, rejoin the light baggage at Dunera, and then move on Naini Khud as soon as the road should be opened by the attacking force.

The dispositions for the attack on Bakloh were as follows :—On the left, Oxfordshire Wing and Gurkha Scouts ; on the right, 2nd Battalion 1st Gurkhas and East Lancashire. The General Reserve (1st Battalion 1st Gurkhas) marched by the cart road on the extreme left, No. 2 Column being with the convoy. The 40th Pathans made a demonstration in the Taraghar direction, and No. 3 Column pushed the attack from the Chohari direction.

At about 9 a.m. the left attack crossed the Dunera ridge in extended order, and dropped through the fir woods, across the cartroad, into a deep and concealed nullah, up which the force marched.

On leaving the shelter of the nullah to commence the ascent of Bakloh Hill, the enemy's picquets opened fire, and were at once attacked by F Company and part of C Company Oxfordshire Light Infantry. The picquets were, however, too strong, and the attack was checked, until the remainder of the force pressed in on the right flank of the picquets, and obliged them to retire.

The left force had made a general advance, captured a certain number of the enemy, and gained the top of the hill at 1.30 p.m., when it was discovered that the defenders had concentrated to oppose our right attacking force, which they were successfully holding in check. The timely arrival of the left force on the enemy's flank, however, soon brought matters to a close, and when the "Cease-fire" sounded at 3 p.m. the defenders were being driven down a spur towards Taraghar.

Digitized by Google

THE DEPÔT, 1st JANUARY 1900.

Roll of Officers.

Colonel.

James Arthur Strachan (*late* 43*rd*).

Major.

G. F. Mockler.[1]

Captains.

C. Parr.
K. R. Hamilton.[1]

Lieutenant.

S. F. Hammick.[1]

Adjutant.

Captain R. G. H. Hughes.

Quartermaster.

Captain G. A. Hirst.

In Command of Details in Ireland.

Captain C. J. Wilkie.

Warrant Officers and Staff Sergeants.

Sergeant-Major Walter Brazier.
Quartermaster-Sergeant Levi James Ellis.
Quartermaster-Sergeant (Orderly Room) George Henderson.

---

[1] With 1*st Battalion* in South Africa.

Digitized by Google

DEPÔT STATE, 1st January, 1900.

Colonel.	Captain.	Lieutenants.	Warrant-Officer.	Sergeants.	Buglers.	Corporals.	Privates.
1	1	–	1	17	2	15	362

Increase and Decrease (1st October 1899 to 30th September 1900).

Increase.

Joined as Recruits - - -	242
Joined from Desertion - - -	8
Transfers received - - - -	2
From 1st and 2nd Battalions abroad	318
From 1st Battalion at Home - -	283
From Army Reserve - - -	578
From Militia Reserve - - -	311
From Volunteer Companies - -	117
Total -	1859

Decrease.

Died - - - - - -	4
Discharged - - - - -	61
Deserted - - - - -	15
Transfers to Militia and Volunteers	—
Transfers to Regular Army - -	11
To 1st and 2nd Battalion abroad -	861
To 1st Battalion at Home - -	406
To Militia Reserve - - -	35
Total -	1393

Digitized by Google

STRENGTH OF 1ST CLASS ARMY RESERVE OXFORDSHIRE LIGHT INFANTRY.

——	Sergeants.	Corporals.	Buglers.	Privates.
On 1st October 1899 - - -	11	47	1	520
Increase -	—	—	—	—
Total -	11	47	1	520
Decrease -	11	47	1	519
On 30th September 1900 - -	—	—	—	1

Amount paid to above from 1st October 1899 to 30th September 1900, 1,397*l.* 0*s.* 2*d.*

ARMY PENSIONERS, 43RD REGIMENTAL DISTRICT.

FOR THE YEAR ENDING 30TH SEPTEMBER 1900.

Sergeant-Majors.	Bandmasters.	Schoolmasters.	Quartermaster-Sergeants.	Sergeant-Instructors Musketry.	Sergeant-Instructors Gymnastics.	Sergeant-Master-Tailor.	Bugle-Majors.	Colour-Sergeants.	Sergeants.	Corporals.	Lance-Corporals.	Bandsmen.	Buglers.	Privates.	Total.
10	3	2	10	5	2	1	6	49	70	42	3	2	5	412	622

Amount of Pensions paid from 1st October 1899 to 30th September 1900, 13,610*l.* 7*s.*

Digitized by Google

RECORD OF THE DETAILS.

On the 1*st January* the Details of the 1*st Battalion*, under the command of Captain C. J. Wilkie, were quartered in New Barracks, Limerick.

12*th January*.—A party of 20 recruits joined from Oxford.

17*th January*.—Captain Paske, 3*rd Battalion* (doing duty with the Details), with 30 N.C.O.'s and men, proceeded to Buttevant as advance party to take over barracks.

18*th January*.—The 3*rd Battalion* [Royal Bucks Militia], under the command of Colonel the Earl of Orkney, and the Details from Limerick, arrived at Buttevant.

19*th January*.—The Details returned to various barracks at Limerick, owing to want of sufficient accommodation at Buttevant.

24*th January*.—The Details again proceeded to Buttevant, and joined the 3*rd Battalion*, Captain Wilkie being appointed to act as Adjutant and Quartermaster.

89 Section "D" Reservists and 59 4*th Battalion* Militia Reservists joined the Details from Oxford.

26*th January*.—Captain E. M. Childers, and Lieut. Marrable (Lancashire Fusiliers) joined for duty with the Draft about to be despatched to South Africa.

3*rd February*.—The Draft, 300 strong (including 113 men of the 3*rd Battalion*), paraded for inspection by Colonel D. Johnston, who addressed the men, and expressed himself as highly pleased with their appearance. In the evening the Draft was hospitably entertained by Colonel the Earl of Orkney and the officers of the 3*rd Battalion*.

4*th February*.—Each man of the Draft was presented

Digitized by Google

with a pipe, pouch, and half pound of tobacco, provided by Lord Rothschild and his brother, and each officer received 100 cigars from the same source.

5*th February*.—The Draft, 300 strong, and the following officers, viz. :—Captain E. M. Childers, Captain G. F. Paske (3*rd Battalion*), Lieut. Marrable (Lancashire Fusiliers), Lieuts. Logan and Christie-Miller (3*rd Battalion*), and Lieut. White (4*th Battalion*), proceeded by special train at 8.45 a.m. to Queenstown, where they embarked in Transport *Canada* for South Africa.

9*th February*.—2nd Lieut. H. F. Ward joined the Details on first appointment to the Regiment, and was posted to K Company.

19*th February*.—2nd Lieut. E. H. Kirkpatrick joined the Details on first appointment to the Regiment, and was posted to L Company.

23*rd February*.—20 recruits joined the Details from Oxford.

2nd Lieut. R. V. Simpson joined the Details, on first appointment to the Regiment, and was posted to K Company.

15*th March*.—Captain F. G. D. Thoroton, 3*rd Battalion*, joined for duty, and took over command of L Company.

17*th March*.—Colonel Temple inspected the Draft for South Africa.

19*th March*.—2nd Lieuts. Ward and Simpson, with a Draft of 100 men, embarked at Queenstown to join the 1*st Battalion* in South Africa, 2nd Lieut. Ward in command.

8*th April*.—A party of recruits arrived from the Depôt.

11*th April*.—2nd Lieut. Scott-Murray joined the Details on first appointment to the Regiment, and was posted to K Company.

Digitized by Google

22*nd April.*—22 men from the 7*th Battalion* Rifle Brigade arrived, and were taken on the strength of the 1st Oxfordshire Light Infantry.

29*th April.*—A Draft of 100 men, with 2nd Lieut. Kirkpatrick, proceeded (under the command of Captain Ricardo, of the Inniskilling Fusiliers) to Queenstown, and embarked in Transport *Cheshire* to join the 1*st Battalion* in South Africa. This Draft included all the 72 transfers and Sergeant Munn from the Depôt.

2*nd May.*—The Details marched to Kilworth Camp with the 3*rd Battalion* (Royal Bucks Militia), to be stationed there under canvas for the summer, leaving all heavy baggage at Buttevant. The 5*th Battalion* K.R. Rifles took over the barracks at Buttevant.

1*st June.*—2nd Lieut. C. G. Higgins, posted to K Company on appointment.

25*th June.*—Inspection of the South African Draft by Brigadier-General Cutbill, commanding the Kilworth Militia Brigade.

28*th June.*—The Draft for South Africa, under the command of 2nd Lieut. Scott-Murray, proceeded from Mitchelstown to embark at Queenstown in H.M's Hired Transport *Canada*. *Officers*—2nd Lieut. F. J. Scott-Murray, and 2nd Lieut. C. G. Higgins; *N.C.O.'s and Men*—Details, 30; 3rd Oxfordshire Light Infantry, 15; Transfers from Border Regiment, 25. Total of all ranks, 72.

1*st July.*—M Company of the Details formed.

9*th July.*—The Companies of the Details at Field Training inspected by the Brigadier-General.

10*th July.*—Annual Course of Musketry commenced.

1*st August.*—N Company of the Details formed.

7*th August.*—2nd Lieut. M. ff. R. Wingfield, from the 4th Battalion, posted to K Company on appointment.

Digitized by Google

15*th August.*—H.R.H. the Duke of Connaught, K.G., etc., Commander of the Forces in Ireland, witnessed the Militia Brigade and Details at Field Firing, and afterwards inspected the Camp.

20*th August.*—Annual Inspection of the Details by Brigadier-General Cutbill.

20*th September.*—The Draft for South Africa inspected by the Brigadier-General.

21*st September.*—The Draft for South Africa, consisting of 101 Details and 41 3rd Oxfordshire Light Infantry, under the command of Captain Ellis, East Surrey Regiment, proceeded from Fermoy to Southampton, and embarked on the following day in H.M's Hired Transport *Aurania.*

4*th October.*—A severe gale wrecked the Camp.

5*th October.*—The 3rd Oxfordshire Light Infantry and Details proceeded by road to Buttevant.

31*st October.*—The 3rd Oxfordshire Light Infantry proceeded to High Wycombe for demobilization, Captain Paske and Lieut. F. F. Tarver joining the Details for duty.

2*nd November.*—2nd Lieut. E. H. Kirkpatrick (invalided from South Africa) rejoined the Details, and was posted to L Company; Captain Paske posted to K Company *vice* Captain Wilkie, and Lieut. Tarver posted to the command of N Company.

19*th November.*—Intimation received that the Annual Inspection of the Details had been satisfactory.

3*rd December.*—The Draft for India inspected by Major-General Sir Hugh McCalmont, K.C.B.

7*th December.*—A Draft, composed of 45 R and F, with Lieuts. Ovey and Dillon, proceeded to Queenstown, and embarked for India to join the 2*nd Battalion*—the first Draft sent to India since the departure of the 1*st Battalion* for South Africa.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Lieut. Hon. G. W. F. S. Foljambe 2nd Lieut. G. A. Sullivan Capt. Marescaux, A.D.C. Lieut. C. F. Henley
Lieut. L. F. Scott Capt. Rattray, R.A.M.C. Lieut. S. F. Hammick Major Pike, R.A.M.C. Lieut. H. L. Wood

Capt. R. E. Watt Capt. F. J. Henley Lt.-Col. Hon. A. E. Dalzell Major-Gen. C. Knox Major R. W. Porter Capt. F. G. L. Lamotte
Lieut. A. G. Bayley Capt. E. A. Lethbridge Lieut. and Quartermaster W. Ross

OFFICERS, 1ST BATTALION.

BLOEMFONTEIN, MARCH 1900.

Digitized by Google

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY
BOOK AND
ANNOTATIONS

Digitized by Google

EXTRACTS FROM THE "LONDON GAZETTE," 1900.

19*th January*.—The under-mentioned Gent.-Cadets from the Royal Military College, to be 2nd Lieutenants. Dated 26th January 1900.

Hamilton Frederick Ward, in succession to Lieut. C. Cator, resigned.

Rupert Victor Simpson, on augmentation.

23*rd January*.—2nd Lieut. Edward Hartley Kirkpatrick, Gent. (University Candidate), from the 13th Middlesex V.R.C., to be 2nd Lieutenant in succession to Lieut. F. J. Henley, promoted. Dated 24th January 1900.

13*th February*.—The under-mentioned officers to be 2nd Lieutenants on augmentation. Dated 14th February 1900:—

Lieut. Ronald Mackenzie Logan, from the 3*rd Battalion*.

Lieut. Stephen George Raymond White, from the 4*th Battalion*.

16*th February*.—Alfred Cecil Norman, Gent. (University Candidate), to be 2nd Lieutenant in succession to Lieut. K. R. Hamilton, promoted. Dated 17th February 1900.

20*th February*.—The undermentioned Gent.-Cadets, from the Royal Military College, to be 2nd Lieutenants. Dated 21st February 1900:—

Arthur Charles Drought Thorne, on augmentation.

Bertie Hatfield Shaw, in succession to Lieut. L. F. Scott, seconded.

2*nd March*.—Lieut. W. Marriott-Dodington to be Adjutant, *vice* Lieut. R. M. Feilden, whose period of

Digitized by Google

service in that appointment has expired. Dated 1st March 1900.

6th March.—2nd Lieut. H. L. Wood to be Lieutenant *vice* A. R. Bright, killed in action. Dated 19th February 1900.

9th March.—Captain M. F. Lathy, *1st Volunteer Battalion*, is granted the temporary rank of Captain in the Army whilst serving with the Volunteer Company in South Africa. Dated 10th March 1900.

The under-mentioned officers are granted the temporary rank of Lieutenant in the Army whilst serving with the Volunteer Company in South Africa. Dated 10th March 1900 :—

Lieut. L. C. Hawkins, 1st Bucks, V.R.C.

Lieut. C. A. Barron, 1st Bucks, V.R.C.

13th March.—Captain D. J. Barton to be Major *vice* C. R. Day, died of wounds received in action. Dated 27th February 1900.

3rd April.—The undermentioned Lieutenants to be Captains :—

A. J. F. Eden, in succession to Major F. J. Evelegh, a prisoner of war. Dated 24th February 1900.

R. M. Feilden, *vice* A. J. F. Eden, seconded for service under the Colonial Office. Dated 24th February 1900.

2nd Lieut. J. F. C. Fuller, to be Lieutenant *vice* R. M. Feilden, promoted. Dated 24th February 1900.

2nd Lieut. Francis Joseph Scott-Murray, from the *3rd Battalion*, to be 2nd Lieutenant *vice* V. A. Ball-Acton, killed in action. Dated 4th April, 1900.

6th April.—The undermentioned Lieutenants to be Captains. Dated 27th February 1900 :—

P. B. Osborn, D.S.O., in succession to Major D. J. Barton, Adjutant of Volunteers.

Digitized by Google

W. Marriott-Dodington, Adjutant, to complete establishment.

L. J. Carter, *vice* P. B. Osborn, D.S.O., seconded for service under the Foreign Office.

Supernumerary Lieut. C. H. Richards, from half-pay, to be Lieutenant, with precedence next below Lieut. C. F. Henley, *vice* L. J. Carter, promoted. Dated 7th April 1900.

17*th April.*—A. S. Crum, Esq., *late* Lieutenant Oxfordshire Light Infantry, to be Captain (with the temporary rank of Captain in the Army) The Imperial Yeomanry. Dated 18th April 1900.

24*th April.*—Captain E. G. Mansel, Reserve of Officers (*late* Oxfordshire Light Infantry), to be Adjutant Royal Irish Fusiliers Reserve Regiment. Dated 11th March 1900.

1*st May.*—2nd Lieut. Charles Græme Higgins, from the 3*rd Battalion York and Lancaster Regiment*, to be 2nd Lieutenant in succession to Lieut. A. R. Bright, killed in action. Dated 21st April 1900.

22*nd May.*—*Prince of Wales's Volunteers* (*South Lancashire Regiment*), Sergeant Frank Hudson, from the Oxfordshire Light Infantry, to be 2nd Lieutenant. Dated 23rd May 1900.

6*th July.*—*Half-pay*, Major A. F. Mockler-Ferryman, from the Oxfordshire Light Infantry, to be Lieutenant-Colonel. Dated 7th July 1900.

13*th July.*—*Royal Military College*, Lieut.-Colonel A. F. Mockler-Ferryman, from half-pay, to be a Professor, in succession to Lieut.-Colonel W. W. C. Verner, who has vacated that appointment. Dated 7th July 1900.

Lance-Sergeant Frederick Colquhoun, from the Oxfordshire Light Infantry, to be 2nd Lieutenant the *Leicestershire Regiment*, on augmentation. Dated

Digitized by Google

5th May 1900, but not to carry pay or allowances prior to 14th July 1900.

17*th July*.—Captain G. S. F. Napier, a Staff-Captain, to be Deputy Assistant Quartermaster-General, Intelligence Branch, Quartermaster-General's Department, India. Dated 6th May, 1900.

20*th July*.—Captain R. G. H. Hughes to be Major, *vice* A. F. Mockler-Ferryman, promoted Lieutenant-Colonel on half-pay. Dated 7th July 1900.

3*rd August*.—2nd Lieut. Maurice ffolliott Rhys Wingfield, from the 4*th Battalion*, to be 2nd Lieutenant supernumerary to the establishment. Dated 21st April 1900, but not to carry pay and allowances prior to 4th August 1900.

REWARDS FOR SERVICES IN CONNECTION WITH THE RECENT MILITARY OPERATIONS IN THE SOUDAN:—

Third Class, Medjidieh, Brevet-Major E. A. Stanton.

Fifth Class, Medjidieh, 2nd Lieut. A. Nicklin.

10*th August*.—Gent.-Cadet Luke Tunnard, from the Royal Military College, to be 2nd Lieutenant supernumerary to the Establishment. Dated 11th August 1900.

14*th August*.—*Lines of Communication, South Africa*, Captain R. Fanshawe, to be a Staff Captain, as Staff Officer to an Assistant-Inspector-General. Dated 23rd December 1899.

24*th August*.—Lieut. C. H. Richards is seconded for service in the Army Pay Department. Dated 30th July 1900.

28*th August*.—2nd Lieut. R. D. Keyworth, to be Lieutenant, *vice* C. H. Richards, seconded. Dated 30th July 1900.

4*th September*.—The undermentioned officer to be 2nd Lieutenant. Dated 18th April 1900, but not to carry pay and allowances prior to 5th September 1900.

Digitized by Google

Lieut. Henry Mountford Dillon, from *3rd Battalion, North Lancashire Regiment*, in succession to Lieut. C. H. Richards, seconded.

18th September.—Major R. Eccles, to be Lieutenant-Colonel, *vice* Brevet-Colonel F. H. Plowden, removed on appointment to the Staff. Dated 2nd September 1900.

28th September.—Half-pay, Major F. J. Evelegh, from the Oxfordshire Light Infantry, to be Lieutenant-Colonel. Dated 27th September 1900.

23rd October.—Captain R. Fanshawe to be Major, *vice* R. Eccles promoted. Dated 2nd September, 1900.

26th October.—Captain C. E. G. M. Fairtlough to be Major, *vice* F. J. Evelegh, promoted Lieutenant-Colonel on half-pay. Dated 27th October, 1900.

2nd November.—The following appointments are made to the Staff of the China Expedition, with effect from the dates of assuming duty:—

To be Special Service Officers.—Captain H. R. Davies, Oxfordshire Light Infantry; Captain G. S. F. Napier, Oxfordshire Light Infantry.

9th November.—Lieut. L. F. Scott to be Captain in succession to Major C. E. G. M. Fairtlough, Adjutant *3rd Battalion.* Dated 27th September, 1900.

4th December.—Bt.-Colonel F. H. Plowden, from Lieut.-Colonel Oxfordshire Light Infantry, to be an Assistant-Adjutant-General in India, and to be granted the substantive rank of Colonel in the Army, *vice* Colonel F. S. K. Stokes, whose period of service in that appointment has expired. Dated 2nd September, 1900.

21st December.—The following appointments to the Staff, made in South Africa, are confirmed:—To be graded as *Staff Captains:*—Lieut. F. H. Stapleton, Oxfordshire Light Infantry, whilst attached to the Field Intelligence Department. Dated 20th April, 1900.

Digitized by Google

Appendix to *Army Order* 156 of 1900:—

MEDALS FOR LONG SERVICE AND GOOD CONDUCT.—*Oxfordshire Light Infantry*—No. 397, Private W. Hapgood (with gratuity); No. 414, Sergeant-Instructor of Musketry T. Emery (without gratuity).

Appendix to *Army Order* 215 of 1900:—

MEDAL FOR LONG SERVICE AND GOOD CONDUCT.—*Oxfordshire Light Infantry*—No. 552, Sergeant T. Gaskin.

SIGNALLING, 1900.

2ND BATTALION.

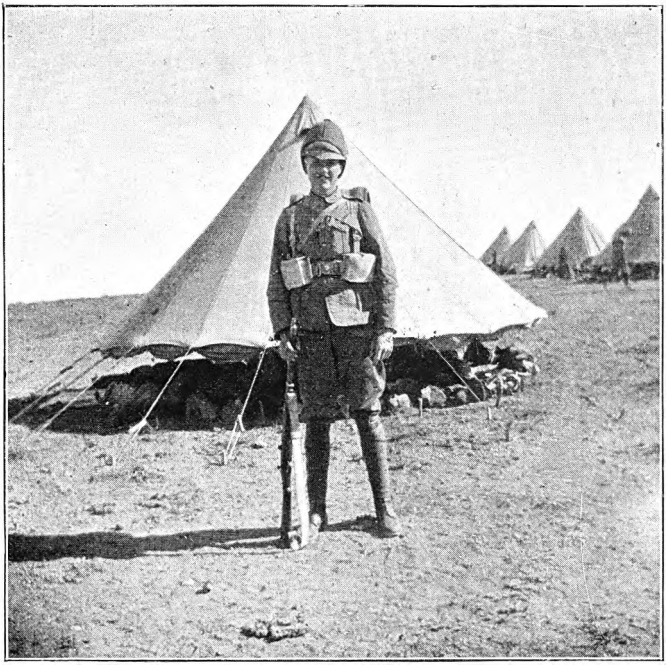
Result of Annual Inspection:—

Figure of Merit, 838·32.
Place in Order of Merit in India, 24.
Regimental Signallers examined, 6.
Supernumeraries examined, 12.
Nature of examination, Heliograph, Flag, Semaphore, Lamp.
Number of efficient Signallers, 6.
Entitled to prizes of Rs. 10 each, 8 Assistant Instructors and Signallers.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google



HON. G. W. F. S. FOLJAMBE.

NEWS FROM HOME.

Digitized by Google

NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY
ASTOR, LENOX AND TILDEN FOUNDATIONS

Digitized by Google

MUSKETRY.

1st Battalion.

The following competition took place at Heilbron, Orange River Colony, on the 27th December:—

Inter-Company Sharp-shooters' Match.—Teams: Eight men (including Corporals and Lance-Corporals) under a Sergeant. *Dress:* Drill order, with braces and two pouches. Eight targets, 8 inches in diameter, two paces apart. Distances unknown.

Conditions.—Two teams will be drawn up in extended order, about 350 yards from the targets, and will number off from right to left. On the signal to commence from the superintending officer, the teams will advance at the double to the firing point and open fire. One minute allowed from time of starting until the "Cease-fire" is ordered by the superintending officer. On a target being knocked down or broken, the corresponding man of the opposite team will be ordered to fall out as a casualty, and will take no further part in the competition. The team with most men in at the end to win. Position, any military. Ties to shoot again.

Prizes (presented by Major R. W. Porter).—1st, 5*l.*; 2nd, 2*l.* 10*s.* Won by E, or Major G. F. Mockler's Company; 2nd, B, or Captain F. J. Henley's Company.

Digitized by Google

2nd Battalion.

Annual Course, 1899—1900.

Number of men exercised - - - -	923
Marksmen - - - - - - - -	218
2nd Class - - - - - - - -	641
3rd Class - - - - - - - -	64
Figure of Merit in practices for classification -	85
Percentage in Field Practices (Table "B") -	47

Lance-Corporal Graham.
Best Shot, 2nd Battalion (Gold Medal).

The Depôt

Annual Course of Musketry (fired at Pirbright during 1900).

Rifle, Magazine (Lee-Metford), Mark I.*

Number exercised, 67: Officers, 1; Sergeants, 6; Rank and File, 60.

Figures of Merit, $\frac{87}{52}$.

Best Shooting Company, Major G. F. Mockler's.

Best Shot of the Depôt, Lance-Corporal Pegler.

Digitized by Google

FIGURES OF MERIT.

Company.	Range Practices.	Field Practices.
A, or Major G. F. Mockler's Coy. -	93	54
B, or Lieut. S. F. Hammick's „ -	90	54
C, or Captain C. Parr's „ -	77	46
D, or Captain K. R. Hamilton's „ -	90	54

CLASSIFICATION AND PER CENTAGES.

Marksmen.	1st Class.	2nd Class.	3rd Class.
17 25	Nil	48 71	2 2

THE DETAILS, 1ST BATTALION.

MUSKETRY TRAINING, 1900.

THE training was carried out at Kilworth, Ireland, with the following results:—

Number (all ranks) exercised in Table "B," 221.

Figure of Merit, $\frac{67}{45}$.

Number of Recruits trained in Table "A," 122.

Figure of Merit, $\frac{325}{49}$.

Best Shooting Company, K Company, $\frac{69}{50}$.

Best Shot of the Details, Colour-Sergeant Aries, 128 points.

FIGURES OF MERIT.

Company.	Numbers Exercised.	Individual.	Collective.
K Company - -	54	69	50
L Company - -	78	74	43
M Company - -	89	59	44

Assistant-Adjutant—Captain F. G. Thoroton, (3rd Battalion).

Sergeant-Instructor—S.I.M. C. Hyde.

Digitized by Google

At the ALL IRELAND RIFLE MEETING, held at the Curragh, 1900, the following prizes were won by the Details 1st Battalion :—

Warrant Officers' and Sergeants', 200 *Yards.*—Colour-Sergeant Aries, 13th; S.I.M. Hyde, 15th.

Bowyer Prize, 200 *Yards.*—Lance-Corporal W. Hurley, 6th; Private T. Sheehy, 13th; Private Voller, 14th; Private Seymour, 23rd; Private V. Taylor, 37th; Lance-Corporal A. Green, 52nd.

Young Soldiers' 200 *Yards.*—Lance-Corporal Hurley, 4th; Private V. Taylor, 8th; Private T. Sheehy, 16th; Lance-Corporal R. Aldridge, 32nd.

Rank and File, 500 *Yards, kneeling.*—Private Gilbert, 20th; Lance-Corporal A. Green, 24th; Private T. Sheehy, 45th.

Warrant Officers' and Sergeants', 500 *Yards.*—S.I.M. Hyde, 12th; Colour-Sergeant Aries, 16th.

Young Soldiers', 500 *Yards.*—Private Stone, 4th; Lance-Corporal Aldridge, 7th; Private Voller, 15th; Lance-Corporal Hurley, 31st; Private V. Taylor, 39th; Private T. Sheehy, 42nd.

All Ranks, 600 *Yards.*—S.I.M. Hyde, 9th; Colour-Sergeant Aries, 12th; Lance-Corporal Hurley, 21st; Lance-Corporal A. Green, 29th.

All Ranks, 700 *Yards.*—S.I.M. Hyde, 13th.

All Ranks, 800 *Yards.*—Colour-Sergeant Aries, 10th; S.I.M. Hyde, 12th; Private Voller, 16th; Private R. Kent, 24th.

Vanishing Target Competition. Conditions :—Teams of eight (under a leader). Six rapid volleys at a disappearing target. Won by the team of the Details, 1st Oxfordshire Light Infantry, composed as follows :—Colour-Sergeant Aries (leader), Lance-Corporal A. Green, Lance-Corporal W. Hurley, Privates Stone,

Digitized by Google

Voller, Kent, Seymour, T. Sheehy, V. Taylor. Seventeen teams entered.

At the KILWORTH CAMP RIFLE MEETING, the *Young Soldiers' Team Competition* was won by the team of the Details, 1st Oxfordshire Light Infantry. Conditions:—Teams of six (under a coach) from Battalions and Details in the Kilworth or Fermoy garrisons. Five teams entered.

Names of the Winning Team:—Lance-Corporal W. Hurley, Privates Stone, Seymour, Kent, V. Taylor, T. Sheehy. Coach: S.I.M. C. Hyde.

Digitized by Google

ATHLETICS, 1900.

1st Battalion.

The Annual Athletic Meeting was held at Heilbron, Orange River Colony, on 27th December.

Committee:—Captains Lamotte and Childers, Colour-Sergeant G. Bryan, and Private Simlin.

Competitions and results:—

High Jump.—Lance-Corporal Muddle, 1st; Bugler Williams, 2nd; Bandsman Balls, 3rd.

Wheelbarrow Race.—One man to carry another on his back, run about 60 yards, and return wheelbarrow-fashion, blindfolded. Sergeants Gear and Aldridge, 1st; Corporal Broome and Private C. Faulkner, 2nd.

Long Jump.—Private Sheehy, 1st; Private Greenaway, 2nd; Lance-Corporal Brannagan, 3rd.

Quarter Mile.—Regimental Challenge Belt, to be inscribed "Won on Active Service."—Lance-Corporal Brannagan, 1st; Private Sheehy, 2nd; Private Witcher, 3rd.

Veterans' Race.—200 yards handicap.—Colour-Sergeant Baldwin, 1st; Private Speakman, 2nd.

Alarm Post.—Inter-company.—Teams, 10 men commanded by a N.C.O. below the rank of Sergeant. Dress: Field Service Marching Order. Conditions: A tent complete will be placed on the ground, and the team will be marched up to it. The team-commander will then post one man on sentry, and the remainder will pile arms, take off their equipment, and proceed to pitch the tent. The men will then go inside and take off their boots and putties. The alarm will then be given. Three men will get dressed, double out, and lie down alongside the sentry. The remainder will

Digitized by Google

strike the tent, pack it correctly, and join the others, after getting dressed. The whole will then advance about 100 yards. Points will be given for time, style, turn-out, and manner of pitching and packing the tent. Won by B, or Captain F. J. Henley's Company; F and I Companies divided 2nd prize.

One Mile.—Regimental Challenge Belt, to be inscribed "Won on Active Service."—Bandsman Welch, 1st; Private Timms, 2nd; Private F. Smith, 3rd.

Band and Buglers' Race.—Walking. Competitors to play their own instruments.—Bandsman Balls, 1st; Grant, 2nd.

Artillery Driving Competition, open to teams from 17th Battery, R.F.A.—Won by Gun Team and Wagon Team of E Sub-Division.

Tug-of-War.—Inter-Company.—H Company, 1st; E Company, 2nd.

Half-Mile.—Private Witcher, 1st; Private Sheehy, 2nd; Bandsman Welch, 3rd.

In addition to the above there was a *Lucky Bag Competition;* and *Tilting at the Ring* went on during the afternoon. "The sports," writes a correspondent, "were a brilliant success: The band played, the officers gave tea and cake to the *élite* of Heilbron, and Boer refugees came up in their hundreds and were much interested."

2ND BATTALION.

WATERLOO DAY SPORTS AT DALHOUSIE.—The Wing at Banikhet held the annual meeting on the Polo Ground.

Events and results:—

Throwing the Cricket Ball.—L.-C. Gubbins, 1st; Private Glanfield, 2nd; Private Phillips, 3rd.

Digitized by Google

Pick-a-back Race.—Private Arlett, 1st; Private Hewitt, 2nd; Private J. Smith, 3rd.

100 *Yards.*—Private Hewitt, 1st; Private Williams, 2nd; Private Clark, 3rd.

Band Boys' Race.—Boy Strickland, 1st; Boy Grant, 2nd; Boy Rapson, 3rd.

Sergeants' Race.—Sergeant Gee.

Band Race, 100 *Yards, Backwards.*—Private Daubney, 1st; Private Bradwright, 2nd; Boy Grant, 3rd.

One Mile.—Private J. Smith, 1st; Private Eley, 2nd; Private Clark, 3rd.

Wheelbarrow Race.—Private Loveridge, 1st; Private Walker, 2nd.

Fighting on Poles.—Private Arlett, 1st; Private Plumb, 2nd; Private Williams, 3rd.

Quarter Mile.—Private Hewitt, 1st; Private J. Smith, 2nd; Private Twaite, 3rd.

Khud Race.—Private Smith, 1st; Private Payne, 2nd; Private Eley, 3rd.

Best-dressed Race.—Private Hewitt, 1st; Private Eley, 2nd; Private J. Smith, 3rd.

Company Sack Competition: Teams of Eight—Won by E Company.

Company Tug-of-War: Teams of Eight.—Won by E Company.

At the Dalhousie Garrison Sports, held on the Banikhet Polo Ground on the 30th June, the men of the Regiment won prizes to the value of 236 rupees.

Throwing the Cricket Ball.—Private Clanfield, 2nd; Private Clark, 3rd.

High Jump.—Private Williams, 2nd.

Long Jump.—Private Williams, 1st.

100 *Yards.*—Private Williams, 1st; L.-C. Hewitt, 2nd.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

YORK
LIBRARY

AND
ATIONS
L

Digitized by Google

Boys' Race.—Boy Bradwright, 1st; Boy Grant, 2nd.

Quarter Mile.—L.-C. Hewitt, 2nd.

Three-legged Race.—Privates Beltham and Hewitt, 1st.

Warrant-Officers and Sergeants.—Sergeant Gee, 2nd

Sack Race.—Private Moulford, 2nd.

100 *Yards, Corporals.*—Corporal Moulford 3rd.

Half Mile.—Private J. Smith, 1st; Private Gregory, 2nd.

Quarter Mile (Open).—Private Williams, 1st; L.-C. Hewitt, 2nd.

One Mile.—Private Smith, 1st; Private Eley, 3rd.

Obstacle Race.—Private Fleckner, 1st; Private Smith, 2nd.

Best-dressed Competition.—Private Gregory, 1st.

Inter-Regimental Tug of War.—Oxfordshire Light Infantry, 1st.

Inter-Regimental Bayonet Exercise.—Oxfordshire Light Infantry, 3rd.

Details 1st Battalion.

Athletic Meeting held at Kilworth Camp, Ireland, on the 6th September 1900. *President*, Captain C. J. Wilkie. *Committee*, Captain F. G. Thoroton, S.I.M. Hyde, Colour-Sergeants Aries and Perry, Sergeants Stephenson and Perry. The following were the events:—

Putting the Shot (16 *lbs.*), *without a follow.*—Private J. Sheehy, 1st; Private T. Sheehy, 2nd; Private Lindon, 3rd.

Half Mile, Handicap.—Private Turner, 1st; Private J. Sheehy, 2nd; Private A. Ambrose, 3rd.

High Jump.—Sergeant Stephenson, 1st; Private T. Sheehy, 2nd; Private J. Sheehy, 3rd.

Wheelbarrow Race (*pairs*).—Privates Lunnon and

Digitized by Google

Lindon, 1st; Privates Langley and Egan, 2nd; Privates Jarvis and McCoubrie, 3rd.

Sergeants' Race, 220 *Yards*.—S.I.M. Hyde, 1st; Sergeant Stephenson, 2nd; Sergeant Penrose, 3rd.

100 *Yards*.—Private J. Sheehy, 1st; Private Simpole, 2nd; Private Turner, 3rd.

Lemon and Bun Race.—Private Thompson, 1st; Private McCoubrie, 2nd; Private Langley, 3rd.

Marching Order.—Private Jarvis, L Company, 1st; Private Brown, K Company, 2nd.

Obstacle Race.—Private McCoubrie, 1st; Private Langley, 2nd; Private Slack, 3rd.

One Mile.—Private A. Ambose, 1st; Private Turner, 2nd; Private Lunnon, 3rd.

Climbing the Greasy Pole.—Private Brandon 1st; Private Slack, 2nd.

Obstacle Race in Sacks.—Private Thompson, 1st; Private McCoubrie, 2nd; Private Egan, 3rd.

Soot and Flour Competition (Rules as for Bayonet Fighting, in pairs).—Privates Langley and Egan, 1st; Privates Avery and Simpole, 2nd; Privates James and Richardson, 3rd.

Point to Point Race (about one mile).—Private Turner, 1st; Private Ambrose, 2nd; Lance-Corporal Pratt, 3rd.

Tug of War.—1st Round, K Company beat L; N Company beat M.

Final, K beat N, by two pulls to *nil*.

Digitized by Google

THE
PUBL
ASTOR,
TILDEN F
R
NS

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

FOOTBALL, 1900.

The Depôt.

During the season 1899–1900, 19 matches were played:—Won, 16; lost, 2; drawn, 1; goals for, 57; goals against, 26.

Names of the Depôt Team:—Sergeant Munn (goal); Lance-Corporal Pegler and Lance-Corporal Fielding (backs); Colour-Sergeant Moore, Privates Haycoth, Lance-Corporal Whall (half-backs); Corporal Black, Lance-Corporal Barnacle, Bugler Grant, and Privates Croker and Waters (forwards).

Digitized by Google

CRICKET, 1900.

THE DEPÔT.

Matches played, 13; won, 3; drawn, 1; lost, 9.
The following were the principal matches:—

Played at Blenheim Palace, 6th June 1900.

43RD REGIMENTAL DISTRICT.		BLENHEIM PARK.	
Sergt. Kirk, b. Nelmes	6	Mr. Trevilan, h.w., b. Hardy	0
Corpl. Wheeler, b. Nelmes	0	Mr. Jervoise, c. Sherlock, b. Jennings	28
Lce.-Corpl. Pegler, b. Wicks	6	Mr. Finney, l.b.w., b. Chapman	27
Pte. Hardy, b. Nelmes	0	Mr. Wicks, l.b.w., b. Jennings	2
Corpl. Jennings, c. and b. Wicks	7	Mr. Nelmes, b. Chapman	8
Pte. Chapman, run out	3	Mr. Ramsden, b. Chapman	9
Sergt. Sherlock, b. Wicks	5	Mr. Nickson, b. Chapman	8
Pte. Jones, c. and b. Nelmes	4	Mr. Hine, b. Chapman	1
Lce.-Corpl. Pound, l.b.w., b. Nelmes	6	Mr. Hine, b. Chapman	5
Pte. Lindon, b. Wicks	0	Mr. Denbury, b. Hardy	1
Pte. Fry, not out	4	Mr. Bagliss, not out	0
Extras	2	Extras	2
Total	43	Total	91

Return Match, played at Cowley Barracks, Oxford, 20th June 1900.

43RD REGIMENTAL DISTRICT.		BLENHEIM PARK.	
Lieut. Wingfield, run out	35	Mr. Hine, b. Hardy	0
Mr. Stepenson, b. Summers	49	Mr. Lyleton-Smith, b. Hardy	0
Pte. Hardy, c. Baylis, b. Hine	5	Mr. Wickson, b. Pegler	47
Pte. Williams, b. Wickson	5	Mr. Wicks, l.b.w., b. Hardy	0
Lce.-Corpl. Pegler, b. Wickson	4	Mr. Summers, l.b.w., b. Jennings	36
Corpl. Jennings, b. Summers	16	Mr. Harmont, b. Stepenson	12
Sergt. Sherlock, b. Summers	4	Mr. Walters, c. and b. Stepenson	5
Pte. Jones, b. Summers	0	Mr. Crouch, b. Stepenson	0
Corpl. Wheeler, b. Summers	23	Mr. Hine, b. Stepenson	7
Pte. Chapman, not out	3	Mr. Bagliss, l.b.w., b. Stepenson	0
Lce.-Corpl. Pound, b. Summers	0	Mr. Sarsfield, not out	1
Extras	17	Extras	5
Total	161	Total	113

Played at Magdalen College Ground, Oxford, 12th July 1900.

43RD REGIMENTAL DISTRICT.		MAGDALEN COLLEGE STAFF.	
Lieut. Wingfield, c. Alder	30	Mr. Millin, c. Lansley, b. Jennings	72
Lce.-Corpl. Pegler, b. Miller	27	Mr. Lomas, c. Hardy, b. Pound	7
Pte. Hardy, b. Lomas	42	Mr. Alder, c. and b. Jennings	36
Corpl. Jennings, b. Miller	30	Mr. Williams, b. Jennings	1
Sergt. Sherlock, b. Lomas	10	Mr. Gynes, c. Sherlock, b. Hardy	10
Pte. Chapman, c. Alder, b. Lomas	28	Mr. Kennah, c. Jennings, b. Pound	13
Lce.-Corpl. Pound, b. Alder	14	Mr. Hancock, b. Pegler	4
Pte. Lansley, not out	15	Mr. Roberts, b. Pegler	2
Pte. Hawes, b. Millin	7	Mr. Simmonds, run out	0
Pte. Jarrett, b. Millin	0	Mr. Millin, b. Pegler	3
Pte. Beale, c. Kennah, b. Lomas	0	Mr. Miles, not out	0
Extras	0	Extras	19
Total	203	Total	167

Digitized by Google

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS
B L

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Played at Reading, 3rd September 1900.

43RD REGIMENTAL DISTRICT.

Corpl. Jennings, b. Middleton	0
Pte. Chapman, c. and b. Middleton	1
Bugler Grant, b. Relf	23
Cr.-Sergt, Thorne, c. Relf	0
Lieut. Jackson, run out	17
Lce.-Corpl. Pegler, b. Relf	22
Lieut. Willan, b. Relf	1
Cr.-Sergt. Dudley, c. and b. Middleton	12
Cr.-Sergt. Moore, b. Middleton	3
Pte. Williams, b. Middleton	1
Pte. Thompson, not out	16
Pte. Pound, b. Middleton	0
Extras	11
Total	104

49TH REGIMENTAL DISTRICT.

Pte. Barney, c. Dudley, b. Pegler	33
Pte. Taylor, c. Jackson, b. Pegler	33
Pte. Barker, b. Jennings	10
Pte. Barton, b. Pound	2
Sergt. Relf, b. Jennings	1
Sergt. Middleton, b. Pound	1
Sergt. Calthorpe, c. Jackson, b. Jennings	1
Sergt. May, c. Pound, b. Chapman	15
Pte. Mileham, b. Pegler	5
Pte. Markes, b. Pegler	1
Sergt. Reeves, b. Williams	5
Corpl. Lee, not out	0
Extras	10
Total	117

Played at Oxford, 13th September 1900.

43RD REGIMENTAL DISTRICT.

Pte. Thompson, b. Sparrow	21
Sergt. Martin, b. Relf	3
Corpl. Jennings, c. Taylor, b. Middleton	1
Lce.-Corpl. Pegler, l.b.w., b. Sparrow	23
Sergt. Kirk, c. Barney, b. Relf	15
Pte. Barclay, c. and b. Relf	16
Corpl. Barlow, b. Relf	11
Pte. Williams, not out	1
Pte. Johnson, b. Middleton	0
Pte. Stanton, b. Middleton	0
Pte. Broughton, b. Middleton	0
Extras	3
Total	94

49TH REGIMENTAL DISTRICT.

Pte. Barney, c. Pegler, b. Jennings	52
Pte. Lee, b. Barclay	5
Pte. Taylor, run out	5
Pte. Borton, b. Pegler	0
Lce.-Corpl. Sparrow, b. Pegler	0
Sergt. Calthorpe, b. Pegler	0
Pte. Eastman, not out	27
Sergt. Middleton, b. Thompson	13
Sergt. Relf, b. Pegler	8
Pte. Annett, run out	0
Pte. May, b. Pegler	0
Extras	14
Total	124

AVERAGES OF THOSE WHO BATTED OVER FOUR TIMES:—

Lieut. M. Wingfield	52·25	Sergt. Kirk	8·87
Lce.-Corpl. Pegler	15·57	Pte. Chapman	8·46
Corpl. Jennings	13·72	Pte. Pound	5·81
Corpl. Barlow	12·60	Pte. Barclay	3·13
Pte. Hardy	11·50	Pte. Williams	2·42
Sergt. Sherlock	10·17	Pte. Lansley	2·25
Corpl. Wheeler	9·75	Pte. Thompson	2·12
Pte. Jones	9·00	Pte. Lindon	1·86

Digitized by Google

REGIMENTAL POLO CUP.

2ND BATTALION.

THIS race, for the Cup presented by Colonel W. Clark, was run on Wednesday, April 11th, 1900, at the Race Course, Ferozepore. Distance, five furlongs.

The following ran:—

	st.	lbs.	
Major R. Eccles' Br. A. M. "Midnight" (Mr. Salkeld) - - - -	9	7	1
Mr. Chichester's G. A. M. "Jane" (Mr. Weatherby) - - - -	12	2	2
Mr. Weatherby's Ch. C. B. M. "Bagatelle" (Captain Dodington) - - - -	11	0	3
Mr. Chichester's Ch. A. P. "Mandarin" (Owner)	11	7	0
Mr. Keyworth's G. A. G. "Macaroni" (Owner) -	10	10	0
Mr. Keyworth's G. C. B. M. "Perdita" (Mr. Nesbitt) - - - - -	11	3	0
Mr. Hampden's Ch. C. B. M. "Filbert" (Owner)	11	8	0
Mr. Cardwell's Ch. C. B. M. "Vasaline" (Owner)	10	0	0

POLO.

Result of the Lahore District Polo Tournament, played at Mian Mir, 26th to 30th March, 1900:—

1st Round.—2nd Oxfordshire Light Infantry (Messrs. Clayton, Dodington, Carter and Frith) beat the Royal Inniskilling Fusiliers by three goals and one subsidiary to three goals.

2nd Round.—2nd Oxfordshire Light Infantry beat the Punjab Commission by six goals and two subsidiaries to two subsidiaries. 17th Bengal Cavalry beat the Royal Artillery by eight goals and three subsidiaries to *nil.*

Final Tie.—17th Bengal Cavalry beat the 2nd Oxfordshire Light Infantry by six goals and six subsidiaries to one goal and one subsidiary.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

[*Woodbury Gravure.*

L. J. Carter. W. Marriott-Dodington. C. H. Frith. E. R. Clayton.

POLO TEAM, 2ND BATTALION, 1900.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

THE NEW DRESS REGULATIONS.

In *Dress Regulations for the Officers of the Army*, 1900, as far as the Regiment is concerned, there is little that is actually new, though several articles of dress have been altered since the last edition of the *Regulations*.

The following paragraphs are extracted as being of particular Regimental interest:—

8. Collars and Neckties.—Collars, white linen, are worn in undress uniform in the 7th Hussars and in the Oxfordshire Light Infantry. With white or khaki frocks they are optional, but all officers of a unit must be dressed alike. The collar is not to show more than $\frac{1}{8}$ inch above the uniform. With dress waistcoats open in front, or kamarbands, collars, and black neckties (white in the Oxfordshire Light Infantry) are worn.

16. Helmets.—(*c.*) In Light Infantry, the helmet is covered with dark green cloth.

31. Whistles.—There is no sealed pattern, but all officers of a unit should carry the same pattern. They will be attached to a silk lanyard of the colour of the frock, except in Light Infantry, in which the lanyard will be dark green.

580. *The undermentioned Regiments wear Mess Dress of the Authorised Regimental patterns:—*

The Oxfordshire Light Infantry.—*Jacket:* collar, roll, scarlet silk; shoulder straps, scarlet; cuffs, white, half-gauntlet, four buttons in a fly; piping, none. *Waistcoat:* white, washing.

Light Infantry.

595. Forage Cap.—Not worn.

596. Field Cap and Lanyard, dark green.

597. Sword Knot (undress).—Black leather of regimental pattern.

598. Linen Collars.—In undress, the officers of the Oxfordshire Light Infantry are allowed to wear white linen collars. (*See* paragraph 8.)

1215. *Mess Dress, all foreign stations except Canada.*

Kamarbands.—Silk of the following colour:—Light Infantry Regiments, green.

Digitized by Google

Appendix I.—Badges and Devices.

THE OXFORDSHIRE LIGHT INFANTRY.—*On button.*—Scalloped edge; within a laurel wreath a bugle with strings; below the bugle "Oxfordshire." For the mess dress the title is below the wreath.

On the collar.—Edgeless button; on the button, within a laurel wreath, a bugle with strings; above the bugle, the Crown; below the wreath "Oxfordshire." A piece of gold Russia braid, 2½ inches long, attached to the button.

On helmet-plate.—In silver, on a ground of black enamel, a bugle with strings. On the universal scroll "The Oxfordshire Lt. Infy."

On the waist-plate.—In silver, on a frosted gilt or gilded metal centre, a bugle with strings. On the circle "Oxfordshire Light Infantry."

On the forage-cap.—Forage-cap not worn.

On the field-cap.—In silver, a bugle and strings.

Digitized by Google

ANNUAL DINNER, 1900.

43rd Light Infantry.

The Dinner took place at the Savoy Hotel on the 11th June, when the following were present:—Colonel J. Colebrooke Carter; Captain H. R. Stapleton Cotton; Captain Sir Charles Cuyler, Bart.; Lieut.-Colonel A. C. Money; Captain W. Owen; Captain T. H. Pearson; Captain H. L. Ruck Keene; Captain Shaw-Kennedy; Colonel J. A. Strachan; Major F. A. B. Talbot; Major H. A. Terry; Colonel E. Villiers; Lieut.-General F. Green-Wilkinson (in the Chair); Mr. Gerald Young.

It was unanimously agreed to forward the sum of 27*l.* to the Commanding Officer of the Battalion in South Africa for the benefit of the men.

Since the Dinner of 1899 the Club has lost five members by death, viz.—Count de Morel, Colonel G. F. Vesey, Major C. R. Day, Lieut. Bright, and 2nd Lieut. Ball-Acton. Two members have resigned, viz.—Major H. C. Talbot and Mr. C. Cator. There now are sixty-five members.

52nd Light Infantry.

The Annual Dinner did not take place this year, as it was decided by the subscribers to the Dinner Fund then at home (29 in number) that, instead of holding the dinner, the subscriptions for the year should be applied to a fund for the benefit of soldiers of the 43rd serving, or who may have served, in the present war against the Boers, to be expended at the discretion of the officer commanding the 43rd.

The number of subscribers to the Dinner Fund is now fifty-six, viz., twenty-eight present and twenty-eight past officers.

Digitized by Google

OCCASIONAL NOTES.

AT DUTY'S CALL.[1]

GOOD-BYE, ye Oxford redcoats!
You're wanted far away;
And may your bearing ever be
As gallant as to-day.

You know we wouldn't lose you—
We bid you to be gone
Because Old England needs your arms;
So onward, Oxford! on!

May health and safety cheer you
While riding on the waves,
And land you safe in Table Bay
Among good Buller's braves.

May fortune's star attend you
And guide you in the fight—
We know you'll stand up gallantly
And battle for the right.

Although the snow is falling,
And wintry is the scene,
Your hearts are warmly beating for
Your country and your Queen.

They say you're "absent-minded"—
But, be it false or true,
Old Oxford will remember, and
Her heart will be with you.

And now away, ye redcoats,
To Afric's sunny shores—
From Oxford to Pretoria,
To tame the boasting Boers.

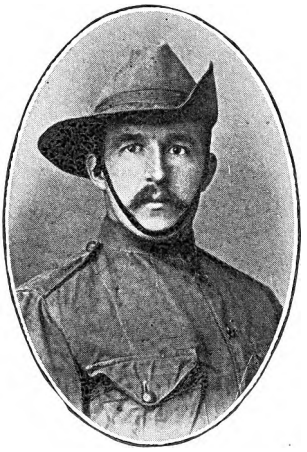
They're coming, "Uncle" Kruger!
You'll soon be hearing from
The men who left their battle-flag
Beneath Old Oxford Tom.

[1] From the *Oxford Times*.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google



SERGEANT G. WATSON.

Severely wounded near Kroonstad.
Discharged as permanently unfit.

SERGEANT F. COLQUHOUN.

Severely wounded at Paardeberg
Promoted 2nd Lieutenant,
Leicestershire Regiment.

SERGEANT A. J. DUNN.

Severely wounded at Paardeberg.
Discharged as permanently unfit.

1ST BATTALION, SOUTH AFRICA, 1900.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

On the 24th April, 1900, at St. Paul's, Knightsbridge, by the Reverend Canon Tetley, assisted by the Reverend J. Baden-Powell, CAPTAIN CLEMENTS PARR, Oxfordshire Light Infantry, son of Colonel T. R. Parr, to DOROTHY, eldest daughter of WILLIAM STANCOMB, Esq., J.P., of Browfort, Devizes.

At Christ Church, Cheltenham, on the 23rd Aug., 1900, by the Reverend G. E. Willes, uncle of the bride, assisted by the Reverend Canon Stanton, uncle of the bridegroom, and the Reverend A. Stoat, EDWARD ALEXANDER STANTON, Captain and Brevet-Major Oxfordshire Light Infantry (attached to the Egyptian Army), eldest son of General Sir Edward Stanton, K.C.M.G., C.B., to ISABEL MARY, second daughter of Captain H. C. WILLES, late Royal Welsh Fusiliers, of 27, Lansdowne, Place, Cheltenham.

The marriage of Captain H. R. STAPLETON COTTON, of the Oxfordshire Light Infantry (Reserve of Officers), eldest son of Captain H. C. Cotton (late 21st Royal Scots Fusiliers), and ISABELLA SCOTT, widow of Mr. T. A. LYON, and youngest daughter of the late Mr. John Johnstone, of Halleaths, Dumfriesshire, took place at Whittington parish church on the 12th September, 1900.

Captain and Brevet-Major E. A. Stanton has been appointed Civil Governor of the Khartoum Province.

At the Dalhousie Assembly Rooms, on September 20th, Major-General Sir G. de C. Morton, K.C.I.E., C.B., read an article from the *Contemporary Review* on "The War and the Drill-Book," which was fully criticised by the principal officers present. Major P. T. Clark, who took part in the discussion, remarked:—

It gave him great pleasure to hear read such an able paper, dealing with so many interesting subjects—subjects which we were all eager to

Digitized by Google

hear more about, learn more about, and profit more by; subjects which, moreover, gave regimental officers material on which to found lectures, etc., for the instruction of their non-commissioned officers and men.

Major Clark did not agree with the writer of the article, that the time spent in teaching the soldier to use his bayonet was wasted. The instruction does not take much time, and it certainly strengthens his arms; it also makes him a thorough master of his weapon, and thus the bayonet exercise, performed on such occasions as after a march, or when soldiers have skirmished up hill, is useful. If the soldier's arms are strong, it must help towards making him a good shot.

The soldier, he considered, should get out of the habit of always looking to his front; he should continually have his eyes and wits about him when fighting or skirmishing. He agreed with the writer that large intervals were necessary when advancing to attack. Crowding means loss of life, as we have learnt from the experience of our comrades fighting so gallantly in South Africa.

The question of ammunition was, he thought, a very difficult one. More should be carried by the soldier, as often it is impossible to get more up into the firing line. This will, no doubt, be considered by the authorities when making changes in the soldiers' equipment.

He considered that it was absurd to attempt to encumber the soldier (when marching and fighting) with picks, etc., but he maintained that they were quite as able to entrench themselves as the Boers. He was glad to see that more time was to be devoted to the training of men in making trenches, etc., than had hitherto been the case.[1]

Quoit Tournament played at Camp Dalhousie, August, 1900:—

Lance-Corporal Clements and Private Simms, 1st Prize.

Private H. Shirley and Bugler O'Brien, 2nd Prize.

The String Band of the 2nd Battalion was much in request this summer at Dalhousie for dances and "At Homes," and it formed the Orchestra at the Musical Festival held in St. John's Church on the 20th September.

---

[1] From the *Dalhousie Courier*, 1st October 1900.

Digitized by Google

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS
R

Digitized by Google

REGIMENTAL CHRISTMAS CARD, 1900.

Printed in Colours, and published by Messrs. Gale & Polden, Aldershot.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Lieut. (Local Captain) A. B. Molesworth, West India Regiment, who was formerly Quartermaster of the 1st Oxfordshire Light Infantry, brought to England this summer a detachment of Madras Sappers and Yoruba soldiers from Nigeria. These were commanded to proceed to Balmoral for the inspection of Her Majesty, after which the Sappers left for Madras, and the Yorubas took up their quarters at the Depôt Barracks at Oxford, for the purpose of undergoing a course of training in military duties.

Lieut. L. H. R. Pope-Hennessy, shooting for three weeks this autumn, on the Athi Plains, East Africa, bagged three rhinoceros, and good specimens (varying in number) of Coke's hartebeest, wildebeeste, impala, Grant's gazelle, Thomson's gazelle, klipspringer, Chandler's reed-buck, Burchel's zebra, and red duiker.

Major A. F. Mockler-Ferryman passed the Tactical Test for promotion to the rank of Lieut.-Colonel, at Shorncliffe, 19th–21st June.

Captain Sir Charles Cuyler, Bart., and Captain C. Parr, passed the examination in C, D, and E, for promotion to the rank of Major, in October.

Major J. Hanbury-Williams, C.M.G., has resigned his appointment as Military Secretary to Sir Alfred Milner, to take up that of Principal Private Secretary to the Secretary of State for War.

Sergeant Anderson, of the Army Pay Department, who served as Private and Corporal in the 1st Oxfordshire Light Infantry from 1891 to 1896 (most of the time as a Clerk in the Orderly Room), has this year

Digitized by Google

been awarded the Royal Humane Society's Medal. The *Golden Penny* of the 1st December, 1900, contained the following:—

A STORY OF IRISH HEROISM.

A Daring Act of Rescue.

The Poulaphouca Waterfalls, on the Liffey, in co. Wicklow, are celebrated for their beauty, and are yearly visited by thousands of tourists from all parts of the country. Unfortunately, Poulaphouca has been the scene of many fatal accidents, but probably the most thrilling and sensational in its varied history took place during the past summer. A gentleman from Dublin, with his little boy, aged three years, was spending a day amid the healthful surroundings of this beautiful spot, little dreaming of the sad calamity that was to cloud his holiday. When walking near the Gothic arch which spans the falls the child let go his father's hand, and fell headlong into the seething cauldron, nearly 100 feet below. The only way of gaining access to the whirlpool is by descending the cliff, or by entering the river some 70 yards lower down and swimming against the current. Stout hearts were not wanting to make the attempt, and Sergeant Chambers, Royal Irish Constabulary, with Sergeant Anderson, of the Army Pay Department, entered the water, and by strong swimming gained the verge of the pool, where the body was seen tossing amid the débris. Sergeant Chambers entered the vortex, and, grasping the body, tried to return. Again and again the gallant fellow was sucked back, but, while the onlookers had given him up as lost, he dived, and, getting into the back flow of water, reached a rock on which Sergeant Anderson had taken refuge. Here the two men tried all in their power to restore the child, but in vain, he having been killed by the terrible fall. After two hours in this position, both men were drawn up the cliff by means of a rope. This desperate undertaking on the part of Sergeant Chambers can be more readily realised when it is stated that in the memory of the oldest inhabitant no one has ever emerged alive from the dreaded whirlpool. The Royal Humane Society has awarded its medal to the two men for their heroic action.

Errata in the Chronicle, Vol. VIII.—Page 169, line 7, for 51st *read* 52nd; page 174, line 30, *dele* "25th July, 1879, J. S. Talbot"; page 217, line 27, for "l'âmes" *read* "lames."

Digitized by Google

NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY
ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS
R L

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

MISCELLANEOUS.

SIR JOHN CLAVERING, K.B.

SIR JOHN CLAVERING was born in 1722, and was the third son of Sir James Clavering, of Axwell and Greencroft, in the County of Durham, a member of the old northern family of Clavering, of Callaby Castle, Northumberland.

He received his commission as Ensign in the Coldstream Regiment of Foot Guards, on February 10th, 1735, and attained the rank of Captain, with command of the Grenadier Company, in that Regiment, in 1753.

In 1759 he commanded a Brigade under General Barrington in the Expedition against the Island of Guadaloupe. He led the attack in person, and Horace Walpole wrote of him as "the real hero of Guadaloupe."

In General Barrington's despatch to the Secretary at War, announcing the success of the Expedition, Clavering is thus mentioned:—

"Such men are rare, and I think I may venture to assure you that there are few things in any profession that he is not equal to if it should be thought fit to honour him with the execution of any future commands."

On his return to England, later in the same year, he was made Aide-de-Camp to the King, and on April 1st, 1762, was appointed to the Colonelcy of the 52nd Regiment, which he retained until his death. He had, meantime, been sent to Hesse Cassel, as Minister, where he remained until the conclusion of the Seven Years' War in 1763. In 1770 he was promoted to the rank of

Digitized by Google

Lieut.-General, and in the same year (March 19) was made Governor of Landguard Fort.

With such a record of service, it is not surprising to find that in 1773 he was selected for the command of the Bengal Army, with a seat on the Council of the Government of India, ranking next to the Governor-General.

Warren Hastings was at that time Governor-General of India, and the Council consisted of five members; three of them, of whom Clavering was one, took up and advocated the adoption of a line of policy in opposition to that supported by the Governor-General, and in the struggle for mastery which followed, more vehemence than discretion was displayed by Clavering, who not only quarrelled and fought a duel with Barwell, Hastings' only supporter on the Council, but very nearly fought another with the Governor himself.

The result of the controversy, however, proved that Clavering and his supporters were no match for the brilliant and astute Hastings, by whom their opposition was eventually completely routed. Clavering soon afterwards fell into ill-health, and ultimately died at Calcutta from the effects of climate on August 30th, 1777. He was buried in the South Park Street Burial Ground, and Francis, one of his colleagues, wrote that "the Governor ordered minute guns."

His Governorship of Landguard Fort seems to have been merely nominal, for he continued to hold it after his departure to India in 1773, and did not relinquish it until 1776, at the beginning of which year he was appointed Governor of Berwick, a similar nominal appointment, as he was still in India, whence he never returned.

He was made a Knight of the Bath in 1776.

Digitized by Google

The fact of his having been selected for such a responsible position as membership of the Indian Council is in itself evidence of the high estimation in which he was held by the Government of the day in which he lived. Although not a man of great mark as a statesman, he was, nevertheless, an honourable, straightforward, and energetic soldier, and though, on the other hand, of an impetuous and combative disposition, he was at the same time a man of sterling integrity.[1]

The above memoir has been extracted from *The History of Landguard Fort in Suffolk* (by Major J. H. Leslie, late Royal Artillery, 1898), by kind permission of the author, to whom we are also indebted for the two portraits of Sir John Clavering. The frontispiece is from a miniature which belonged to the late Lord Napier and Ettrick; the other portrait is from a painting in the possession of the Rev. J. W. Napier-Clavering, of Axwell Park.

In Macaulay's Essay, *Warren Hastings*, will be found much concerning Clavering; it will be sufficient to quote one paragraph, wherein is related the circumstances attending the marriage of Hastings and the death of Clavering.

The lady became Mrs. Hastings. The event was celebrated by great festivities; and all the most conspicuous persons at Calcutta, without distinction of parties, were invited to the Government House. Clavering, as the Mahommedan chronicler tells the story, was sick in mind and body, and excused himself from joining the splendid assembly. But Hastings, whom, as it should seem, success in ambition and in love had put into high good humour, would take no denial. He went himself to the General's house, and at length brought his vanquished rival in triumph to the gay circle which surrounded the bride. The exertion was too much for a frame broken by mortification as well as by disease. Clavering died a few days later.

---

[1] See *Dictionary of National Biography*, vol. ii.

Digitized by Google

The following is the inscription on the tombstone in Calcutta :—

To the Memory of
SIR JOHN CLAVERING,
Knight of the Most Honourable Order of the Bath,
Lieutenant-General in His Britannic Majesty's Service ;
And Colonel of the 52nd Regiment of Foot ;
Second in the Supreme Council of
Fort William in Bengal ;
And Commander-in-Chief of
All the Company's Forces in India.
Died August 30th, 1777,
In the 55th Year of his Age,
And was interred here.

Digitized by Google

NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY
ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS
R L

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

LIEUT.-GENERAL THE HON. ALEXANDER MACKAY.[1]

THE HON. ALEXANDER MACKAY, of Strathlongue, second son of George, third Lord Reay, was born in the year 1717.

He received a commission as Ensign in the 25th Regiment of Foot in 1737, and in 1745 was appointed Captain of a Company in the Earl of Loudoun's newly-raised Regiment of Highlanders, which was disbanded in 1748. Mackay's Company, with two others of the Regiment, fought against the rebels in 1745 at Prestonpans (Sept. 21), when all the officers and men were either killed or taken prisoners. Mackay was taken prisoner. In 1750 he was promoted to the rank of Major in the 3rd Foot, and in 1752 was appointed Lieut.-Colonel of the 52nd Regiment on its being raised. In 1762 he obtained the Colonelcy of the 122nd Foot, one of the Irish Regiments, which was disbanded in 1763; in the following year he became Colonel of the 65th Regiment, and in 1770 of the 21st (Royal Scots Fusiliers) Regiment.

In that year he was promoted to the rank of Major-General, and in 1777 to that of Lieut.-General.

In 1772 he was appointed Governor of Tynemouth Castle, and in 1776 Governor of Landguard Fort, which latter governorship he retained until 1788, when he relinquished it for the Governorship of Stirling Castle.

---

[1] From Major Leslie's *History of Landguard Fort*, with the Author's kind permission.

Digitized by Google

He was made Commander-in-Chief of the Forces in Scotland in 1780, and continued to hold that post until his death, which occurred at Edinburgh on May 31, 1789.

He represented the County of Sutherland in Parliament from 1761 to 1768, and the Northern (Wick) Burghs from 1768 to 1773.

The portrait is taken from a picture in the possession of Lord Reay, G.C.S.I., G.C.I.E.,—a copy of the original, by Seaton.

Digitized by Google

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS
R L

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

MEMBERS OF THE DAVIES FAMILY,
52ND LIGHT INFANTRY.

THOMAS HENRY HASTINGS DAVIES was the eldest son of Thomas Davies, of Newhouse, in the County of Hereford, and Advocate-General to the Honourable East India Company, who died at Calcutta in 1792. He was born on the 27th January, 1789, and was named after his godfather, the celebrated Warren Hastings, who was a great friend of his father's. At the age of 15 he entered the Army as Ensign, 52nd Light Infantry, 2nd June, 1804; Lieutenant, 31st January, 1805; Captain, 4th February, 1808. Exchanged as Lieutenant and Captain into the 1st Foot Guards (afterwards the Grenadier Guards), 7th December, 1809; Captain and Lieut.-Colonel, 3rd July, 1815. Exchanged to half-pay of the Chasseurs Britanniques, 25th March, 1818. Colonel in the Army, 10th January, 1837; and exchanged to 6th Dragoon Guards, 1st March, 1839; retiring from the Army the following day.

He was present at the battle of Vimiera in command of his Company of the *2nd Battalion* 52nd. "The French drove in the skirmishers of the 60th and the 95th Regiments, whose retreat was covered by a Company of the 95th and three Companies of the 52nd, commanded by Captains Arbuthnot, Chetwynd, and Davies."[1] His own account of the Expedition and battle has recently been found in one of his old notebooks; it is as follows:—

July 16th, 1808.—Embarked at Ramsgate.

July 21st.—Sailed from the Downs.

August 16th.—Anchored off the Bay of Maceira; a most tedious

[1] Moorson's *History of the 52nd.*

Digitized by Google

passage. Heard here that Sir Arthur Wellesley had advanced on the 9th, and had engaged the French, who had pushed on a body of 7,000 as far as Leyna on the 15th and 17th.

August 19th.—The whole Brigade disembarked, consisting of the 2nd Battalions 9th, 43rd, 52nd, and 17th. Lay upon our [arms] that night. The whole Brigade, except the 52nd, marched at 4 o'clock in the morning; the 52nd followed about 6 o'clock, and arrived about 2 o'clock at Vimiera (after a march of six miles), where we found the whole army, consisting of 15,000 British troops and a Regiment of Portuguese Cavalry. The country about was most beautifully romantic. We found the heat very troublesome. The army was totally destitute of camp equipage, but we contrived to shelter ourselves with the branches of trees which we cut down. Sir H. Burrard arrived from England this evening, and countermanded the order we had received from Sir A. Wellesley that the army should march at 4 o'clock the next morning. The whole force, with the addition of General Anstruther's Brigade, amounted to near 17,000 men.

August 21st.—This was a miserable day for the army in Portugal. We had paraded as usual in the morning, and the officers and men had just finished their breakfast, when an order came for the whole line to get under arms, as an attack was apprehended, from the appearance of a large body of Cavalry on our left. We had scarcely received this order, when some shots were heard to the left; the firing increased every instant, and two columns of the enemy appeared to be advancing on our left and centre. The picket of the 9th Regiment, which belonged to General Anstruther's Brigade (who were upon the right of the army), was now driven in, and it appeared evident that the enemy intended a third attack upon our right. Three Companies of the 2nd 52nd were sent out to support the Rifle Corps, who were engaged upon our right; the firing now began to be very hot, and the third column of the enemy appeared upon a rising ground, whence they fired by regular platoons on the Companies of the 52nd, who were extended. These were at length obliged to give way and retreat upon the main body, upon which the enemy gave three cheers and advanced more rapidly through a hollow way upon our right, at the same time keeping up a heavy fire. They continued advancing and firing till they came within fifty yards of our line, when our brave fellows, after giving them several well-directed volleys, advanced upon them with three cheers, upon which the enemy broke entirely and retreated in the greatest confusion, leaving a great number of dead upon the ground. While this was going on upon the right, the columns on the left and centre were charged upon, mostly by the 71st, 43rd, and 50th Regiments in particular, that they were

Digitized by Google

entirely routed, and lost 17 pieces of cannon and 1 colour. They had now retreated on every side, and all supposed that the army would have pushed on without giving them time to re-collect themselves, but Sir Harry Burrard, it is said, ordered Sir A. Wellesley to desist from any pursuit,[1] and the army remained upon their ground. Such was the issue of the battle of Vimiera, in which General Junot had hoped to drive the British into the sea, but which ended in his losing at least 2,500 men and his whole artillery. Our loss amounted to about 500 on the whole ; the 52nd lost about 42 rank and file, and 2 officers. We took General Laborde, the second in command, and the Adjutant-General, and a General Officer was found dead upon the field.

August 22nd.—About 2 o'clock the alarm was given that the enemy was advancing upon us in great force ; the whole line was immediately under arms, and the troops were marched to the most eligible position for defence ; but, after waiting some time, it turned out that it was a flag of truce. It was rumoured that General Junot had sent to the Commander-in-Chief to treat about evacuating the country, as another General arrived in the lines the same evening.

August 24th.—The whole army, except General Nightingale's Brigade, marched this morning, and took up a strong position above Torres Vedras.

Captain T. H. H. Davies accompanied the Expedition to Walcheren, leaving Deal, with his Company and four others of the 2nd 52nd, on the 17th July, 1809. His note-book (above referred to) contains the "Descriptive Roll"[2] of his Company on the date of embarkation, but unfortunately no account of the Expedition. Shortly after returning to England he exchanged into the Guards, with whom he served in the Peninsular War, being present at the battles of Sabugal, Fuentes d'Onor, Pyrenees, Nive, and Nivelle, as well as at the battle of Waterloo (Medal).

"He married, on the 17th January, 1824, Augusta

---

[1] Napier, in his *Peninsular War*, remarks:—"Sir Harry's decision was certainly erroneous, but error is common in an art which at best is but a choice of difficulties."

[2] From this Roll we get an interesting item of information : The average height of the Company (consisting of 96 R. and F.) was almost exactly 5 ft. 7 in., which we may fairly assume to have been the average height of the Regiment at that period.

Digitized by Google

Anne, only child of Thomas Champion de Crespigny, M.P., of Sudbury, Suffolk. He came forward as a candidate for Worcester in 1816, but did not then proceed to a poll. Soon afterwards he purchased the estate of Elmley Castle from the executors of Mr. Bourne Charlotte, and winning a seat for Worcester in 1818, afterwards held it till 1841, with the exception of the period 1835–7, when he was defeated. In the House, Colonel Davies constantly seconded or supported Hume in his motions to secure economy in the public service, and acquired from his opponents the *soubriquet* of 'Smollett,' after the eminent continuator of *Hume's History of England*. He was a J.P. for Worcestershire, and an East India Proprietor. While canvassing at the General Election in December, 1834, Colonel Davies was thrown out of his carriage and slightly paralysed, and this gradually increasing, necessitated his retiring from Parliament at the dissolution in 1841, and during the last few years of his life he became perfectly helpless. He died at Elmley Castle on the 11th December, 1846, aged 57."[1]

Francis John Davies, brother of the last-named, and 3rd son of Thomas Davies, was born on the 1st May 1791, and entered the army as Ensign, 52nd Light Infantry, 3rd February 1808; Lieutenant 26th January 1809; Captain West India Regiment, 12th August 1813. Exchanged at once into the 69th Regiment, and within a few months into the Grenadier Guards as Lieutenant and Captain. Lieut.-Colonel 30th April 1827; Colonel 23rd November 1841; Major-General 20th June 1854; Lieut.-General 14th August 1859; General 14th January 1866. Appointed Colonel of the 67th Regiment 15th January 1858.

[1] From *The Parliamentary History of the County of Worcester*, by W. R. Williams.

Digitized by Google

He served with the 52nd in the Expedition to Gottenburg under Sir John Moore, the Corunna Campaign, the Expedition to Walcheren, and in the Peninsula up to August 1813, being present at the battles of Fuentes d'Onor, Salamanca, Vitoria, and the Pyrenees, also at the siege and storming of Badajoz, where he was wounded. He was for a short time A.D.C. to General Dunlop, commanding a Division in the Peninsula, and eventually received the war medal with five clasps.

On the 9th April 1825, he married Anna, daughter of General Dunlop; and secondly, on the 12th July 1834, Elizabeth Anne, second daughter of Admiral of the Fleet, Sir J. B. Martin, G.C.B. He died on the 4th December 1874.

HENRY RODOLF DAVIES, second son of Lieut.-General H. F. Davies, Elmley Castle, Pershore, Worcestershire, and grandson of Francis John Davies, was born on the 28th September 1865. He was educated at Eton, and entered the Oxfordshire Light Infantry as Lieutenant 23rd August 1884; Captain 2nd May 1892.

He served as Special Service Officer in the Burmese Expedition 1887–1888, at first in command of a body of Mounted Infantry, then as Staff Officer to a Flying Column, and afterwards as Transport Officer to the Northern Shan Column (medal and clasp). Served with the 2nd Battalion Oxfordshire Light Infantry in the Mohmand Campaign, and Tirah Expeditionary Force, 1897–98 (Despatches. Medal and two clasps).[1] Special Service Officer (Intelligence Department), China Field Force, 1900.

Captain Davies has already made his mark as a traveller and as a linguist, as the following record proves:—

In 1889 he rode from Bushire in the Persian Gulf to

[1] *Vide* CHRONICLE, 1898 and 1899.

Digitized by Google

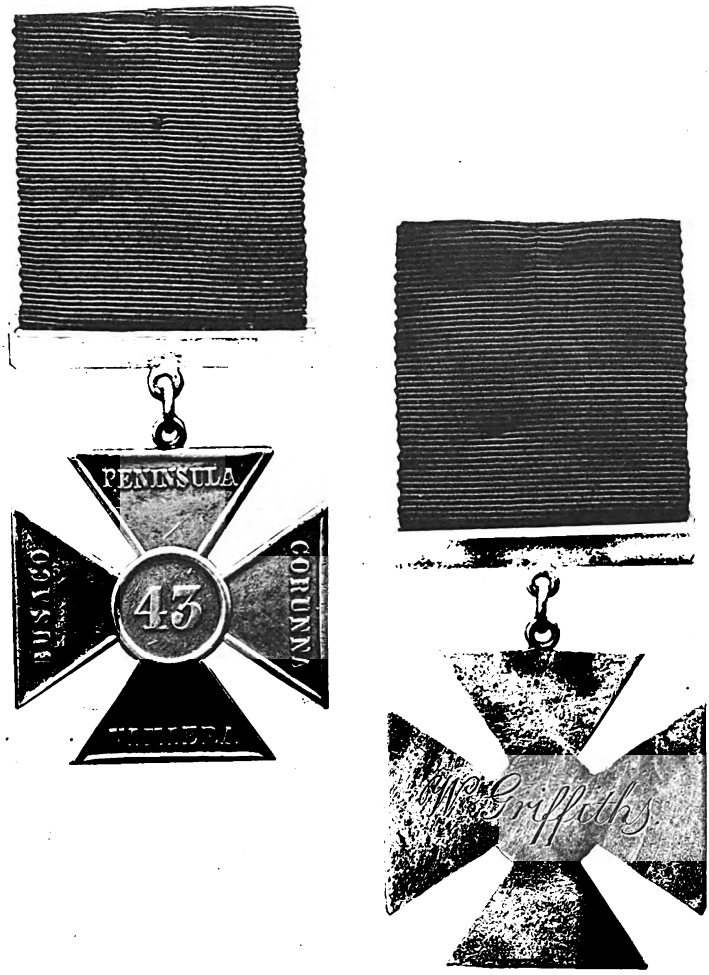
the Caspian, and thence to Europe by the Black Sea. From 1891 to 1893 he travelled on duty in Burma and Siam; 1893 to 1895, in Burma, Kachin Hills, Chinese Frontier, Yunnan; 1898 to 1900, Western China and Tibet. He has passed the following language examinations:—1st October 1886, Lower Standard Hindustani; 20th October 1886, Higher Standard Hindustani; November 1887, Elementary Burmese; November 1888, High Proficiency Hindustani; January 1889, Lower Standard Persian; July 1890, Higher Standard Persian; May 1891, Lower Standard Burmese; September 1891, High Proficiency Persian; October 1892, Elementary Shan; July 1893, Lower Standard Shan; July 1897, First Examination Chinese; July 1897, Higher Standard Burmese; April 1898, Lower Standard Pashtu, and is now awaiting the opportunity to go up for his final examination in Chinese.

As a result of his linguistic and other attainments, when not on active service he has been almost continuously employed by the Indian Intelligence Department, and has held the following appointments:—May 1891, Unpaid Attaché for Intelligence at Simla; November 1891, Intelligence Burma; November 1891 to March 1892, Intelligence Officer with Sirskar Valley Column; November 1892 to April 1893, Siam Boundary Commission (Northern Party); April 1893, Officiating Paid Attaché, Burma; October 1893, Staff Captain for Intelligence; November 1893 to January 1894, on a Special Mission with Mr. Warry to meet the Chinese Commissioners and to search for Boundary Gates; February 1894 to April 1894, Intelligence Officer to Eastern Escort in Kachin Hills; December 1894 to May 1895, Special Mission to Yunnan (rendered valuable reports, and was selected by the Commander-in-Chief in India for the MACGREGOR MEDAL); until November 1895, Staff

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google



PRIVATE GRIFFITHS' SILVER CROSS.

Digitized by Google

YORK
LIBRARY
ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS

Digitized by Google

Captain for Intelligence, Q.M.G.'s Department, India; August 1898, appointed to command a Surveying Expedition in Western China (surveyed, in 5½ months, 1,000 miles of railway and a vast extent of country); September 1899, re-appointed to command surveying parties in Western China and Tibet, on which duty he was employed until the Boxer Outbreak, when he was appointed (20th July 1900) Intelligence Officer to Sir A. Gaselee.

Digitized by Google

WAR MEDALS.

Two very interesting Regimental Decorations changed hands this year, both being added to the collection of Lieut.-Colonel J. B. Gaskell (of Roseleigh, Woolton), who, as mentioned in previous CHRONICLES, is also the possessor of the Regimental Medal presented to Col.-Sergeant R. Jermy, and to Sergeant W. Newman.

The following is a description of the two Decorations:—

A GOLD MEDAL OF THE 43rd REGIMENT;[1] hall-marked, thin, engraved.

Inscription.—On the obverse: "A Testimony of Regard to a Worthy Soldier." On the reverse: "Given by the Officers of His Majesty's 43rd. Regt. in the year 1785, to T. Loftus, to perpetuate the memory of his disting^ed^ conduct at the Battle of Bunkers Hill, 17th June, 1775."

A SILVER MALTESE CROSS OF THE 43rd REGIMENT.[2]

Inscription.—On the obverse: W. Griffiths (engraved). On the reverse: in the centre **43**, on the arms of the Cross, PENINSULA, VIMIERA, CORUNNA, BUSACO.

---

[1] Debenham, Storr and Son's Auction, 52*l.*

[2] Debenham, Storr and Son's Auction, 15*l.*

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

SERGEANT W. NEWMAN'S MEDAL.

PRIVATE LOFTUS' GOLD MEDAL.

REGIMENTAL MEDALS.

Digitized by Google

LIBRARY
LENOX AND
TOR FOUNDATIONS

Digitized by Google

NIGERIA AND ASHANTI, 1900.

Captain Eden's Experiences.

Captain A. J. F. Eden returned to the Niger, on a second tour of West African service, in September 1899, and took over command of his Company at Lokoja, which he found had become a large station, "with polo three days a week, and sundry other amusements." Here, however, he did not remain long, for his Company was placed under orders, early in December, to proceed to the Coast in order to take part in a punitive expedition on the Cross River (Old Calabar) against the Ikuris. Writing from Ogurude, in February of the present year, Captain Eden describes the camp, of which he was in command, the backbone of the troops being his own Northern Nigerian Company, consisting of 2 subalterns, 2 British N.C.O.'s, a Medical Officer, and 150 Yorubas. The forward movement of the expedition was retarded by the low state of the river, and this little force was occupied for the next few months in safeguarding the camp from attack. The surrounding ground was carefully cleared, and an abattis with barbed wire entanglement formed; grass huts were erected, and, when all was completed, every one settled down to an uneventful garrison life.

As things turned out, the expedition against the Ikuris was, for the time being, abandoned, all available troops being required to suppress the rising in Ashanti, which had suddenly assumed a serious aspect. The Governor of the Gold Coast was shut up in Kumassi, and the tribes had become so formidable that, had not our hands been full in South Africa, in all probability

Digitized by Google

troops would have been despatched from England. It was decided, however, to let West Africa fight its own battles; and, accordingly, all available troops belonging to the various West African forces, supplemented by a contingent from the Central African Rifles, were requisitioned to proceed to the relief of Kumassi. Captain Eden and his Yoruba Company left their entrenched camp at Ogurude and sailed, at the beginning of June, direct from Old Calabar to the Gold Coast, when they at once joined in the general advance on Ashanti. Writing from Kumassi Fort in August, Captain Eden says:—

My Company was lucky enough to meet with Colonel Willcocks' approval soon after our arrival at Prahsu; and, on leaving Bekwai for the final advance on Kumassi, on the 13th July, we were told off as the leading Company of the advanced guard. We had two fights before getting in here; one early on the 14th, and the other about 4 p.m. on the 15th, when within a mile-and-a-half of the Fort. At the former the Ashantis made a stand outside a village, making a great noise drumming and shouting, but their resistance proved faint-hearted. This was the first time any of my men had been under fire, and although a bit excited in the first rush, they did some good, steady volley-firing both before charging and also after they had re-formed again beyond the village. When we moved out of Bekwai our total strength was 46 European officers, 20 European N.C.O.'s, 1,050 rank and file, and 1,500 carriers. The rank and file were as follows:—Sierra Leone Frontier Police, 50; West African Regiment, 200; 1st Battalion West African Frontier Force, 3 Companies; and 2nd Battalion West African Frontier Force, 3 Companies. There were also two 75-millimètre guns, three 7-pounders, and six Maxims.

In the second day's fight we had a grand charge through the bush, which was decidedly thick. The Ashantis held three stockades on this occasion, but the fire from the millimètres was too much for them, and a general envelopment by the Infantry upset all their calculations. My Yorubas did me well all through; and after we relieved this place, Colonel Willcocks left me in command, with my Company of 130 men, and a gun detachment (12 men) of the Gold Coast Constabulary.

Willcocks returned with his Column to Bekwai, and the next two days were quite exciting, as the Ashantis opened a desultory fire on the Fort, though without doing any harm. The nearest cover to the Fort was

Digitized by Google

200 yards away, and at that range their "Long Danes" are quite useless, though most dangerous weapons at anything under 80 yards. They fill them almost up to the muzzle, and I extracted 17 large spherical bullets out of one of them.

My experience of the Ashantis is that they are the bravest of the brave when safe behind their stockades, but they will not come out into the open at any price. They are masters in the art of stockade work, forming stockades from 4 to 6 feet high, 5 to 7 feet thick, and of any required length—up to 200 yards. The timber is squared, and earth is used to fill up spaces, while occasionally loop-holes are constructed. The Adansis (living for a distance of about 40 miles north of the Prah) build their stockades as a rule on one side of the road, and 30 or 40 yards from it, making only just sufficient clearings in the bush to give them an open field of fire up to the road. It is quite impossible to locate these stockades until firing has continued for some little time. The Ashantis, however, build their stockades right across the road, and clear the ground a bit in front, which gives us a much better chance. In rear of their stockades they usually have a large war camp, which we have always found well stocked with plantains, yams, and guinea corn. They live well, for the country is abundantly supplied with foodstuffs of all kinds.

We were here for 19 days before the 2nd Column arrived (5th August), when we received a reinforcement of 150 men. The Column only remained a couple of days, and then returned to Bekwai. On the 6th August two Columns went out by different roads in order to destroy stockades; both met with a certain amount of resistance. My Column had a respectable little fight, but it did not last long, and we only had 1 killed and 7 wounded (including a British N.C.O.); the other Column, however, had a much tougher affair, and lost 3 killed and 44 wounded (including Cobbe, of the Central African Rifles, who came here from the East Coast with 75 Sikhs and 200 Askaris).

On the evening of the 7th August we made a night attack on a stockade on another road, and completely surprised the enemy, though unfortunately most of them managed to get away in the dark, while we had 1 officer killed and 2 men wounded. The officer was Greer of the West India Regiment (attached to the West African Regiment), who, poor fellow, was shot at close quarters, and received the contents of an old muzzle-loader full in the stomach. He only survived for about half-an hour.

Willcocks was good enough to make me temporary Major when he placed me in command of the garrison here before he left. I have with me 5 British officers, 5 British N.C.O.'s, 307 men (Gold Coast Con-

Digitized by Google

stabulary, West African Frontier Force, Southern Nigeria Force, West African Regiment, Central African Rifles), and 44 Askaris, carriers, and servants.

When the last Column left, I was told that another would be here in ten days' time, but almost three weeks have passed (August 25th), and it has not turned up. However, we are getting on very well, although it is somewhat slow, and one rather longs for a bit of fresh meat and some vegetables; for, of course, we are living entirely on our rations.

In a letter dated Kumassi Fort, 11th September, Captain Eden writes:—

Headquarters moved here on the 31st August, since which time I have been moving about the country in command of convoys and small columns. Four big chiefs have come in, and the country is gradually getting eaten up by our soldiery and the 10,000 native levies who are manœuvring around.

The next letter is dated from the same place exactly a month later:—

After a variety of orders and counter-orders, a large Column left here, under the Colonel himself, on the 29th September, returning on the 3rd instant. We marched on the first day in the following order:—

Advanced Guard.—(Lieut.-Colonel Montanaro, R.A.) 1 Company W.A. Regiment (with Maxim); 1 Company 2nd C.A. Rifles; 1 Company 2nd W.A. Frontier Force (with Maxim); 2 m.m. guns; half Company 2nd C.A. Rifles (escort to guns); 10 medical hammocks; 6 medical boxes; half Company 2nd C.A. Rifles.

Support to Advanced Guard.—(Major Melliss, 1st W. A. Frontier Force) 1 Company 1st W. A. Frontier Force (with Maxim); 40 Sikhs; Commandant and Staff; Head-Quarter Staff and Maxim); 1 m.m. gun; 1 Section 1st C. A. Rifles (escort to gun); 3 Sections 1st C. A. Rifles; 1 Company 1st C. A. Rifles.

Main Body.—(Major Cobbe, 1st C. A. Rifles) 1 Company 2nd C. A. Rifles; medical hammocks; 1 Company 1st W. A. Frontier Force; ammunition; 1 Company 3rd W. A. Frontier Force; baggage; Sierra Leone Frontier Police; Supply Column; half Company W. A. Regiment (with Maxim).

Rear Guard.—(Captain Greer, 2nd W. A. Frontier Force); 10 medical hammocks; 6 medical boxes; 2 7-pounder guns; West India Regiment; half Company W. A. Regiment; 1 Company 2nd W. A. Frontier Force.

Digitized by Google

Each Company had 12 boxes of ammunition with it, in addition to the above.

We marched at 7 a.m., and after a somewhat tedious day reached Adala at 4.20 p.m. A deluge of rain came on as we were settling down, and the village having been burnt shortly before, there was little or no shelter to be had. A second storm visited us at 10.30 p.m., and altogether we had a miserable night of it.

Next morning we started at 6.30 a.m., and at 8.10 we were in action. My Maxim was the only one that got to the front, and we kept it going all through the fight, killing 15 men in one spot alone. The leading Company went off to the right, and I took my lot into the bush on the left; I had about 80 men with me, and they stuck to me capitally. I only fired about eight rounds per man, and that was really more for the sake of marking my position than for anything else. We got within 50 yards of some Ashantis at one time, but they were off before we could catch them. After capturing the village we moved on again, reaching Esiansu at 1.30 p.m. Here we were to remain for the night, but before settling in three Companies pushed ahead to clear a couple of villages; they were, however, found to have been abandoned, and after setting fire to them we returned to Esiansu. Our casualties this day were rather heavy; Melliss was badly wounded in the foot, Charrier and Luard both got gun-shot wounds in the face; while of the native soldiers three were killed and 27 wounded, besides 10 native levies wounded. We counted 60 dead Ashantis, which was a good many more than usual.

The next two days were spent in scouring the country for the enemy, but without any success.

After this nothing particular occurred, and the Ashantis having been brought to reason, the Expeditionary Force broke up, the borrowed troops returning to the Coast towards the end of November. Early in the following month Captain Eden and his Yorubas were despatched by sea to Nigeria, in order to rejoin their head-quarters at Lokoja.

Colonel Sir J. Willcocks' despatch was published in the *London Gazette* of the 4th December, 1900. Referring to the affair of the 13th July, he says:—

One mile out the advance-guard was attacked at the fetish town of Treda, but after a quarter of an hour's fighting, Captain Eden, Oxford-

Digitized by Google

shire Light Infantry, with a Company of West African Frontier Force, and Lieut. Edwards, with half a Company of Sierra Leone Frontier Police, rushed the place with the bayonet. Enemy were about 600 strong, and had several of our ·303 carbines.

The departure from Kumassi is thus mentioned :—

Leaving three Officers, two British Non-commissioned Officers, and a garrison of 150 West African Frontier Force, and a few Gold Coast Constabulary Gunners in the fort, under the command of Captain Eden, Oxfordshire Light Infantry (who volunteered for this duty), with rations for 54 days and abundance of ammunition, I quitted Kumassi on the 17th July with an enormous train of sick, wounded, refugees, women and children, all the old garrison (mostly carried in hammocks).

The despatch concludes as follows :—

I beg to bring to favourable notice the following Officers and Non-commissioned Officers who have rendered good service, though I have found it a hard task to select names where all have done well.

* * * * *

Captain A. J. F. Eden, Oxfordshire Light Infantry, 2nd Battalion West African Frontier Force.—This officer has shown great aptitude for commanding native soldiers. Under his able guidance the Yoruba has proved himself quite equal to the Hausa ; he led the charge at Kumassi. I sincerely trust he will be rewarded.

Digitized by Google

NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

OFFICERS, 43RD LIGHT INFANTRY, 1866.

KEY TO THE GROUP.

1. Lieut. T. C. Miller.
2. Lieut. H. W. Cuppage.
3. Lieut. S. T. Nicholl.
4. Lieut. J. T. O'Brien.
5. Ensign D. T. Brett.
6. Captain G. F. Vesey.
7. Capt. and Bt.-Major F. A. Smith, V.C.
8. Lieut. J. B. Garland.
9. Captain H. C. Talbot.
10. Captain S. Crozier.
11. Lieut. J. Hogarth.
12. Major T. Horan.
13. Ensign C. C. Pease.
14. Captain C. H. Hatchell.
15. Colonel F. H. Synge.
16. Quartermaster J. Cooper.
17. Ensign D. R. McQueen.
18. Ensign J. S. Langlands.
19. Lieut. W. Clark.
20. Captain H. J. Berners.
21. Lieut. W. McN. Cairns.
22. Lieut. A. C. Money.
23. Ensign H. N. E. Sherbrooke.
24. Captain Hon. A. E. Harris.
25. Lieut. H. Collins Splatt.
26. Lieut. A. Longley.
27. Ensign A. C. French.
28. Captain H. O. Bateman.
29. Lieut. A. B. Onslow.
30. Lieut. R. M. Tod.

Digitized by Google

OFFICERS, 52ND LIGHT INFANTRY.

MALTA, 1872.

KEY TO THE GROUP.

1. Lieut. J. P. Meade.
2. Ensign H. S. Middleton.
3. Lieut. J. Johnstone.
4. Ensign R. W. L. Corbett.
5. Lieut. H. M. S. Douglas.
6. Captain H. Fane.
7. Ensign the Hon. R. Verney.
8. Lieut. Lord Charles Pratt.
9. Captain H. Synge.
10. Captain H. Holford.
11. Lieut. A. Spencer.
12. Ensign C. J. Boyle.
13. Lieut. and Adjutant R. M. Pulteney.
14. Ensign E. Lycester.
15. Lieut. E. B. Pocklington.

[NOTE.—Since the title of the illustration was printed, it has been discovered that the photograph was taken at Fort Ricasoli, Malta, in 1869.]

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15

[*Woodbury Gravure.*

OFFICERS, 52ND LIGHT INFANTRY.

MALTA, 1872.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

GUN AND RIFLE.

2ND BATTALION.

Extract from the Officers' Game-Book, January to November, 1900:—

Black Bear	19
Red Bear	2
Burrel	5
Sambur	1
Black Buck	6
Barking Deer	8
Thar	3
Goral	13
Karkur	1
Hares	7
Kulon	2
Geese	2
Duck	310
Curlew	2
Houbara	1
Teal	97
Snipe	184
Black Partridge	51
Grey Partridge	5
Quail	187
Sandgrouse	21
Green Pigeon	3
Blue Rocks	4

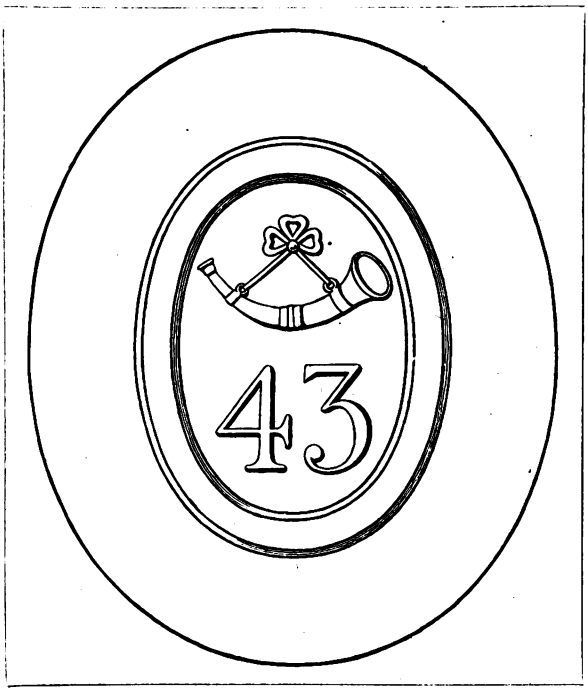
NOTE.—Three pigs were killed by the Tent Club at Ferozepore. Among the duck shot were three specimens of the white-faced stiff-tailed duck (*Erasmatura leucocephala*), which has only occasionally been shot in India, though a specimen was shot at Bareilly by Captain White in 1896.

Digitized by Google

AN OLD SHOULDER-BELT PLATE OF THE 43RD.

THE accompanying illustration represents the breast-plate worn by an Officer of the Light Company of the 43rd, immediately before the Regiment was made a Light Infantry corps in 1803.

The plate, oval and somewhat convex in shape, was made of burnished gilt metal; the inner rim, raised and bevelled at the edges, of silver. The bugle-horn and regimental number also in raised silver.



OFFICER'S SHOULDER-BELT PLATE, 1802.

For the Officers of the Grenadier Company, a silver grenade took the place of the bugle, whilst the Battalion Officers probably had the Crown in silver over the numerals. The illustration is the actual size of the plate.

It is a little surprising to find that gilt-metal breast-plates should have been worn by the Officers of a Regiment having silver appointments; yet such was sometimes the case at that period, notably with the 20th and 82nd Regiments, and possibly a few others.

S. M. MILNE.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

[*Woodbury Gravure.*

SERGEANTS, 43RD LIGHT INFANTRY, 1866.

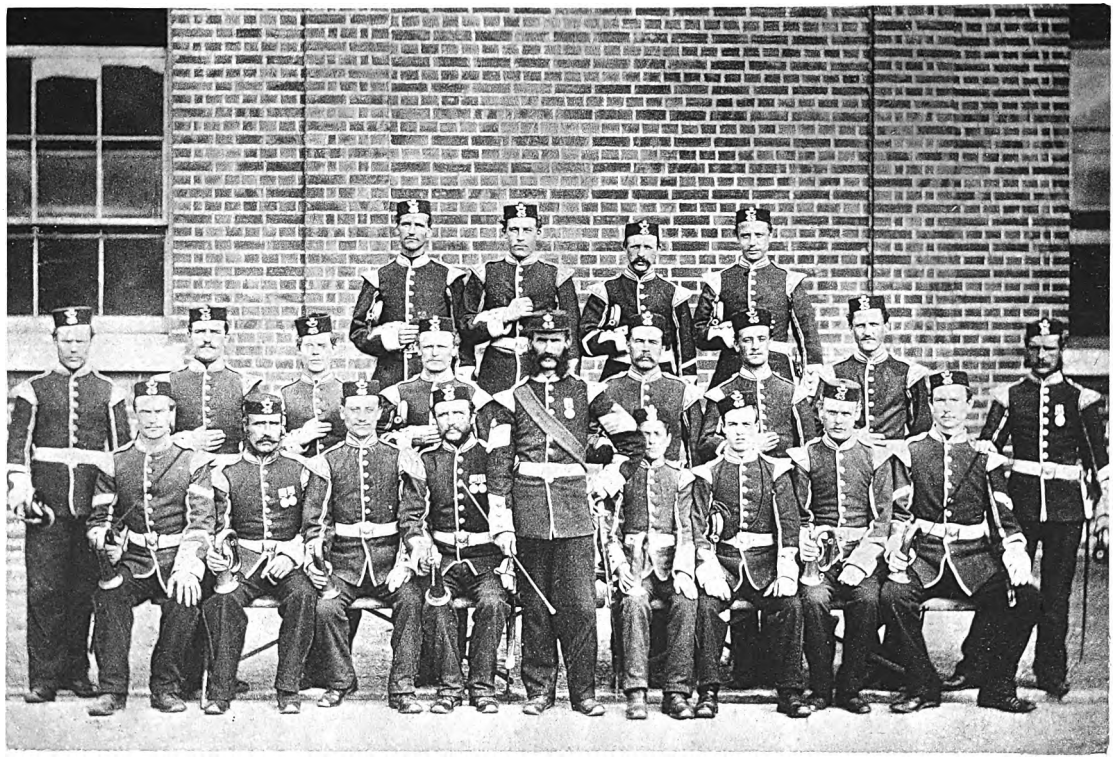
Digitized by Google

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY
ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS
R L

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google



[*Woodbury Gravure.*

THE BUGLES, 43RD LIGHT INFANTRY, 1866

Digitized by Google

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY
ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS
R L

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

[*Woodbury Gravure.*

THE BAND, 43RD LIGHT INFANTRY, 1866.

Digitized by Google

ASTOR, LENOX
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS
R

Digitized by Google

NOTES ON SKIRMISHING.

BY

COLONEL F. H. PLOWDEN,

2nd Oxfordshire Light Infantry.

Lahore:

CIVIL AND MILITARY GAZETTE PRESS.

1900.

S 726. N N

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

NOTES ON SKIRMISHING.

By Colonel F. H. PLOWDEN,

2nd Oxfordshire Light Infantry.

It is unfortunate that the latest edition of the Drill Book does not deal more fully with movements in extended order. However, paragraph 4, section 47, provides for the development of individual intelligence and directs that the recruit be encouraged to think and act for himself.

The Tirah and South African Campaigns have proved conclusively that tactics which depend on the soldier thinking and acting for himself are those best calculated to ensure success.

Skirmishing—a word no longer recognised in military parlance—meant, in its original sense, movement in irregular extended order during which each individual acted and thought for himself, having in view a common object. If we can revive the spirit of independent action in our men we shall have gone a long way towards solving the problem of approaching an enemy's position without suffering enormous losses. That such training is easily acquired, any Commanding Officer can find out for himself by a few trials.

It is not an easy matter for officers unaccustomed, and consequently averse to what may appear movements

Digitized by Google

out of all control, to undertake the training of their men in extensions on a very broad front. It is not so however amongst the rank and file. My experience has proved that, in place of the loss of control, of the getting out of hand, and the wild and ineffective firing that some may expect, the actual results of a few trials in independent skirmishing are a greater keenness, an intelligent appreciation of the greater responsibilities and a self-control that was unexpected.

In these notes I have not attempted to go beyond hints that may be found useful by officers at their Company Training, and perhaps Cavalry Regiments may approve of them for training their men for dismounted action. The all-important object of training in skirmishing is to accustom officers and men to act for themselves and to be able to meet sudden emergencies; another is to enable them to advance against a position with the least possible loss to themselves. In hill warfare skirmishing is essential.

No allusion is made in these notes to movements of Battalions or larger bodies; firstly, because it would be useless to attempt such movements before all ranks are fully trained from the beginning; and, secondly, because until the application of lessons of the South African War to the Army at large has been determined on by the highest authority, any such suggestions would be premature. However, it seems clear that movements on a much more extended front than is the case at present, combined with independent action, will sooner or later be introduced, and any training in this direction should prove useful as a preparation for future developments.

I may say, however, that I have seen an entire Battalion moved on the principles advocated here from a distance beyond artillery range to within decisive rifle

Digitized by Google

range without presenting an effective mark to artillery, and only a very difficult one to rifles.

The following paragraphs refer only to the action of one or two Companies.

The Line and Interval.—The barrack square line with well kept intervals is neither possible nor desirable in skirmishing. The actual cover available should decide the position of each individual, both as regards his neighbour and his position in front or in rear of the general alignments. When, however, the ground presents cover in the nature of a straight ridge, wall, or bank, every opportunity should be taken to re-organise and establish a steady and continuous fire, without however diminishing the frontage with which the line started. When working over uneven ground, such as a frontier hillside, neither line nor interval can be kept, and to attempt to do so entails unnecessary exposure. Let the skirmishing line be extended to cover the frontage desired, and let every man take his own line after that.

Officers and Section Commanders.—The duty of the officer in skirmishing is to lead, and that of the Section Commanders to control and assist. It is assumed that in future the officer will not be distinguishable from the men, and he can therefore advance by himself, or with a man or two without being made a special mark for the enemy's fire.

The Captain determines the successive halting-places from which fire is to be resumed, and places himself there, the Subalterns follow his lead. The Section Commanders control the general advance of the men, point out cover, prevent crowding and waste of ammunition, &c., but should not hamper the men. When control by Section Commanders can be maintained it certainly should be, but in broad extensions,—say 10 men cover-

Digitized by Google

ing 100 yards,—it must necessarily be confined to those in the immediate vicinity, hence the necessity of independent action on the part of the men. The men follow the lead of their officers, *thinking and acting for themselves.* By this is meant that they judge where to find cover, how to make the best use of it, when to leave their cover, when to fire, what sighting to use and what to fire at, and whether to close gradually for an assault or to increase the extension if opportunity offers of out-flanking the enemy, in accordance with the intention of the Captain. Hitherto these aids to the common object in view have been performed only by word of command.

The Extension.—An individual man is not a conspicuous object at 1,000 yards, and may be said to be invisible at 1,500. Smokeless powder does not disclose his whereabouts, and cover is almost always available. If, therefore, the skirmishing line is extended at such a distance as to be visible to the enemy, or behind cover that conceals the movement, the direction of the attack may be absolutely unknown to the enemy till individual men become conspicuous, which may not be until medium ranges are reached. It appears essential, therefore, that the extension of the skirmishing line should, whenever possible, be invisible to the enemy. As to the method, assuming that concealment is essential, every man should be under cover if possible from the very first. If, however, the men extend to regular intervals, it will happen that some will be entirely exposed if cover does not come in their way. It can be of small importance whether two men are together behind a rock or whether the intervals vary from one pace to ten, so long as the men are concealed and can use their rifles. Take as an example a Company ordered to picquet a hill on the frontier. The flank men would be sent round the sides

Digitized by Google

of a convenient spur, and the remainder would extend all round the spur wherever convenient cover offered itself. The whole would be concealed from the hill-top, and every man work his way up on his own line.

The Advance.—Experience has proved that the best way to avoid loss when advancing under fire is to do so in driblets of one or two men at a time, in place of in a general line, thereby offering a difficult mark. The following method of advancing suggests itself:—

The Captain, whose duty it is to lead his Company, should be the first to move. He should select the cover he intends the Company, or the extended portion of it, to occupy, and make a rush to it. The Subalterns following his example should do the same, placing themselves more or less in line with him. In order that the officers may not be too conspicuous, and have the whole of the enemy's fire concentrated on them, it is as well for one or two men to advance at the same time, but not those close to them, as this would offer a clump of men together. The men should then dribble up one or two at a time, never two together from any one part of the line, and take the cover they have marked out for themselves in a general line with the officers, and open fire. The Section Commanders see that too many men are not on the run at once, that men do not rush for places already sufficiently occupied, and that fire is kept up by those not moving. An important point to instil into the men is that, failing good cover in their front, they must lie flat in the open, keeping the head on the ground and only raising it to fire. This is preferable to crowding behind cover which may not admit of every man using his rifle. The khaki helmet should never be removed when skirmishing, the bare head is infinitely more conspicuous. The advance may be carried on in

Digitized by Google

the above manner to such distance from the position as the many circumstances governing the progress of the fight and the accuracy of the enemy's fire will admit. It may be within assaulting distance, or it may be very much further. In the latter case, the officer on the spot must determine on the best course of action. It is here that the advantages of training to act on emergency comes in. An officer so trained will act, while another will ask for orders. If an assault is feasible, the skirmishing line should gradually close as the position is neared. In the minor engagements in hill warfare in which one or two Companies are employed, this closing of the skirmishing line before the assault is very essential, as against frontier tribes the assault is nearly always feasible, and there is the danger of a counter attack or Ghází rush. It is purely a matter of training, and can be done almost mechanically.

Supports and Reinforcements.—It is now proved that supporting bodies cannot move in any but a very extended formation under rifle fire. It is as well, therefore, to extend them to the same frontage as the firing line from the commencement, in order to avoid doing so under fire later on. The necessity of concealment and cover applies equally to them as to the skirmishing line. The same will apply to a reserve if there be one. The advance of the supports may be in a more or less general line, but always taking advantage of cover; and there seems no necessity for them to close on the skirmishing line as the former get nearer to the position. It is impossible for the skirmishing line to move with rapidity after coming under effective fire; there will, therefore, be ample time—it may be hours—in which to dribble up men from the supports into the intervals in the skirmishing line. This should be carried out by the men creeping up singly here and there until the skirmishing line is

Digitized by Google

gradually thickened. The fire is thus doubled, and its effect should enable the reinforced line to continue the advance on the same principles as described before. In the meantime, if there be a reserve they should in exactly the same manner gradually occupy the ground originally held by the supports. It would be madness, under a heavy fire, to attempt to reinforce a skirmishing line by doubling up sections at a time without regard to cover, as is so frequently done. A great fault in peace practices is the rapidity with which attacks are carried out, troops moving in half-an-hour over ground that could only be covered in many hours in a real fight. The intermixing of units has hitherto been a stumbling-block to skirmishing. However, the Drill Book admits that it is inevitable. In the case of a Company or two, and where the men have been trained to act independently, the difficulty disappears, as I think it may well in the case of larger units. If a man is trained to act independently as one of a Company detailed for a certain task, it can make little difference what part of the line he works in.

The work of the supports in hill warfare on the frontier is exceptional. It is as well to keep them in single rank, and closer to the skirmishing line in case of a rush —always supposing it is possible to do so.

Taking Cover.—There are all sorts of cover, and some that the soldier will not recognise as such unless he is taught. A tuft of grass may be as good as a stone wall, and a slight depression in the ground, invisible save when lying down, better than either. The most frequent descriptions of cover are trees and woods, crops, rocks and stones, banks or walls, hedges, and ridges or depressions in the ground. One universal rule applies to all, namely, always fire from the bottom if you can, and not from the top; never offer a mark if you can avoid it. This

Digitized by Google

is obvious, yet it has to be taught. A soldier will nine times out of ten kneel behind a tree or rock and expose half his body, from the head to the knee, instead of lying down and exposing only half his head and shoulder. It is a very common thing to see a soldier firing over the top of a bush or tuft of long grass, which gives no cover except from sight.

Woods.—Woods do not give so much cover as might be supposed. If a wood is seen to be entered it may become a death trap from artillery fire, moreover it takes a very thick tree to stop a small-bore bullet. In crossing a wood therefore it is important to enter unperceived and to creep from tree to tree, firing if it is open enough from the roots where the trunk is thickest. On reaching the edge nearest the enemy another danger arises, or will if the whole line emerge at once. The exit should be carried out as described in the method of advancing, *i.e.*, by driblets from different parts of the line, rushing well out into the open and lying down at once. This method is the best when crossing any kind of cover. Never offer a mark at any one place.

Crops.—These of course offer cover only from view, but if they can be entered on the further side without being perceived, and the extension be kept wide, the men crawling and keeping low, a position may be reached near the side next the enemy, which will give sufficient cover from view and admit of aim being taken.

Walls, Hedges and Banks.—Walls and banks must be fired over unless stones can be removed near the bottom, or loopholes made. If such cover has to be fired over, then the men must be taught not to show a line of heads along the top. They should fire at considerable intervals apart, and seldom from the same

Digitized by Google

spot. This will give officers and Section Commanders some work, and defences such as these give an opportunity for reinforcements to come up. To cross walls, banks or hedges, the universal principle of never offering a mark should be remembered. Cross rapidly, vaulting over with the rifle slung, if possible, never in the same place, and get well away, officers in front.

Ridges and Depressions.—Ridges offer the best cover of all, and when cleverly occupied the skirmishers should be invisible. However, it wants teaching. Without training men will walk up to the crest and then lie down, exposing all or most of the body, thereby informing the enemy that they have arrived. A ridge should be crawled up and the whole body be covered by the crest line. In order to fire, the rifle has only to be pushed up and rested on the top, and nothing exposed except the invisible khaki helmet, and perhaps the top of the shoulders. At medium ranges even, these are almost invisible. It is just as well to be careful in occupying a ridge, especially if it is a bold one, as there may be something unexpected on the other side. A scout or two should crawl up first. To cross a ridge is not an easy matter if the enemy have discovered that it is occupied. The same rule applies here as in crossing walls or banks.

Open Ground.—The Drill Book states that ground of this character should never be selected to carry out an attack, but it may happen that the enemy's position is expressly selected with the view of forcing an attack over open ground. If an attack is inevitable those troops who have been trained to skirmish will cross the ground with half the losses of those who have not been so trained. Ground that is to all appearances perfectly flat and bare, will nevertheless give some cover if you get low enough, and a motionless figure dressed in khaki

Digitized by Google

lying down is not an object easy to see or to hit. There are almost always slight depressions and irregularities of surface on the most open ground that will give cover if intelligently sought for and utilised, but the difficulty is to advance from it when within medium ranges. The only plan is to crawl. This is a laborious and tiring method and requires practice. The rifle should be slung over the back and progress made on the forearms, using the toes to propel the body forward. Moving on the hands and knees exposes too much. Working in this way wears out the clothing, and so it is never practised, but no man can be called a trained skirmisher until he can crawl. It is not until medium ranges are reached that crawling need be resorted to in open ground.

Defiles.—It would seem that to cross a bridge or any defile entailing a narrowing of the front is now almost an impossibility against rifle fire. However, it may have to be done, and the safest way is for the skirmishing line to occupy the sides of the defile, using magazine fire if necessary, while the support having advanced as close as the cover permits, rush across in file, hugging the sides and extending at once. It may be better for the support to dribble across if the fire is not too accurate and intense. There are defiles where the enemy's fire may not be entirely frontal, as it usually is in the case of a bridge. The fire may be from the front and one or both flanks, or from both flanks and not from the front. When such places have to be crossed, it should be remembered that dead ground may often be found, and should be taken advantage of. Suppose a valley with one side in occupation by the enemy. The chances are that by hugging the side occupied, and moving in driblets, much of the ground may be covered in safety. If both sides are occupied, then

Digitized by Google

by hugging *each* side the skirmishers will only be exposed to fire from the side opposite instead of from both, and will moreover be able to fire themselves. This is specially the method of street fighting.

The Assault.—However severe the fire, if the assault is to be carried out, skirmishing ceases when assaulting distance is reached. There can be no dribbling then. It would be insanity to assault a breach by a section at a time. Every available man must be there, and the position carried by the survivors. The assault may be delivered by the support, covered by the skirmishing line.

Fire.—One of the difficulties in training men to skirmish is to get them to remember that accurate fire is of equal importance to taking cover, and to make them fire collectively. This gives another opportunity for the Section Commanders to assist and control. Deliberate independent fire is the only kind possible in skirmishing. Before the extension, every non-commissioned officer and man must be clearly and precisely instructed in the task he is required to perform, and the manner in which it is to be carried out. Without this preliminary instruction the whole operation may fail. Each man will act independently according to his own lights, and not according to those of his Commander. It will be one of the duties of the Section Commanders to see that their men are directing their fire to the best advantage towards carrying out the intention of the Captain. Opportunities will occur during the advance when cover will admit of their moving freely in rear of their sections; they should then direct the fire, control and concentrate it. A well concealed enemy will remain practically invisible until the shortening distance of the assailants from him enable his position to be ascertained. It is wiser to restrain the fire of the skirmishing line

Digitized by Google

until this occurs; though on occasions, such as crossing a bridge as described above, a rapid and concentrated fire may make it impossible for the enemy to expose himself to reply to it.

Errors to be guarded against.—Crowding is one of the most common mistakes made by men at the commencement of their training. Crowding in the open is of course worse than crowding under cover, but in the latter case a great danger exists in a string of men emerging from one spot who are, of course, liable to be knocked over in detail. On a hillside, if the mistake has been made, it is better to slide down out of sight, and for each man to take up a fresh line. Another very frequent error, especially in hill warfare, is the clinging to paths, nullahs, or ravines where the walking is easier, and where of course the enemy are prepared and have measured the distances. Both these errors can be avoided by training and supervision.

Flank Attack.—With the loose and flexible formation of an irregular extended line, the support, if not already absorbed, can easily adapt itself to meet the emergency of a flank attack, so long as it is recognised that every man moves the shortest and least exposed way toward the new front, and that it is of no consequence what place he occupies provided he is under cover and can use his rifle. This method may sound rather astounding; but compare it to the usual one of pivoting a line at close intervals on the flank man, the whole line doubling, completely exposed, to take up the fresh alignment regardless of cover and thinking most of their interval and dressing. These things are not done in war, but they are unfortunately too often seen in peace.

Scouts.—The duties of scouts do not form part of these notes. A scout is nothing more than a highly trained skirmisher. With a Battalion trained to skirmish

Digitized by Google

every man can scout more or less. The manner of crossing a country suggested in these notes is that best suited to scouting and patrol work. Scouts in front of the skirmishing line are always useful, specially so in hill warfare, and they should always be used.

Retirements.—Little can be said on this head. If the fire of the enemy will not admit of further advance beyond a certain point, neither will it admit of a retirement. If on the other hand the enemy's fire is overcome by your own, and is consequently ineffective to stop the advance, then there is no need of a retirement. The only case in which retirement may be obligatory is in retreat, and then the advantages of skirmishing again become apparent. The retirement can be done on exactly the same principles as the advance.

In hill war, however, the tactics of the retirement are special, and are now well understood.

Cavalry.—Should Cavalry care to run the risk of attacking a line of skirmishers, it will most likely be while they are on open ground, and convenient cover somewhere near gives the Cavalry the opportunity of sudden and unexpected attack. The scouts, if up to their work, should allow no such cover as would screen even a small body of Cavalry to go unexplored. If by chance or negligence the Cavalry are given their chance, rallying squares is the best formation to meet them. The open ground will favour the skirmishers getting together, and the support will have a clearer front to fire over than if the skirmishers form groups.

Other Uses of Skirmishers.—In these notes only the fighting rôle of skirmishers has been touched upon. There are many others. In fact, skirmishers can go anywhere, and do what no one else can. Advanced guards, rear guards, covering outposts, flanking, scouting, and patrolling by day and night are all within the

Digitized by Google

scope of the skirmisher, whether they involve fighting, watching, or collecting information.

The importance of skirmishing does not seem to be fully realised as yet, nor are its advantages utilised. Once under fire, control must cease to some extent until it can be resumed as opportunities offer. Modern rifle fire has made it imperative that extensions should be much greater than heretofore. One man cannot command a section extended over, perhaps, a hundred yards, while he is himself confined to cover, consequently more latitude to individuals becomes absolutely essential. Our men are not wanting in intelligence—far from it—and they will not shirk responsibility; on the contrary, they appreciate it; but unfortunately our system stifles all initiative in both officers and men, and we train both to dependence on immediate superiors, who in their turn depend on others. To such an extent is this carried, that neither officers nor men have the pluck to act independently at a time when, perhaps, only independent and prompt action can save the situation. Fortunately, this defect is becoming recognised and may be remedied, though time must elapse before a system so long recognised as unimpeachable can be replaced by a better. Whether in the future skirmishers will be only employed as an advance screen to cover the forward movement of large bodies against a position, or whether the attack itself will be delivered by widely extended lines gradually being reinforced on some such system as is suggested here, remains to be seen. In any case, no harm can be done by training men to "think and act for themselves," as advocated in the Drill Book. Some may think these notes go too far, and that the principle of allowing men a free hand is dangerous. However, a few of us can remember the change from the attack in line two deep to that in extended order, which took place after the

Digitized by Google

Franco-Prussian war. The changes indicated here, which may be in store for us, cannot be greater than that was. In conclusion, I may say that I have tried the methods of getting over ground and taking cover given in these notes with most satisfactory results.

F. H. PLOWDEN, Colonel,
2nd Battalion, Oxfordshire Light Infantry.

Naini Tal, 14th July 1900.

Digitized by Google

OBITUARY.

MAJOR CHARLES RUSSELL DAY died of wounds received at Paardeberg on the 18th February. He was the only son of the Rev. Russell Day, Rector of Horstead, Norfolk, and Maria Isabella, eldest daughter of T. J. Knowlys, Esq., of Heysham Tower, Lancashire, and was born on the 19th April, 1860. Educated at Cheam School and Eton; joined 3rd Royal Lancashire Militia 1880. and gazetted Lieutenant, Oxfordshire Light Infantry, 28th January, 1882. He served for a few months with the 2nd Battalion in Ireland, and was then transferred to the 1st Battalion in India. Captain, 27th July, 1889; Major, 23rd October, 1899. Adjutant of Volunteers, 1892–97.

In 1884–85 he took part with his Company of the 1st Battalion in the operations for the suppression of the Moplah Riots, Southern India, and was severely wounded by a bullet in the chest. Received the thanks of the Madras Government.

In December, 1900, Major Day proceeded to South Africa with the 1st Battalion, being present at all the engagements up to the time of receiving the wounds to which he unfortunately succumbed. In the action at Klip Kraal, on the 16th February, he was exposed to the full fury of the Boer fire, as evidenced by the fact that whilst lying on the ground his field-glasses were broken to pieces by a bullet. At Paardeberg, on the 18th, he was wounded severely though not dangerously, and there would have been every prospect of his recovery, but in being carried from the field by the stretcher-party he was wounded a second time by an explosive bullet. He died two days afterwards, and his funeral was described

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Photographed by Mayall & Co., Ltd.]

MAJOR CHARLES RUSSELL DAY.

MORTALLY WOUNDED AT PAARDEBERG.

Digitized by Google

NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY
ASTOR, LENOX AND
TILDEN FOUNDATIONS
R L

Digitized by Google

by the Chaplain as the most impressive one at which he had ever officiated. Major-General Knox, himself severely wounded, attended, and though the Regiment, being at the time in action, was unable to be present, twenty or thirty wounded men in hospital managed to find their way to the grave side, to show their respect for their officer. The *Church Times* of April 6th, 1900, published a letter from the Rev. J. Blackburn, Chaplain to the Forces, from which the following is an extract:—

On February 21st, I buried Major Day, of the Oxfordshire Light Infantry. It was a most pathetic funeral. About 30 wounded men of his Regiment and General Knox followed. These men were wounded in every conceivable part of the body; they made a sad picture as we wended our way to the grave. Not many of us returned with dry eyes.

The *Daily Mail* in describing the fighting at Paardeberg said:—

A wounded Corporal[1] gives a pathetic account of Major Day's death at Paardeberg. That cultured and brilliant officer left cover to help the wounded man, and had just reached him when he was shot. When both had been taken under cover, his first inquiry was how the Corporal was getting on. "Never mind me," he said.

Major Day, who was a Fellow of the Society of Antiquaries, was well known in the musical world as an enthusiast, more especially in the matter of musical instruments and their history. He was an indefatigable worker, and whilst on service in India he formed a large collection of native instruments and copious notes on native airs, which he afterwards published in a magnificent volume entitled "Music and Musical Instruments of Southern India and the Deccan." In 1890 he published another valuable work of reference, "Descriptive

[1] Corporal Knowles, West Riding Regiment. He was invalided home, and, with reference to the above paragraph in the *Daily Mail*, stated that Major Day had saved his life, going to his assistance through a hail of bullets.—Ed.

Digitized by Google

Catalogue of Musical Instruments Exhibited at the Royal Military Exhibition," and he contributed numerous scientific papers to musical journals, etc. The CHRONICLE also has been indebted to him for interesting articles on Military Music and Bugle Calls, and it is needless to say that the band of the Regiment benefited considerably by the knowledge that he was able to bring to bear on its instruction.

In 1885, when only 25 years of age, he was appointed a member of the University Committee for investigating the Music of India; 1890, employed on the Musical Committee of the Royal Military Exhibition, London; 1893, Member of the English Committee, International Exhibition, Vienna; and previous to his departure for South Africa he had been appointed to a similar post for the Paris Exhibition of 1900. The *Spectator*, of March 17, 1900, in an article headed "Soldier Musicians," paid a tribute to his work as well as to his memory. From this article we extract the following:—

The other side of the question, what soldiers have done for music and how they have availed themselves of their opportunities when upon foreign service for broadening the borders of the art, is, however, more in need of recognition, and a fitting occasion is furnished by the regretted death of an officer who died of wounds received in action at Paardeberg —Major C. R. Day, of the Oxfordshire Light Infantry. While stationed in India Major Day made a special study of Oriental music, and embodied the results in an elaborate and scholarly monograph on the music of Southern India, handsomely illustrated with coloured drawings of the various native instruments, and containing a careful scientific analysis of the melodic and rhythmic bases of this school of Eastern music. Major Day's studies, though they tended somewhat in an archæological direction, were not incompatible with a keen interest in modern music and modern instruments, and the present writer well remembers, on the occasion of a visit in his company to the collection at the Military Exhibition in 1890, how, *à propos* of the saxophone, he referred to the effective use made of that music in Massenet's *Esclarmonde*. "He was not," writes "A. J. H.," to whom we are indebted for some interesting reminiscences of this accomplished and charming

Digitized by Google

THE NEW YORK
PUBLIC LIBRARY

Digitized by Google

LIEUTENANT ASHLEY ROWLAND BRIGHT.

KILLED AT PAARDEBERG.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

officer, "an executive musician, except for a delightful way he had of preludising in a kind of Indian strain on the piano. He was seriously attracted to Indian music between 1882–87, when his Regiment, the old 43rd, was in the Peninsula, as his *magnus opus* shows. He collected a few rare specimens of Indian musical instruments, one a vina, two hundred years old, of rare beauty, all of which I have taken care of for him while he had no settled home. He got together a great deal of serviceable knowledge about the military instruments, and welcomed with that gentle enthusiasm which was so characteristic of him, the chance of cataloguing the remarkable collection of the Military Exhibition, Chelsea, 1890, to which we owe the admirable volume which Eyre and Spottiswoode published. His ambition was to become the Commandant of Kneller Hall. I believe he would have retired from the Army ere this, being married and having a little daughter, but that he felt promotion was gradually bringing him nearer to the rank essential for the post. Duty called him to Africa, with the sad result which those of us who knew and loved him mourn."[1]

The *Times*, *Athenæum*, *Daily News*, and many other journals contained long obituary notices, and the *Musical News* deplored Major Day's loss in a leading article of very considerable length. We will quote only the last few lines :—

The bright example he displayed of industry, thoroughness, and devotion to duty remains for our emulation ; the staff of this journal mourns the loss of a gifted comrade, and—the writer of these lines ventures to add—a courteous English gentleman and a true friend. We tender our heartfelt sympathies to his father and his wife, the daughter of Mr. Scott-Chad, of Thursford, Norfolk, whom the deceased officer married only a few years ago.

LIEUTENANT ASHLEY ROWLAND BRIGHT was born on the 3rd November 1872, and entered the Oxfordshire Light Infantry (from the Militia) as 2nd Lieutenant on the 12th December 1894; promoted Lieutenant, 17th November 1897 ; appointed Assistant-Adjutant 1st Battalion, 18th February 1898.

---

[1] The writer was evidently Mr. Alfred James Hipkins, F.S.A., a well-known musical critic and authority.—ED.

Digitized by Google

In the autumn of 1899 he proceeded to South Africa with the Durham Light Infantry, to which he was attached, in order to take command of the Maxim gun detachment. With them he was actively engaged until the arrival of his own Regiment, to which he was then transferred for duty, taking part in the invasion of the Orange Free State and the subsequent engagements, in command of a Company. He was shot dead through the heart on the 18th February at the battle of Paardeberg, a description of which we have given elsewhere, and his loss was deeply felt by the whole Regiment.

He was an officer of great ability and much promise, and his Commanding Officer wrote of his death in the following words:—"Poor Bright—I deeply regret his death, for he was an excellent officer, and a cheery, intelligent companion. I always felt I could trust him, and in these times of very young subalterns, with a want of *savoir faire*, a man of this sort is invaluable. How he escaped being shot two days earlier, at Klip Kraal, I cannot think, for throughout the day he was exposed to a perfect hail of lead."

2nd Lieutenant Vere Annesley Ball-Acton was born on the 22nd April 1879, entered Sandhurst September 1897, and passed out in December 1898. Gazetted to the 1st Battalion as 2nd Lieutenant, on the 11th February 1899, he proceeded with it on active service, as one of the junior subalterns, at the end of the year. He was present at the attack on Cronje's rear-guard at Klip Kraal on the 16th February, and was shot through the head at the battle of Paardeberg on the 18th, when within a few hundred yards of Cronje's laager. Like his two brother officers, he found a soldier's grave by the side of the Modder River, being buried by a

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Photographed by Charles Knight, Aldershot.

2ND LIEUTENANT VERE ANNESLEY BALL-ACTON.

KILLED AT PAARDEBERG.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

funeral party of Canadians, near whose shelter-trenches he had fallen.

MAJOR LLEWELLYN JAMES HOWELL died at Lahore, 22nd February 1900. He was born on the 22nd February 1858, and was educated at Harrow and Sandhurst. He entered the 43rd Light Infantry as 2nd Lieutenant, 22nd January 1879; Lieutenant Oxfordshire Light Infantry 1st July 1881; served with the 1st Battalion in Burma and India until 31st January 1885, on which date he was transferred to the Bengal Staff Corps (16th Bengal Lancers); Captain Indian Staff Corps, 22nd January 1890; Major, 22nd January 1899.

MAJOR L. J. HOWELL.

CAPTAIN LORD MONSON, C.V.O., late 52nd Light Infantry, died at Florence on the 18th June, 1900, in his 71st year.

Debonnaire John Monson, eighth Baron Monson, in the peerage of Great Britain, and a baronet of England, was second son of the sixth baron, and in 1898 succeeded his brother, the first and last Viscount Oxenbridge, in the barony of Monson.

He joined the 52nd Light Infantry as Ensign, 16th June, 1848; Lieutenant, 22nd August, 1851; Captain, 20th July, 1855. Retired 22nd October, 1861. Served in the Indian Mutiny, being present at the Siege of Delhi (Medal and Clasp).

He married, in 1861, Augusta Louisa Constance,

Digitized by Google

youngest daughter of Colonel the Hon. H. Ellis, and was appointed Comptroller and Treasurer of the Household of the Duke of Edinburgh (the late Duke of Saxe Coburg and Gotha), his wife being appointed a Lady-in-Waiting to the Duchess. He was also Serjeant-at-Arms to the Queen.

Lord Monson was an elder brother of Sir Edmund Monson, British Ambassador in Paris.

Francis Edward Dowler, late Lieutenant 52nd Light Infantry, died in London on the 29th April, 1900, aged sixty.

He entered the 52nd as Ensign, 29th October, 1858; Lieutenant, 17th July, 1863; and retired 20th October, 1865.

Digitized by Google

AN OLD REGIMENTAL MEMORIAL.

THE 1st Battalion discovered in the cemetery at Bloemfontein the grave of a 43rd soldier who died there of wounds during the Kaffir war. The stone, like many others, had evidently been used as a target by the Boers at musketry practice in the old fort (some 700 yards away), but it was found to be still in fair preservation, and the surrounding ground and the mound were soon put in order by willing hands. The following is the inscription on the stone:—

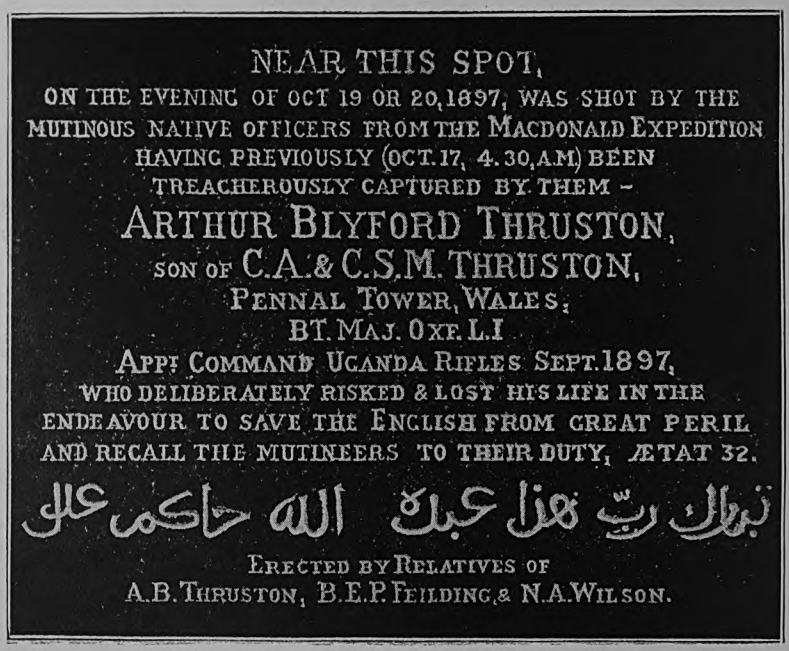
Sacred to the Memory of
JOHN DELAP,
Late of H.M.'s 43rd Regiment
Light Infantry,
Who died from wound received in
Action, on the 28th December 1852,
Aged 27 years.

This Tablet was erected by the Detachment
45th Regiment, as a token of respect to a
Brother Soldier.

Digitized by Google

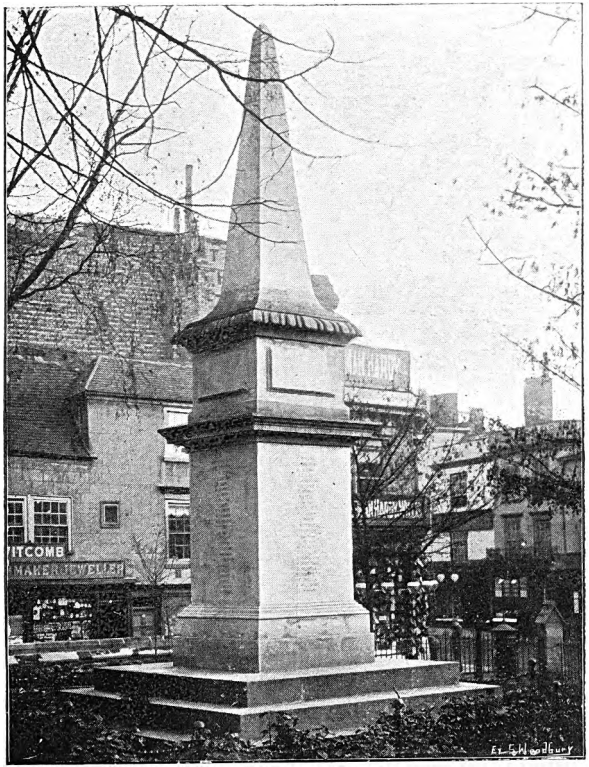
MEMORIAL TO MAJOR THRUSTON IN UGANDA.

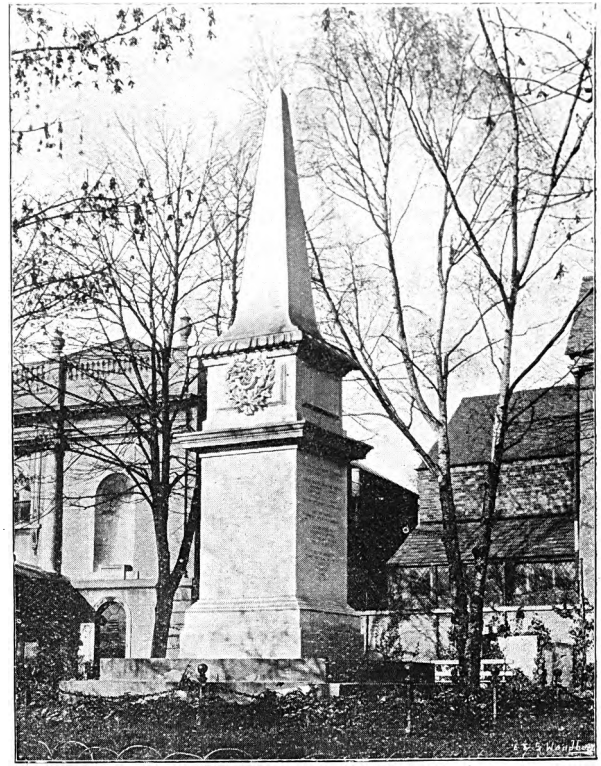
THIS year the work of erecting, at Lubwa's, a monument to the memory of the Englishmen murdered by the Uganda Mutineers in 1897, has been in progress. It is in the form of a huge cairn of boulders from the Nile, standing some forty feet high, and four slabs (with inscriptions) to be let into the sides, have been sent out from England by the relatives of Major Thruston, Lieut. Feilding, Mr. Scott, and Mr. Wilson. We reproduce a photograph of the tablet to be erected to the memory of Major Thruston.



Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google





NORTH-WEST FRONTIER MEMORIAL.

ERECTED AT OXFORD, 1900.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

THE TIRAH MEMORIAL AT OXFORD.

From the *Oxford Times*, July 7th, 1900.

A MILITARY MONUMENT IN OXFORD.

OXFORD is a city of noble buildings, enduring monuments of the piety and the love of learning of past generations of Englishmen, but hitherto, with the exception of the Martyrs' Memorial, there has been no erection dedicated to the memory of the great deeds or sufferings in the cause of truth of any man. Now we have the first military monument ever erected in Oxford devoted to the names of those who died for their country, whether in battle or by disease. The names are of officers and men of the Territorial Battalion of the old 52nd, and the campaign commemorated is that waged in 1897 and 1898 on the North-West frontier of India, that rugged mountain region peopled by tribes who have proved at once our bravest enemies, and when beaten our most loyal soldiers. It is well for the Empire that in each county the valour of the Territorial Regiments should be thus commemorated. To crowd all statues and all trophies into the Metropolis is surely a great error. There are sermons in stones, and this memorial—standing on a site consecrated for ages to worship—will itself speak of duty, and valour, and patriotism to all who pass it by.

THE UNVEILING CEREMONY.

The monument to the memory of the officers and men of the 2nd Battalion Oxfordshire Light Infantry who died or were killed in action in the campaign on the North-West frontier of India, and elsewhere, in the period from August, 1897, to November, 1898, and which has been erected by their comrades in the Regiment on a site given by the Corporation, on which formerly stood the Church of St. Peter-le-Bailey, and is now a public garden, at the junction of the New Road with Queen Street, was unveiled on Friday afternoon, in the presence of a large assemblage of the general public, by Miss Morrell, daughter of the Mayor, who performed the ceremony in the unavoidable absence of her mother. The 2nd Battalion is now serving in India, and application for the granting of a site having been made by the Commanding Officer, Colonel Plowden, the Corporation fixed upon this piece of ground as occupying one of the most commanding positions in the city, and very readily granted it for so appropriate a purpose. In digging for the

Digitized by Google

foundations it was found necessary to go to a depth of 20 feet, the excavations having to be carried through the soil which had been used as a graveyard into the ground below, where a great many bones of animals were found. The human remains were carefully collected and taken away for re-burial at Osney Cemetery. At the bottom of the trench concrete was laid, and the foundation has been formed of this material to the ground level. The base of the monument consists of three steps of Doulting stone, and the erection then takes a square form to a height of about 14 feet, where there is a cornice, and about two feet above that a moulded string course, and from thence to the top of the stonework is pyramidal in shape, the total height being 25 feet. The stone of which the monument consists from the base came from the Monk's Park Quarry, Bath. On the front, beneath the cornice, facing the street, the following inscription is carved :—

> "This monument was erected by the Officers, Non-commissioned Officers, and Men of the 2nd Battalion Oxfordshire Light Infantry, in memory of their comrades who died between 15th August, 1897, and 4th November, 1898."

In the space between the cornice and the string course there is a carved wreath, in the centre of which is a bugle surmounted by the figures "52," this being the old number of the Battalion as a Regiment of the Line.

On the other three sides are the names of the officers and men whose memory is commemorated, as under :—

EAST SIDE.

Killed by Mutineers in Uganda:

Brevet-Major A. B. Thruston.

Died of Disease on Active Service:

Lieut. J. L. Powys.
Lieut. D. R. Napier.
Lieut. H. W. B. Trench.
2nd Lieut. J. G. Fitzgerald.

Died of Wounds:

Surgeon-Major H. H. Dempsey.

Killed in Action:

Sergeant J. S. Hopkins.
Lance-Corporal W. Bell.
Private W. Butler.

Digitized by Google

EAST SIDE—*cont.*

Died of Disease:

Lance-Corporal W. Martin.
Bugler A. J. Betts.
Bugler T. Bull.
Bugler C. Cox.

NORTH SIDE.

Private W. Addaway.
Private J. H. Beer.
Private A. E. Bissoni.
Private G. Bond.
Private G. Barnes.
Private A. Cross.
Private H. E. Cook.
Private F. Collis.
Private G. Comley.
Private W. Dormer.
Private W. J. Death.
Private C. Dix.
Private G. Day.
Private F. Everett.
Private E. Ferris.
Private W. Fortnam.
Private H. Gardner.
Private W. J. Godliman.
Private S. Green.
Private G. Hicks.
Private J. Hoare.
Private J. Hull.
Private G. Hughes.
Private F. S. Knibbs.

WEST SIDE.

Private F. T. King.
Private C. Lambourne.
Private A. Lyons.
Private J. F. Lee.
Private A. Langston.
Private A. G. Lane.

Digitized by Google

WEST SIDE—*cont.*

Private E. Marsh.
Private R. Mills.
Private A. Morris.
Private D. Newport.
Private M. O'Brien.
Private J. Owen.
Private A. Perry.
Private J. Pointer.
Private F. Pittaway.
Private J. Pickup.
Private G. Pickett.
Private E. Ridgley.
Private G. Radbourn.
Private W. Robinson.
Private G. Selwood.
Private W. Shepherd.
Private G. Wells.
Private T. Wiltshire.
Private T. Wiggins.

The architect of the monument was Mr. Inigo Thomas, of London, and the builders, Messrs. Franklin, of Deddington.

The hour fixed for the unveiling was three o'clock, and shortly before that time a guard of honour of 50 men from the Barracks, headed by the Band of the 2nd Volunteer Battalion Oxfordshire Light Infantry, under Bandmaster H. Willis, marched into the enclosed space, and stood with fixed bayonets during the proceedings. Captain Parr, who was wounded in the Tirah Campaign, was in command of the guard of honour. Colonel Strachan, commanding the 43rd Regimental Depôt at Cowley, was also present, together with Captain H. R. Stapleton Cotton, Lieut. Knox, Reserve of Officers, and 2nd Lieut. Wingfield, of the 4th Battalion Oxfordshire Light Infantry. The Rector of the parish, the Hon. and Rev. W. T. Rice, attended in his surplice, and accompanying Miss Morrell was Mrs. Parr. It was noticed that several of the men in the guard of honour possessed the Tirah medal.

The Mayor (Councillor F. P. Morrell) invited the members of the Corporation to meet him at the Town Hall and accompany him in the procession to the spot. Full-dress robes were worn. Those who attended included the Sheriff (Alderman Salter), the Deputy-Mayor (Councillor Kingerlee), Aldermen Bacon, Buckell, Saunders, Woodward, Cooper, Downing, Daniel, Underhill, and Lucas, the Town Clerk

Digitized by Google

(Mr. R. Bacon), Councillors Taphouse, J. Salter, Taylor, Thorogood, Zacharias, Meeking, Vincent, S. Underhill, Turrill, Hutchins, North and Leech, Mr. W. H. White (City Engineer) and Mr. Carver (City Accountant).

The Mayor said he had the honour and privilege, and it was no light honour or privilege, to very shortly address them on the unveiling of the monument—a monument which had been erected by the men of the 2nd Battalion Oxfordshire Light Infantry to their comrades who fell in the Tirah and North-Western Campaign in India. This was the first time, so far as he knew, that a military monument had been erected in the City of Oxford. It was, therefore, a specially interesting and important occasion, and one which could not be passed over in silence. For a long time past they had known, and had most highly respected and honoured the two Regiments, the 43rd and 52nd Regiments, two of the oldest and finest Regiments in the service, that were now united as the Oxfordshire Light Infantry, and it was a special privilege to the Mayor and Corporation on that occasion to welcome a Regiment that took its name from their county, the county of which Oxford was the chief city. It was an equal pleasure and a great pride to the Corporation to have given the site for the erection of the monument; it was one of the finest sites in Oxford, and it would, he hoped, as they passed by it to the barracks or the railway stations, remind all the men of the great Regiment to which they had the honour to belong, of the great deeds which had been done in the past by it. India was, he supposed, the country of all others where in recent times great military reputations had been earned; it was the country in which experience was gained in military affairs. He need hardly allude to the honoured Commander-in-Chief in South Africa, Lord Roberts, who made such a great name for himself in India. Many others had made great reputations in that country, and he was sure that the way in which the war in South Africa had been carried out, the determination and pluck of all the men who had been fighting there for their Queen and country, showed how well they had carried into effect the lessons which they had learnt in India. Among the campaigns in India, the recent one on the North-West frontier was by no means the least. In it the 2nd Battalion of this great Regiment had added to their laurels, had added increased renown and increased honour to these great honours and that great renown which they had inherited from ages past from those who had belonged to it. They regretted the loss of many lives whose names were recorded on the monument. He thought they might justly pride themselves and congratulate the Regiment on the great bravery which it had shown in no easy warfare. They who lived at home, and knew but little of India,

Digitized by Google

thought that country was a great burning plain, and but little else. But the North-West frontier campaign was carried through, not in a burning country, but in a very mountainous country, with great cold, among snows and in storms of rain; it was there that these men fought and died bravely for their country. They fought with a very fierce foe, and they must most highly respect the men who for their Queen and country, and at the call of duty, had faced death. Many were killed in battle, and many died from wounds and disease. The Commanding Officer of the 2nd Battalion, Colonel Plowden, was amongst those who were wounded, and he was pleased to think that he had recovered from his wounds and was still in command of the Regiment. There was also present on this occasion Captain Parr, who was wounded in the campaign. He, too, he was glad to say, recovered, and was present in command of the guard of honour. In an open-air speech one could not be too short, and he had only to say, in conclusion, that a monument of this sort, by its enduring character, would remind those who were present, and those who might be the Mayors and Corporations of this ancient city for many years to come, of the great deeds which had been nobly done by those whom they were commemorating, who had not feared to face death itself in honour of and to the glory of their God, their Queen, and their Country. By Colonel Strachan's wish, and at the request of the Regiment, he had the pleasure of asking, in the absence of the Mayoress, Miss Morrell, his daughter, to unveil the monument.

Miss Morrell then, by pulling a cord, released the covering which had hidden the monument from view, the guard of honour presented arms, and the band played the "general salute." The large crowd hailed the unveiling with continued applause.

The Mayor said he would now ask the Rector of the parish to say a few words, and to offer prayer.

The Hon. and Rev. W. Talbot Rice said most of them were aware that the monument which had just been unveiled stood on the site of the old St. Peter-le-Bailey Church, before the present one was built by Canon Linton, and those of them who had watched its growth were glad to know what it was for, and that day were exceedingly glad that such a good use should be made of a portion of the old churchyard of their parish. They were very glad, because they realised, he thought, strongly how much they owed to the devotion and courage and self-sacrifice of their soldiers as Englishmen, and he thought that this monument, placed as it was in a very prominent position in the city, would help to remind all passers-by at what a great cost the Empire that they boasted and were proud of had been won and was being held. It would help to remind the young people—and there were a large number of young

Digitized by Google

people who passed by that spot to go to school day by day, and especially their boys—that they should seek for the same kind of courage and devotion that inspired the men who had in days gone by laid down their lives, and whose places they were asked to fill. And also it would help to remind all who passed by as members of the Oxfordshire Light Infantry, that the great roll-call of British heroes was not yet completed, and that their names might yet be entered on it if they lived and fought for and served their Queen and country nobly. And he thought it would help to remind them all that one of the secrets of true life was the service of sacrifice. And yet one other thing, and he could not help saying this, and he rejoiced to say it on that spot, that, standing as the monument did on a place that was sacred to the memory of many who had been buried there—and that must hold the place dear in the hearts and minds of many who had worshipped God there for generation after generation in old St. Peter-le-Bailey Churches—for there was more than one—he could not help saying that it would help to remind them that the greatest heroes and the noblest men were the men who would have their places some day, when the great roll-call of God was made up—as they read in the 11th chapter of the Epistle to the Hebrews—amongst those who fought and lived and died by faith in Christ, the Son of God, in God their father. He was glad that the monument stood on ground that had been consecrated not only by the service of their repeated acts of worship and devotion to God, to remind everybody in future days that after all faith in God and in Christ was the foundation of true life. They had in Oxford one monument standing in a very prominent place, and a beautiful monument it was, standing as it did nobly in an eminent place like St. Giles, to remind them of the cost at which their truth was won for them, and God grant they might ever hold faithfully by His infinite grace. They had there that day unveiled before them another monument to remind them of the cost at which the Empire had been won, and which he also hoped they would hold by the devotion and consecration which these true patriots had exhibited towards their Queen and country. The rev. gentleman then offered prayer as under :—

Almighty God, we bless Thy holy Name for all Thy servants departed this life in Thy faith and fear, beseeching Thee to give us grace so to follow their good examples that with them we may be partakers of Thy heavenly kingdom. Grant this, O Father, for Jesus Christ's sake, our only Mediator and Advocate. Amen.

O Almighty Lord, Who art a most strong tower to all them that put their trust in Thee, to Whom all things in heaven, in earth, and under the earth, do bow and obey, be now and evermore our defence : Prosper the forces of our Queen and country : Uphold the faith of Thy

Digitized by Google

servants, and give peace and lasting concord. Hear us, O Lord, from heaven, Thy dwelling-place, and when Thou hearest, forgive, through the mediation of Thy Son, Jesus Christ our Lord. Amen.

O Almighty God, the Sovereign Commander of all the world, in Whose hand is power and might which none is able to withstand, we bless and magnify Thy great and glorious Name for the great position Thou hast given to our Empire, the whole glory whereof we do ascribe to Thee, who art the only giver of victory. And, we beseech Thee, give us grace to improve this great mercy to Thy glory, the advancement of Thy Gospel, the honour of our Sovereign, and, as much as in us lieth, to the good of all mankind. And, we beseech Thee, give us such a sense of Thy great goodness as may engage us to a true thankfulness, such as may appear in our lives by an humble, holy, and obedient walking before Thee all our days, through Jesus Christ our Lord; to Whom, with Thee and the Holy Spirit, be all glory and honour, world without end. Amen.

The religious part of the ceremony concluded with the Blessing.

Colonel Strachan, speaking from a position in front of the monument, said, on behalf of the 2nd Battalion Oxfordshire Light Infantry, he begged to thank the Mayor and Corporation for the honour they had done the Regiment in placing at their disposal that excellent site in the centre of Oxford, to enable them to erect a monument to the memory of their comrades who died in the service of their country in the campaign on the North-Western frontier of India. They were very sensible of the kindly interest the Corporation had always taken in the Territorial Regiment, and they felt that in thus assisting them to honour the memory of their comrades the bond of union between the city of Oxford and the Regiment was still further cemented. He begged to thank them for their kindness in coming there that day, and also for the kind words which had been spoken by the Mayor and the Rector.

The Mayor said on behalf of himself, as Mayor, he thanked Colonel Strachan very cordially and very heartily for the kind words he had spoken. He trusted that the monument might long remain as a memorial of the great gallantry and great loyalty of this distinguished Regiment. He would only add that it was not only in India, but it was also in South Africa that the Oxfordshire Light Infantry was doing its part right nobly for its Queen and country. They regretted extremely to hear of the losses, but they could not but congratulate the Regiment and the country on the bravery and the traditional pluck of English soldiers which had been so well displayed in South Africa.

Alderman Buckell said he did not think any more was necessary to be said than what had been said on behalf of the Corporation, but he would

Digitized by Google

just add that it had given them the greatest pleasure to place the site at the disposal of the Regiment. They recognised the kindly and thoughtful spirit, the sense of comradeship, the desire to do honour to men who had stood shoulder to shoulder by many of those present in battle, and in strain, and in stress, to erect this memorial to their memory. The Corporation were glad to be associated with them in that spirit, and to place the site at their disposal. Colonel Strachan had referred to the fact that this was one more instance of the kindly feeling which had grown up between the Territorial Regiment and the Corporation. He (Alderman Buckell) could only tell them that these kindly relations, these strong sentiments of affinity with them in their work, in the performance of their duty, were highly appreciated, and that while they went forth to fight their country's battles, they had seen quite recently members of the Oxfordshire Light Infantry, strong in courage and in heart, going forth to the most arduous duties and the sternest work that fell to the lot of men, lightheartedly, but full of an earnest desire to do honour to the Regiment and to serve their Queen and country. As they had followed the footsteps of their comrades engaged now in the war step by step, their hearts had gone with them, they had suffered as those men had suffered, and they had rejoiced in the victories in which they had participated. On behalf of the Corporation he could assure them that they were indeed glad to be associated with them in this Oxford monument which they had erected to their comrades in arms in connection with the campaign on the North-Western frontier of India.

Colonel Strachan said, on behalf of the Regiment, he wished to return their most sincere thanks to Miss Morrell for her kindness in performing the ceremony, and also to Alderman Buckell for the very kind words he had spoken.

The guard of honour then gave a Royal Salute, and the band played the National Anthem, and the proceedings terminated, the guard on their return to Cowley Barracks being played away by the band with the Regimental March.

Digitized by Google

NOTICE.

THE Editor will gratefully welcome any hints or suggestions which readers of the CHRONICLE may feel inclined to offer, and he desires to express a hope that anyone who possesses pictures, sketches, diaries, etc., of Regimental interest, will communicate with him.

To old Officers he would point out that incidents of their service, however trifling they may appear to be, cannot fail to be of interest to the present generation of Regimental soldiers.

Subscribers who have not already done so will greatly oblige by giving a standing order to their bankers to pay their subscriptions to Messrs. Cox & Co. annually on the 1st April.

The following rules are repeated for the information of new contributors:—

(1) Write distinctly, on one side of the paper only, leaving a narrow margin.
(2) Number the pages throughout.
(3) Send in as early as possible.
(4) Write proper names in imitation of ROMAN TYPE.

Communications should be addressed to—

LIEUT.-COLONEL A. F. MOCKLER-FERRYMAN,
Oak Grove House,
Royal Military College,
Camberley, Surrey.

*** *Subscribers can obtain extra copies of this Volume at* 6*s.*; *the price to non-subscribers is* 10*s.* 6*d.*

The Volumes for 1892, 1893, 1894, *and* 1898, *are out of print; a few copies of other Volumes are still for sale.*

Digitized by Google

INDEX.

Acton. *See* Ball-Acton.
Ages of men, 205.
Army Lists, 26, 27.
Army Reserve, 202, 224.

Ball-Acton, V. A., *Title-page*, 28, 61, 71, 201, 206, 230, 251, 302.
Ballard, J. A., 28, 201.
Barron, C. A., 79, 89, 201, 204, 230.
Barton, D. J., 210, 230.
Bateman, H. O., 277.
Bayley, A. G., 28.
Berners, H. J., 277.
Boer War, 30 *et. seq.*
Boyle, C. J., 278.
Brett, D. T., 277.
Bright, A. R., 29, 41, 43, 45, 61, 71, 201, 206, 230, 231, 251, 301.
Brooke, R. R. M., 28, 102, 106, 107, 117, 124, 201.
Brooke, H. R. M., 214, 219.
Brown. *See* Darell-Brown.

Cairns, W. McN., 277.
Calendar, Regimental, 1.
Cardwell, C. A., 209, 212, 214, 219, 248.
Carter, J. C., 251.
Carter, L. J., 209, 212, 219, 231, 248.
Casualties, 82, 206.
Cator, C., 229, 251.
Chichester, C. O., 209, 212, 214, 219, 248.
Childers, E. M., 78, 89, 94, 201, 204, 209, 225, 226, 240.
Christie-Miller, S. R., 78, 201, 204, 226.
Clark, P. T., 209, 217, 219, 253.
Clark, W., 248, 277.
Clavering, J., *Frontispiece*, 257.
Clayton, E. R., 209, 213, 216, 248.
Cobb, C. H., 28, 92, 201.
Collinssplatt, H., 277.
Colquhoun, F., 231.
Colvile, G. N., 28, 96, 99, 102, 108, 115, 121, 124, 126, 201, 207.
Cooper, J., 277.
Corbett, R. W. L., 278.
Cotton, H. R. S., 251, 253, 310.
Crozier, S., 277.
Crum, A. S., 231.
Cuppage, H. W., 277.
Cuyler, C., 29, 251, 255.

Dalzell, Hon. A. E., 28, 37, 44, 62, 90, 201.
Darell-Brown, H. F., 209, 213, 214, 215, 217.
Davies, F. J., 266.
Davies, H. R., 210, 233, 267.
Davies, T. H. H., 263.
Davy, J. D. W., 209, 212, 219.
Day, C. R., 28, 44, 201, 206, 251, 298.
Deaths, 206, 298.
de Morel, Count, 251.
Depôt, The, 222, 236, 245, 246.
Details, The, 225, 237, 243.
Dillon, H. M., 216, 228, 233.
Dinners, Regimental, 251.
Disease, 206.
Dodington. *See* Marriott-Dodington.
Douglas, H. M. S., 278.
Dowler, F. E., 304.
Drafts, 204.
Dress, 33, 249 280.

Digitized by Google

Eccles, R., 209, 213, 217, 233, 248.
Eden, A. J. F., 29, 230, 271.
Equipment, 33.
Evelegh, F. J., 28, 103, 128, 148, 196, 201, 230, 233.

Fairtlough, C. E. G. M., 29, 233.
Fane, H., 278.
Fanshawe, R., 33, 93, 201, 207, 210, 232, 233.
Feilden, R. M., 209, 213, 214, 216, 217, 229, 230.
Fitzgerald, J. G., 308.
Foljambe, Hon. G. W. F. S., 28, 41, 93, 201, 234.
Forrest, C. E., 28, 102, 201, 207.
French, A. C., 277.
Frith, C. H., 209, 215, 217, 248.
Fuller, J. C., 28, 93, 201, 230.

Garland, J. B., 277.
Gazette, Extracts from, 229 *et seq.*
Green-Wilkinson, F., 26, 27, 251.

Hamilton, K. R., 28, 35, 93, 201, 207, 209, 213, 222, 229.
Hammick, S. F., 28, 61, 93, 201, 207, 222.
Hampden, O. R. L., 209, 215, 216, 248.
Hanbury-Williams, J., 29, 255.
Harris, Hon. A. E., 277.
Hatchell, C. H., 277.
Hawkins, L. C., 79, 93, 201, 204, 230.
Henley, C. F., 28, 35, 201, 231.
Henley, F. J., 28, 40, 45, 61, 63, 201, 229, 235.
Hennessy. *See* Pope-Hennessy.
Higgins, C. G., 86, 201, 204, 227, 231.
Hirst, G. A., 222.
Hogarth, J., 277.
Holford, H., 278.
Horan, T., 277.
Howell, L. J., 303.
Hudson, F., 231.
Hughes, R. G. H., 29, 222, 232.
Hunter, W. C., 149, 201, 209, 213, 216, 218.

Inspection, 2nd Battalion, 212.

Johnstone, J., 278.

Keyworth, R. D., 209, 213, 214, 232, 248.
Killed, 206, 298.
Kirkpatrick, E. H., 79, 201, 204, 226, 228, 229.

Lamotte, F. G. L., 28, 79, 81, 201, 240.
Langlands, J. S., 277.
Lathy, M. F., 79, 82, 89, 94, 201, 204, 230.
Lethbridge, E. A. E., 28, 40, 43, 79, 85, 201.
List, Army, 26, 27.
Logan, R. M., 78, 201, 204, 226, 229.
Longley, A., 277.
Luard, R. C., 29.
Lycester, E., 278.

Mackay, A., 261.
McQueen, D. R., 277.
Manœuvres, Dalhousie, 219.
Mansel, E. G., 231.
Marches, 75, 199.
Marriott-Dodington, W., 209, 213, 214, 215, 229, 231, 248.
Meade, J. P., 278.
Medals, 234, 270.
Memorials, 305, 306, 307.
Middleton, H. S., 278.
Miller, T. C., 277.
Mitchell, C. J., 209, 213, 214, 215.
Mockler, G. F., 28, 41, 43, 78, 80, 81, 82, 83, 87, 89, 94, 201, 222, 235, 236, 237.
Mockler-Ferryman, A. F., 29, 231, 232, 255.
Molesworth, A. B., 255.
Money, A. C., 251, 277.
Monson, D. J., 303.
Mounted Infantry, 96 *et seq.*, 127.

Napier, D. R., 308.
Napier, G. S. F., 210, 232, 233.
Nicholl, S. T., 277.
Nicklin, A., 210, 232.
Nisbet, H. C., 209, 212, 214, 217.
Norman, A. C., 213, 214, 219, 229.

O'Brien, J. T., 277.
Onslow, A. B., 277.
Osborn, P. B., 210, 230.
Ovey, R. L., 209, 213, 228.
Owen, R. C. R., 29.
Owen, W., 29, 251.

Digitized by Google

Parr, C., 209, 253, 310.
Paske, G. F., 78, 201, 204, 225, 226, 228.
Pearson, C. C., 209, 214.
Pearson, T. H., 251.
Pease, C. C., 277.
Plowden, F. H., 209, 212, 213, 216, 233, 281, 307.
Pocklington, E. B., 278.
Pope-Hennessy, L. H. R., 29, 255.
Porter, R. W., 28, 44, 61, 79, 81, 88, 92, 94, 217, 235.
Powys, J. L., 308.
Pratt, Lord C. R., 278.
Prisoner of War, 128 *et seq.*
Pulteney, R. M., 278.

Reserve, Army, 202, 224.
Richards, C. H., 210, 214, 231, 232, 233.
Ross, W., 28, 201.
Ruck-Keene, H. L., 29, 32, 129, 160, 201, 251.

Salkeld, R. E., 209, 212, 215, 218.
Scott, L. F., 29, 201, 233.
Scott-Murray, F. J., 84, 201, 204, 226, 227, 230.
Service of men, 205.
Shaw, B. H., 213, 214, 215, 216, 229.
Shaw-Kennedy, J., 251.
Sherbrooke, H. N. E., 277.
Simpson, R. V., 78, 93, 201, 204, 226, 229.
Skirmishing, 281.
Smith, F. A., 277.
South Africa, 30 *et seq.*
Spencer, A., 278.
Splatt. *See* Collinssplatt.
Sport, 255, 279.
Stanton, E. A., 210, 232, 253.
Stapleton, F. H., 28, 44, 201, 207, 233.
States, Regimental, 202, 211, 223.
Strachan, J. A., 222, 251, 310.
Strength of Regiment, 75, 202.
Sullivan, G. A., 28, 89, 201.
Synge, H., 278.
Synge, F. H., 277.

Talbot, F. A. B., 251.
Talbot, H. C., 251, 277.
Terry, H. A., 251.
Thorne, A. D., 213, 214, 215, 229.
Thruston, A. B., 306, 308.
Tirah Campaign, 307.
Tod, R. M., 277.
Trench, H. W. B., 308.
Tunnard, L., 232.

Uniform. *See* Dress.

Verney, R., 278.
Vesey, G. F., 251, 277.
Villiers, E., 251.
Volunteer Company, 79, 204.

Ward, H. F., 78, 201, 204, 227, 229.
Ward, L. E. S., 209, 215.
Watt, R. E., 28, 61, 81, 86, 88, 93, 201, 207.
Weatherby, J. T., 209, 213, 214, 219, 248.
White, E. D., 78, 204, 209, 214, 217, 219.
White, S. G. R., 201, 229.
Wilkie, C. J., 28, 222, 225, 228, 243.
Wilkinson. *See* Green-Wilkinson.
Wingfield, M. ff. R., 227, 232, 247.
Wood, H. L., 28, 201, 230.
Wounded, 207.

Young, G., 251.

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google

Digitized by Google